

Oliver M. O'Reilly

Engineering Dynamics

A Primer

Third Edition

 Springer

Engineering Dynamics

Oliver M. O'Reilly

Engineering Dynamics

A Primer

Third Edition

 Springer

Oliver M. O'Reilly
University of California, Berkeley
Berkeley, CA, USA

ISBN 978-3-030-11744-3 ISBN 978-3-030-11745-0 (eBook)
<https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11745-0>

Library of Congress Control Number: 2018967440

Mathematics Subject Classification (2010): 70-01, 70F-XX, 70E-XX

1st edition: © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2001

2nd edition: © Springer Science+Business Media, LLC 2010

3rd edition: © Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2019

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

This book is dedicated to the memory of
my loving and devoted father,
John “Jackie” O’Reilly (1935–2009)

Preface

Preface to the First Edition

This primer is intended to provide the theoretical background for the standard undergraduate course in dynamics. This course is usually based on one of the following texts: Bedford and Fowler [7], Beer and Johnston [8], Hibbeler [50], Meriam and Kraige [63], Riley and Sturges [79], and Shames [85], among others. Although most teachers will have certain reservations about these texts, there appears to be a general consensus that the selection of problems each of them presents is an invaluable and essential aid for studying and understanding dynamics.

I use Meriam and Kraige [63] when teaching such a course, that is referred to as ME104 and MEC ENG 104 at the University of California at Berkeley (UCB). However, I have found that the gap between the theory presented in the aforementioned texts and the problems I wished my students to solve was too large. As a result, I prepared my own set of notes on the relevant theory, and I used Meriam and Kraige [63] as a problem and homework resource. This primer grew out of these notes. Its content was also heavily influenced by three other courses that I teach: one on rigid body dynamics, one on Lagrangian mechanics, and another on Hamiltonian mechanics.¹ Because I use the primer as a supplement, I have only included a set of brief exercises at the end of each chapter. Furthermore, dimensions of physical quantities and numerical calculations are not emphasized in the primer because I have found that most students do not have serious problems with these matters.

This primer is intended for three audiences: students taking an undergraduate engineering dynamics course, graduate students needing a refresher in such a course, and teachers of such a course. For the students, I hope that this primer succeeds in providing them with a succinct account of the theory needed for the course, an exploration of the limitations of such a course, and a message that the subject at hand can be mastered with understanding and not rote memorization of formulae. For all of these audiences, an appendix provides the notational and presentational

¹These courses are referred to as ME170, ME175, and ME275 in the UCB course catalog.

correspondences between the chapters in this primer and the aforementioned texts. In addition, each chapter is accompanied by a summary section.

I have noticed an increased emphasis on “practical” problems in engineering dynamics texts. Although such an emphasis has its merits, I think that the most valuable part of an education is the evolution and maturation of the student’s thinking abilities and thought processes. With this in mind, I consider the development of the student’s analytical skills to be paramount. This primer reflects my philosophy in this respect.

The material in this primer is not new. I have merely reorganized some classical thoughts and theories on the subject in a manner that suits an undergraduate engineering dynamics course. My sources are contained in the references section at the end of this primer. Apart from the engineering texts listed above, the works of Beatty [6], Casey [20, 22], and Synge and Griffith [95] had a significant influence on my exposition.

I have also included some historical references and comments in this primer in the hopes that some students may be interested in reading the original work. Most of the historical information in the primer was obtained from Scribner’s *Dictionary of Scientific Biography*. I heartily recommend reading the biographies of Euler, Kepler, Leibniz, and others contained in this wonderful resource.

Finally, for two reasons I have tried wherever possible to outline the limitations of what is expected from a student. First, some students will decide to extend their knowledge beyond these limitations, and, second, it gives a motivation to the types of questions asked of the student.

My perspective on dynamics has been heavily influenced by both the continuum mechanics and dynamics communities. I mention in particular the writings and viewpoints of Jim Casey, Jim Flavin, Phil Holmes, Paul M. Naghdi, Ronald Rivlin, and Clifford Truesdell. I owe a large debt of gratitude to Jim Casey both for showing me the intimate relationship between continuum mechanics and dynamics, and for supporting my teaching here at Berkeley.

The typing of this primer using LaTeX would not have been possible without the assistance of Bonnie Korpi, Laura Cantú, and Linda Witnov. Laura helped with the typing of Chapters 7, 8, 9, and 10. Linda did the vast majority of the work on the remaining chapters. Her patience and cheerful nature in dealing with the numerous revisions and reorganizations was a blessing for me. David Kramer was a copy-reader for the primer, and he provided valuable corrections to the final version of the primer. The publication of this primer was made possible by the support of Achi Dosanjh at Springer-Verlag. Achi also organized two sets of helpful reviews. Several constructive criticisms made by the anonymous reviewers have been incorporated, and I would like to take this opportunity to thank them.

Many of my former students have contributed directly and indirectly to this primer. In particular, Tony Urry read through an earlier draft and gave numerous insightful comments on the presentation. I have also benefited from numerous conversations with my former graduate students Tom Nordenholz, Jeffrey Turcotte, and Peter Varadi. As I mentioned earlier, this primer arose from my lecture notes for

ME104. My interactions with the former students in this course have left an indelible impression on this primer.

Finally, I would like to thank my parents, Anne and Jackie, and my siblings, Séamus and Sibéal, for their support and encouragement.

Berkeley, December 2000

Oliver M. O'Reilly

Preface to the Second Edition

The possibility of publishing an affordable electronic version of this book was the primary reason for writing the second edition. I have also taken the opportunity to reformat, rearrange, and update the original edition. New examples have been added, and for most of the examples, such as the rolling disk and the particle on a cone, more detailed analyses have been presented. Several explanations in the text have, I hope, been improved upon. Where appropriate, numerical results for the motion of individual systems have been included.

It is a pleasure to take this opportunity to once again thank Achi Dosanjh at Springer-Verlag in New York for her editorial support. Charles Taylor's daughter, Mary Anne Taylor Urry, kindly gave me permission to use the photo shown in Figure 10.1. I am also grateful to Joanna Chang, Nur Adila Faruk Senan, and Daniel Kawano for their help with this edition and to many others for their comments on the first edition. Although I hope that there are no typographical errors in this edition, in the event that my hopes are dashed, I would welcome hearing about them by email at oreilly@berkeley.edu. An updated errata will be posted on my University of California at Berkeley homepage.

All of the author royalties from the sales of this book will be donated to the United Nations Children's Fund ([UNICEF](http://www.unicef.org)).

Berkeley, December 2009

Oliver M. O'Reilly

www.me.berkeley.edu/faculty/oreilly/

Preface to the Third Edition

I have used the second edition of this book while teaching the sophomore-junior level-course Engineering Mechanics II: Dynamics (ME104) at the University of California at Berkeley (UCB) eleven times over the past decade. These experiences have allowed me to identify areas in the second edition that needed revisions and additions. I have also noticed in the past decade that the licensing of software for simulations and symbolic manipulations has changed and students have increasing access to these resources. As a result, I have added more examples of the type of analyses one can perform on mechanical systems when it is possible to numerically integrate the equations of motion. These examples include a simple model for a spherical robot, harmonic oscillators, pendula, and a rolling rigid body.

As with the earlier editions, I hope that this primer succeeds in providing students with a succinct account of the theory needed for an undergraduate dynamics course,

an exploration of the limitations of such a course, and a message that the subject at hand can be mastered with understanding and not rote memorization of formulae. While I use the examples and material discussed in this book in my lectures, the hundreds of exercises that can be found in traditional engineering dynamics texts, such as Beer and Johnston [8] and Meriam and Kraige [63], provide invaluable educational experiences for students. I always assign homework problems from the online version of Meriam and Kraige [63] when teaching ME104, and I supplement these exercises by asking students to perform numerical simulations and to seek answers beyond the numerical values at a given instant that are normally required.

Revising this text would not have been possible without the questions, constructive criticisms, and comments from hundreds of students and several dedicated teaching assistants at UCB over the past decade. I would like to take this opportunity to express my gratitude to these two groups of students for their input and comments. I am also immensely grateful to have had the privilege of teaching at UCB for over 25 years.

I am grateful to Donna Chernyk at Springer for supporting the publication of this book. The reviews she coordinated for the penultimate draft were very helpful, and I would like to take this opportunity to thank the two anonymous reviewers for their constructive criticisms and detailed commentary.

Although I hope that there are no typographical errors in this edition, my experiences have shown that such errors are inevitable. I will welcome hearing about these errors by email at oreilly@berkeley.edu. An updated errata will be posted on my University of California at Berkeley homepage. As with the second edition, all of the author royalties from the sales of this book will be donated to the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF).

Berkeley, December 2018

Oliver M. O'Reilly
www.me.berkeley.edu/faculty/oreilly/

Contents

Part I Dynamics of a Single Particle

1	Elementary Particle Dynamics	3
1.1	An Example	4
1.2	Kinematics of a Particle	4
1.3	A Circular Motion	6
1.4	Rectilinear Motions	7
	1.4.1 Given Acceleration as a Function of Time	8
	1.4.2 Given Acceleration as a Function of Speed	8
	1.4.3 Given Acceleration as a Function of Placement	8
1.5	Kinetics of a Particle	9
	1.5.1 Action and Reaction	9
	1.5.2 The Four Steps	10
	1.5.3 Drag Forces	10
1.6	A Particle Under the Influence of Gravity	11
	1.6.1 Kinematics	11
	1.6.2 Forces	12
	1.6.3 Balance Law	12
	1.6.4 Analysis	13
	1.6.5 The Effects of a Drag Force	13
1.7	An Example from Aerosol Science	14
	1.7.1 Kinematics	15
	1.7.2 Forces	16
	1.7.3 Balance Law	16
	1.7.4 Analysis	16
1.8	Summary	17
1.9	Exercises	18

2	Particles and Cylindrical Polar Coordinates	21
2.1	The Cylindrical Polar Coordinate System	22
2.2	Velocity and Acceleration Vectors	23
2.2.1	Common Errors	24
2.3	Kinetics of a Particle	25
2.4	The Planar Pendulum	25
2.4.1	Kinematics	26
2.4.2	Forces	27
2.4.3	Balance Law	27
2.4.4	Analysis	27
2.5	Lifting a Pendulum	28
2.5.1	Kinematics	29
2.5.2	Forces	29
2.5.3	Balance Law	30
2.5.4	Analysis	30
2.6	Summary	32
2.7	Exercises	33
3	Particles and Space Curves	35
3.1	Space Curves	36
3.1.1	The Arc-Length Parameter	36
3.1.2	The Serret-Frenet Triad	37
3.2	The Serret-Frenet Formulae	39
3.3	Examples of Space Curves	41
3.3.1	A Curve on a Plane	41
3.3.2	A Space Curve Parameterized by x	45
3.3.3	A Circle on a Plane	46
3.3.4	A Circular Helix	48
3.4	Application to Particle Mechanics	51
3.4.1	Kinematics	51
3.4.2	Computing the Serret-Frenet Triad	53
3.4.3	Kinetics	54
3.5	A Particle Moving in Space Under Gravity	55
3.5.1	Computing Speed and Acceleration	55
3.5.2	Computing the Serret-Frenet Triad	56
3.6	A Particle Moving on a Fixed Curve Under Gravity	57
3.6.1	Kinematics	57
3.6.2	Forces	59
3.6.3	Balance Law	59
3.6.4	Analysis	59
3.7	Summary	62
3.8	Exercises	63

4	Friction Forces and Spring Forces	67
4.1	An Experiment on Friction	67
4.2	Static and Dynamic Coulomb Friction Forces	69
4.2.1	A Particle on a Surface	70
4.2.2	A Particle on a Space Curve	71
4.2.3	Additional Comments	73
4.3	A Particle on a Rough Plane Subject to a Vertical Motion	74
4.4	Pulling a Block Over a Rough Surface	75
4.4.1	Kinematics	76
4.4.2	Forces	76
4.4.3	Balance Law	77
4.4.4	Analysis	77
4.4.5	Numerical Example	79
4.5	A Particle on a Spinning Disk	80
4.5.1	Kinematics	80
4.5.2	Forces	81
4.5.3	Balance Law	82
4.5.4	Analysis	82
4.5.5	Numerical Example	83
4.6	Hooke's Law and Linear Springs	84
4.6.1	Additional Examples	87
4.7	A Particle on a Rough Spinning Cone	88
4.7.1	Kinematics	88
4.7.2	Forces	90
4.7.3	Balance Law	90
4.7.4	Analysis	91
4.8	Summary	92
4.9	Exercises	92
5	Power, Work, and Energy	95
5.1	The Concepts of Work and Power	95
5.2	The Power of a Force	96
5.3	The Work-Energy Theorem	98
5.4	Conservative Forces	98
5.5	Examples of Conservative Forces	99
5.5.1	Constant Forces	100
5.5.2	Spring Forces	101
5.6	Energy Conservation	102
5.7	A Harmonic Oscillator	104
5.7.1	Kinematics	104
5.7.2	Forces	105
5.7.3	Balance Law	105
5.7.4	Energy Conservation	106

- 5.8 A Particle Moving on a Rough Curve 107
 - 5.8.1 Kinematics 107
 - 5.8.2 Forces 108
 - 5.8.3 Work Done by Friction 108
 - 5.8.4 The Case of a Smooth Curve 110
- 5.9 Additional Examples of Energy Conservation 110
 - 5.9.1 A Particle in a Conservative Force Field 110
 - 5.9.2 A Particle on a Fixed Smooth Surface 111
 - 5.9.3 The Planar Pendulum 111
 - 5.9.4 The Roller Coaster 112
 - 5.9.5 Lifting a Pendulum Using a Force Applied
by a Cable 114
- 5.10 Summary 115
- 5.11 Exercises 116

Part II Dynamics of a System of Particles

- 6 Momenta, Impulses, and Collisions 121**
 - 6.1 Linear Momentum and Its Conservation 121
 - 6.1.1 Linear Impulse and Linear Momentum 121
 - 6.1.2 Conservation of Linear Momentum 122
 - 6.1.3 Examples 122
 - 6.2 Angular Momentum and Its Conservation 122
 - 6.2.1 Angular Momentum Theorem 124
 - 6.2.2 Conservation of Angular Momentum 124
 - 6.2.3 Central Force Problems 125
 - 6.2.4 Kepler’s Problem 125
 - 6.2.5 A Particle on a Smooth Cone 126
 - 6.3 Collision of Particles 128
 - 6.3.1 The Model and Impact Stages 129
 - 6.3.2 Linear Impulses During Impact 129
 - 6.3.3 Linear Momenta 131
 - 6.3.4 The Postimpact Velocities 132
 - 6.3.5 Kinetic Energy and the Coefficient of Restitution 132
 - 6.3.6 Negative Values of the Coefficient of Restitution 133
 - 6.4 Impact of a Particle and a Massive Object 134
 - 6.5 A Bouncing Ball 134
 - 6.6 Collision of Two Spheres 137
 - 6.7 Summary 138
 - 6.8 Exercises 139
- 7 Dynamics of Systems of Particles 143**
 - 7.1 Preliminaries 143
 - 7.2 Center of Mass, Momenta, and Kinetic Energy 144

- 7.2.1 The Center of Mass 144
- 7.2.2 Linear Momentum 145
- 7.2.3 Angular Momentum 145
- 7.2.4 Kinetic Energy 146
- 7.3 A System of Two Particles Connected by a Spring 147
- 7.4 Kinetics of Systems of Particles 149
- 7.5 Conservation of Linear Momentum 150
- 7.6 The Cart and the Pendulum 151
 - 7.6.1 Kinematics 151
 - 7.6.2 Forces 152
 - 7.6.3 Balance Laws 153
 - 7.6.4 Analysis 154
- 7.7 Angular Momentum Theorem 155
 - 7.7.1 Conservation of Angular Momentum 156
- 7.8 A System of Four Particles 157
 - 7.8.1 Kinematics 157
 - 7.8.2 Forces and Balance Laws 158
 - 7.8.3 Analysis 159
- 7.9 Work, Energy, and Conservative Forces 160
 - 7.9.1 Two Blocks with a Rough Interface 160
 - 7.9.2 Two Particles Connected by a Telescoping Rod 162
 - 7.9.3 Two Particles Connected by a Linear Spring 164
 - 7.9.4 The Cart and the Pendulum 165
 - 7.9.5 A System of Four Particles 166
 - 7.9.6 Comment 166
- 7.10 Summary 167
- 7.11 Exercises 168

Part III Dynamics of a Single Rigid Body

- 8 Planar Kinematics of Rigid Bodies 173**
 - 8.1 The Motion of a Rigid Body 173
 - 8.1.1 General Considerations 173
 - 8.1.2 Rigidity 174
 - 8.1.3 Angular Velocity and Acceleration Vectors 176
 - 8.1.4 Fixed Axis Rotation 177
 - 8.2 Kinematical Relations and a Corotational Basis 178
 - 8.2.1 The Corotational Basis 178
 - 8.2.2 The Corotational Basis for the Fixed Axis Case 179
 - 8.2.3 A Particle Moving on a Rigid Body 181
 - 8.3 Mechanisms 182

8.4	Center of Mass and Linear Momentum	185
8.4.1	The Center of Mass	185
8.4.2	The Linear Momentum	186
8.5	Kinematics of Rolling and Sliding	187
8.6	Kinematics of a Rolling Circular Disk	189
8.6.1	A Common Error	191
8.7	The Sliding Disk	192
8.8	Angular Momenta	192
8.9	Inertia Tensors	193
8.9.1	Where the Inertia Tensor Comes From	194
8.9.2	Angular Momentum and the Inertia Tensor	195
8.9.3	A Circular Cylinder	196
8.9.4	The Parallel Axis Theorem	197
8.9.5	An Imbalanced Shaft	198
8.10	Some Comments on Integrals and Derivatives	199
8.11	Summary	200
8.12	Exercises	201
9	Kinetics of a Rigid Body	205
9.1	Balance Laws for a Rigid Body	205
9.1.1	Resultant Forces and Resultant Moments	206
9.1.2	Euler's Laws	207
9.1.3	The Fixed Axis of Rotation Case	208
9.1.4	The Four Steps	209
9.1.5	Tossing a Rod into the Air	210
9.1.6	Reaction Moments	210
9.2	Work-Energy Theorem and Energy Conservation	211
9.2.1	Koenig's Decomposition	212
9.2.2	The Work-Energy Theorem	213
9.2.3	An Alternative Form of the Work-Energy Theorem	214
9.3	Purely Translational Motion of a Rigid Body	215
9.3.1	The Overturning Cart	215
9.4	A Rigid Body with a Fixed Point	219
9.4.1	Kinematics	220
9.4.2	Forces and Moments	222
9.4.3	Balance Laws	223
9.4.4	Analysis	223
9.4.5	A Pendulum Suspended by a Spring	224
9.4.6	A Falling Rod	225
9.5	Rolling and Sliding Rigid Bodies	227
9.5.1	Friction	228
9.5.2	Energy Considerations	228

- 9.6 Examples of Rolling and Sliding Rigid Bodies 229
 - 9.6.1 General Considerations 230
 - 9.6.2 The Rolling Case 232
 - 9.6.3 The Static Friction Criterion and Rolling 233
 - 9.6.4 The Sliding Case 233
 - 9.6.5 Stick-Slip Transition 235
- 9.7 An Imbalanced Rotor 235
 - 9.7.1 Kinematics 236
 - 9.7.2 Forces and Moments 237
 - 9.7.3 Balance Laws 238
 - 9.7.4 Analysis 238
- 9.8 Summary 239
- 9.9 Exercises 240

Part IV Dynamics of Systems of Particles and Rigid Bodies

- 10 Systems of Particles and Rigid Bodies 245**
 - 10.1 A System of Particles and Rigid Bodies 246
 - 10.1.1 Momenta and Kinetic Energy 247
 - 10.1.2 Impulses, Momenta, and Balance Laws 248
 - 10.1.3 Conservations 250
 - 10.2 A Double Pendulum 252
 - 10.2.1 Kinematics 252
 - 10.2.2 Forces and Moments 254
 - 10.2.3 Balance Laws and Analysis 255
 - 10.2.4 A Related Example 256
 - 10.3 Rocking a Semi-circular Cylinder on a Cart 257
 - 10.3.1 Kinematics 258
 - 10.3.2 Forces and Moments 260
 - 10.3.3 Balance Laws 260
 - 10.3.4 Analysis 261
 - 10.3.5 Numerical Example 263
 - 10.4 A Simple Model for a Spherical Robot 264
 - 10.4.1 Kinematics 265
 - 10.4.2 Forces and Moments 267
 - 10.4.3 Balance Laws 267
 - 10.4.4 Analyses 268
 - 10.5 Impact of a Particle and a Rigid Body 270
 - 10.6 Beyond This Primer 271
 - 10.7 Summary 272
 - 10.8 Exercises 273

- Preliminaries on Vectors and Calculus** 275
 - A.1 Vector Notation. 275
 - A.2 The Dot Product and The Cross Product. 276
 - A.3 Differentiation of Vectors 277
 - A.4 A Ubiquitous Example of Vector Differentiation 277
 - A.5 Ordinary Differential Equations. 278
 - A.5.1 The Projectile Problem 279
 - A.5.2 The Harmonic Oscillator. 280
 - A.5.3 A Particle in a Whirling Tube 280
 - A.5.4 The Planar Pendulum 280

- Weekly Course Content and Notation in Other Texts** 283
 - B.1 Weekly Course Content 283
 - B.2 Notation in Other Texts 287

- References** 289

- Index** 295

Part I
Dynamics of a Single Particle

Chapter 1

Elementary Particle Dynamics



TOPICS

In this first chapter, we cover the basics on kinematics and kinetics of particles with particular emphasis on the Cartesian coordinate system. Euler's first law (also known as Newton's second law or the balance of linear momentum) is used to relate the kinematics of the particle to the forces acting on it. This law provides a set of differential equations for the motion of the particle. We illuminate the developments using three ubiquitous examples involving projectile motion both in the presence and absence of drag forces. Our treatment of dynamics makes extensive use of vector calculus. For the interested student, a summary of the needed results from vector calculus is presented in Appendix A.

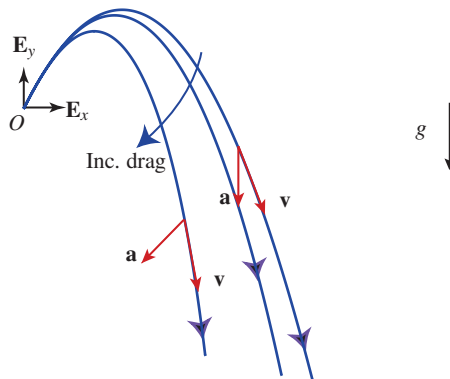


Fig. 1.1 Representative paths of a particle falling under gravity and subject to a drag force of $-\frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A \|\mathbf{v}\| \mathbf{v}$. Some examples of the velocity, \mathbf{v} , and acceleration, \mathbf{a} , vectors of the particle are also shown.

1.1 An Example

Consider the example of a particle that is launched into the air from a point with an initial velocity. During the subsequent motion of the particle, it is subject to a gravitational force and a drag force. The gravitational force is constant, whereas the magnitude of the drag force is assumed to be proportional to the square of the speed of the particle and opposes the motion of the particle. For a given set of initial conditions, sample trajectories for the particle can be seen in Fig. 1.1. After reading this chapter, you should be able to understand why one representation for the drag force acting on a particle is $-\frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A v \mathbf{v}$ where the coefficient of drag C_d is a constant, to know how to formulate the differential equations governing the motion of the particle, and to understand the analytical solution to the resulting equations when the drag force is absent.

1.2 Kinematics of a Particle

Consider a particle moving in a three-dimensional space \mathbb{E}^3 . The position vector \mathbf{r} of the particle relative to a fixed origin O as a function of time is denoted by the function $\mathbf{r}(t)$. That is, given a time t , the location of the particle is determined by the value $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ (see Fig. 1.2). Varying t , $\mathbf{r}(t)$ defines the motion and the path \mathcal{C} of the particle. This path in many cases coincides with a specific curve, for example, a particle moving on a circular ring or a particle in motion on a circular helix. Otherwise, the particle is either free or in motion on a surface.

The (absolute) velocity vector \mathbf{v} of the particle can be determined by differentiating $\mathbf{r}(t)$ with respect to time t :

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\mathbf{r}(t + \Delta t) - \mathbf{r}(t)}{\Delta t}.$$

The speed v of the particle is given by the magnitude of the velocity vector: $v = \|\mathbf{v}\|$. We often denote the time derivative of a function by a superposed dot, for example, $\mathbf{v} = \dot{\mathbf{r}}$. The (absolute) acceleration vector \mathbf{a} of the particle is determined by differentiating the (absolute) velocity vector with respect to time:

$$\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\mathbf{v}(t + \Delta t) - \mathbf{v}(t)}{\Delta t}.$$

To calculate the distance travelled by a particle along its path, it is convenient to introduce the arc-length parameter s . This parameter is defined by

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \|\mathbf{v}\|.$$

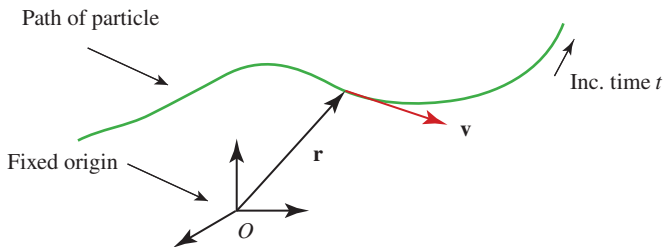


Fig. 1.2 Some kinematical quantities pertaining to a particle and its motion.

Clearly, $ds/dt \geq 0$ is the speed of the particle. Integrating this relationship one finds that

$$s(t) - s_0 = \int_{t_0}^t \frac{ds}{dt}(\tau) d\tau = \int_{t_0}^t \sqrt{\mathbf{v}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{v}(\tau)} d\tau.$$

It should be noted that $s(t) - s_0$ is the distance travelled by the particle along its path \mathcal{C} during the time interval $t - t_0$. Also, $s(t_0) = s_0$, where t_0 and s_0 are initial conditions. You should also notice that we use a dummy variable τ when performing the integration.¹

Often, instead of using t to parameterize the motion of the particle, one uses the arc-length parameter s . We show several examples of this parametrization in Chapter 3. The motion will, in general, be a different function of s than it is of t . To distinguish these functions, we denote the motion as a function of t by $\mathbf{r}(t)$ and the motion as a function of s is denoted by $\hat{\mathbf{r}}(s)$. Provided \dot{s} is never zero, these functions provide the same value of \mathbf{r} : $\mathbf{r}(t) = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s(t))$.²

With the above proviso in mind, one has the relations

$$\begin{aligned} s &= s(t) = s_0 + \int_{t_0}^t \sqrt{\mathbf{v}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{v}(\tau)} d\tau, \\ \mathbf{r} &= \mathbf{r}(t) = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s(t)), \\ \mathbf{v} &= \frac{d\mathbf{r}(t)}{dt} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} \frac{ds}{dt}, \\ \mathbf{a} &= \frac{d\mathbf{v}(t)}{dt} = \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}}{ds^2} \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \right)^2 + \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}. \end{aligned}$$

¹ It is necessary to use a dummy variable τ as opposed to the variable t when evaluating this integral because we are integrating the magnitude of the velocity as τ varies between t_0 and t . If we take the derivative with respect to t of the integral, then, using the fundamental theorem of calculus, we would find, as expected, that $\dot{s}(t) = \|\mathbf{v}\|$. Had we not used the dummy variable τ but rather t to perform the integration, then the derivative of the resulting integral with respect to t would not yield $\dot{s}(t) = \|\mathbf{v}(t)\|$.

² Here, we are invoking the inverse function theorem of calculus. If \dot{s} were zero, then the particle would be stationary (i.e., s would be constant), but time would continue increasing, so there would not be a one-to-one correspondence between s and t .

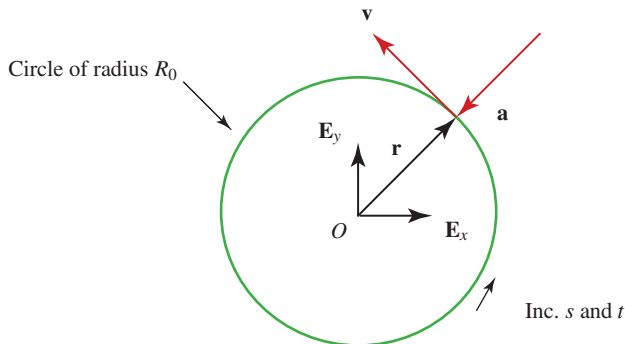


Fig. 1.3 Path of a particle performing a circular motion.

At this stage, we have not used a particular coordinate system, so all of the previous results are valid for any coordinate system. For most of the remainder of this primer we use three different sets of orthonormal bases: Cartesian $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$, cylindrical polar $\{\mathbf{e}_r, \mathbf{e}_\theta, \mathbf{E}_z\}$, and the Serret-Frenet triad $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$. Which set one uses depends on the problem of interest. Knowing which one to select is an art, and to acquire such experience is very important.³

1.3 A Circular Motion

We now elucidate the preceding developments with a simple example. Suppose the position vector of a particle has the representation

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t) = R_0 (\cos(\omega t)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\omega t)\mathbf{E}_y),$$

where ω is a positive constant and R_0 is greater than zero. In Fig. 1.3, the path of the particle is shown. You should notice that the path of the particle is a circle of radius R_0 that is traversed in a counterclockwise direction.⁴ The question we seek to answer here is what are $\mathbf{v}(t)$, $\mathbf{a}(t)$, $s(t)$, $t(s)$, $\hat{\mathbf{v}}(s)$, and $\hat{\mathbf{a}}(s)$?

First, let's calculate $\mathbf{v}(t)$ and $\mathbf{a}(t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \dot{\mathbf{r}} = R_0\omega(-\sin(\omega t)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\omega t)\mathbf{E}_y), \\ \mathbf{a} &= \ddot{\mathbf{r}} = \dot{\mathbf{v}} = -R_0\omega^2(\cos(\omega t)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\omega t)\mathbf{E}_y) = -\omega^2\mathbf{r}. \end{aligned}$$

³ In other words, the more problems one examines, the better.

⁴ Later on, we hope sooner rather than later, you should revisit this problem using the cylindrical polar coordinates, $r = R_0$ and $\theta = \omega t$, and establish the forthcoming results using cylindrical polar basis vectors. This coordinate system is discussed in Chapter 2.

Next,

$$s(t) - s_0 = \int_{t_0}^t \sqrt{\mathbf{v}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{v}(\tau)} d\tau = \int_{t_0}^t \sqrt{\omega^2 R_0^2} d\tau = R_0 \omega (t - t_0).$$

Hence,

$$t(s) = t_0 + \frac{1}{R_0 \omega} (s - s_0).$$

The last formula allows us to write down the following results with a minimum of effort using $\mathbf{v}(t)$ and $\mathbf{a}(t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \hat{\mathbf{v}}(s) = R_0 \omega \left(-\sin \left(\frac{s - s_0}{R_0} + \omega t_0 \right) \mathbf{E}_x + \cos \left(\frac{s - s_0}{R_0} + \omega t_0 \right) \mathbf{E}_y \right), \\ \mathbf{a} &= \hat{\mathbf{a}}(s) = -R_0 \omega^2 \left(\cos \left(\frac{s - s_0}{R_0} + \omega t_0 \right) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin \left(\frac{s - s_0}{R_0} + \omega t_0 \right) \mathbf{E}_y \right) \\ &= -\omega^2 \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s). \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, one could use the expression for $t(s)$ to determine \mathbf{r} as a function of s and then differentiate with respect to t to obtain the desired functions.

1.4 Rectilinear Motions

In this section, we consider the motion of a particle along a straight line. We take \mathbf{E}_x to be parallel to this line and the vector \mathbf{c} to be a constant. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r} &= \mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\mathbf{E}_x + \mathbf{c}, \\ \mathbf{v} &= \mathbf{v}(t) = \frac{dx}{dt}\mathbf{E}_x = v(t)\mathbf{E}_x, \\ \mathbf{a} &= \mathbf{a}(t) = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}\mathbf{E}_x = a(t)\mathbf{E}_x. \end{aligned}$$

It is important to note that

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \left| \frac{dx}{dt} \right|,$$

so unless $\dot{x} > 0$ or $\dot{x} < 0$, x and s cannot be easily interchanged.

The material that follows should be familiar to you from other courses. Furthermore, graphical interpretations of the forthcoming results are readily available. Essentially, they involve relating t , x , v , and a . There are three cases to consider.

1.4.1 Given Acceleration as a Function of Time

Suppose one knows $a(t)$; then $v(t)$ and $x(t)$ can be determined by integrating $a(t)$:

$$v(t) = v(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^t a(u) du,$$

$$x(t) = x(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^t v(\tau) d\tau = x(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^t \left(v(t_0) + \int_{t_0}^{\tau} a(u) du \right) d\tau.$$

You should notice that u and τ in these expressions are dummy variables.

1.4.2 Given Acceleration as a Function of Speed

The next case to consider is when $a = \bar{a}(v)$ and one is asked to calculate $\bar{x}(v)$ and $\bar{t}(v)$. We shall see an example of this situation in Section 1.7.4 when we examine the trajectory of a particulate in an aerosol spray.

To compute time as a function of velocity, we note that $dt = dv/a$. A direct integration then provides the answer. Position as a function of velocity is found by first noting that

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \left(\frac{dv}{dx} \right) \left(\frac{dx}{dt} \right) = v \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

Hence, $dx = \frac{v dv}{a}$ and an integration provides position as a function of velocity. In summary,

$$\bar{t}(v) = \bar{t}(v_0) + \int_{v_0}^v \frac{1}{\bar{a}(u)} du, \quad \bar{x}(v) = \bar{x}(v_0) + \int_{v_0}^v \frac{u}{\bar{a}(u)} du.$$

We remark that the identity $a = v dv/dx$ is very useful. Among others, the identity is employed in Sections 2.5, 3.6.4, and 5.3 to help integrate the equations of motion for several mechanical systems involving the motions of particles.

1.4.3 Given Acceleration as a Function of Placement

The last case to consider is when $a = \hat{a}(x)$ is known and one seeks $\hat{v}(x)$ and $\hat{t}(x)$. Again, the former result is calculated using the identity $a = v dv/dx$, and the latter is calculated using the identity $dt = dx/v$:

$$\hat{v}^2(x) = \hat{v}^2(x_0) + 2 \int_{x_0}^x \hat{a}(u) du, \quad \hat{t}(x) = \hat{t}(x_0) + \int_{x_0}^x \frac{du}{\hat{v}(u)}.$$

The expression for $\hat{v}^2(x)$ will be used later on in this book. After reading Chapter 5, you should be able to see how this expression is related to energy conservation.

1.5 Kinetics of a Particle

Consider a particle of constant mass m . Let \mathbf{F} denote the resultant external force acting on the particle, and let $\mathbf{G} = m\mathbf{v}$ be the linear momentum of the particle. Euler's first law⁵ (also known as Newton's second law⁶ or the balance of linear momentum) postulates that

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{d\mathbf{G}}{dt} = m\mathbf{a}.$$

It is crucial to note that \mathbf{a} is the absolute acceleration vector of the particle. In what follows, we will write this equation with respect to several sets of basis vectors. For instance, with respect to a (right-handed) Cartesian basis, the vector equation $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is equivalent to three scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} F_x &= ma_x = m \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}, \\ F_y &= ma_y = m \frac{d^2y}{dt^2}, \\ F_z &= ma_z = m \frac{d^2z}{dt^2}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\mathbf{F} = F_x\mathbf{E}_x + F_y\mathbf{E}_y + F_z\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{a} = a_x\mathbf{E}_x + a_y\mathbf{E}_y + a_z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

1.5.1 Action and Reaction

When dealing with the forces of interaction between particles, a particle and a rigid body, and rigid bodies, we also invoke Newton's third law: "For every action there is an equal and opposite reaction." For example, consider a particle moving on a surface. From this law, the force exerted by the surface on the particle is equal

⁵ Leonhard Euler (1707–1783) made enormous contributions to mechanics and mathematics. We follow C. Truesdell (see Essays II and V in [97]) in crediting $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ to Euler. As noted by Truesdell, these differential equations can be seen in a 1749 paper by Euler [31, Pages 101–105]. Truesdell's essays also contain copies of certain parts of a related seminal paper [32] by Euler that was published in 1752.

⁶ Isaac Newton (1642–1727) wrote his second law in Volume 1 of his famous *Principia* in 1687 as follows: *The change of motion is proportional to the motive force impressed; and is made in the direction of the right line in which that force is impressed.* (Cf. [67, Page 13].)

in magnitude and opposite in direction to the force exerted by the particle on the surface.

1.5.2 The Four Steps

There are four steps to solving problems using $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$:

1. Pick an origin and a coordinate system, and then establish expressions for \mathbf{r} , \mathbf{v} , and \mathbf{a} .
2. Draw a free-body diagram.
3. Write out $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$.
4. Perform the analysis.

These four steps will guide you through most problems. We amend them later on, in an obvious manner, when dealing with rigid bodies. If you follow the steps, then you will hopefully find that it will help you organize your thoughts for homework problems and exams.

One item of note pertains to the free-body diagram. This diagram is a graphical summary of the external forces acting on the particle. As such, the diagram does not include any accelerations. Here, in contrast to some other treatments, free-body diagrams are used only as an easy visual check on one's work.

1.5.3 Drag Forces

In addition to the gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$, the examples in this chapter explore the effects of drag on the dynamics of a particle. In mechanics, it is assumed that the drag force \mathbf{F}_D opposes the motion of the particle relative to the fluid the particle is traveling through. Second, the magnitude of the drag force is assumed to be proportional to the speed of the particle relative to the medium that the particle is moving through. If we denote the absolute velocity of the fluid by \mathbf{w} and the absolute velocity of the particle by \mathbf{v} , then the former assumption implies that the drag force is in the direction of $-\frac{\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{w}}{\|\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{w}\|} = -\frac{\mathbf{v}-\mathbf{w}}{v_{\text{rel}}}$, where

$$v_{\text{rel}} = \|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}\|.$$

That is, v_{rel} is the speed of the particle relative to the medium that it is moving through. The assumption about the magnitude of \mathbf{F}_D implies that $\|\mathbf{F}_D\| = f(v_{\text{rel}})$ where f is a function that must be prescribed. In the sequel, we assume that the medium the particle is moving through is at rest so $\mathbf{w} = 0$ and $v_{\text{rel}} = v$.

The first of the two classic prescriptions for $f(v)$ dates to 1851 and is due to Stokes:⁷

$$f = c_S v, \quad \mathbf{F}_D = -c_S \mathbf{v},$$

where c_S is a constant. This prescription is used in situations where the particle is traveling through viscous fluids at low speeds. The second prescription, which is used for higher speeds and lower viscosities, is

$$f = \frac{1}{2} \rho C_d A v^2, \quad \mathbf{F}_D = -\frac{1}{2} \rho C_d A v \mathbf{v},$$

where C_d is a constant known as the drag coefficient, ρ is the density of the fluid through which the particle is moving, and A is the projected area of the particle in the direction of motion. Although some analytical results are available, the drag coefficients c_S and C_d are typically determined from experiments.

1.6 A Particle Under the Influence of Gravity

Consider a particle of mass m that is launched with an initial velocity \mathbf{v}_0 at $t = 0$. At this instant, $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_0$. During the subsequent motion of the particle it is under the influence of a vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$. In SI units, g is approximately 9.81 meters per second per second (m s^{-2}). One is asked to determine the path $\mathbf{r}(t)$ of the particle.

The example of interest is a standard projectile problem. It also provides a model for the motion of the center of mass of many falling bodies where the influence of drag forces is ignored. For example, it can be used as a coarse model for the motion of the center of mass of a vehicle falling through the air. To determine the motion of the particle predicted by this model, we follow the four aforementioned steps. After completing the analysis, we show how a drag force can be included.

1.6.1 Kinematics

For this problem it is convenient to use a Cartesian coordinate system. One then has the representations

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{a} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{y}\mathbf{E}_y + \ddot{z}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

⁷ George Gabriel Stokes (1819–1903) made several seminal contributions to mechanics and mathematics. These contributions include Stokes' theorem in calculus and the Navier–Stokes equations in fluid dynamics. For a perspective on Stokes' work and the research on drag that followed, we highly recommend Vecsey and Goldenfeld's paper [99].

1.6.2 Forces

The sole force acting on the particle is gravity, so $\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y$ and the free-body diagram is trivial. It is shown in Fig. 1.4.

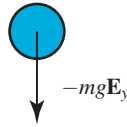


Fig. 1.4 Free-body diagram of a particle in a gravitational field.

1.6.3 Balance Law

From $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, we obtain three second-order ordinary differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned} m\ddot{x} &= 0, \\ m\ddot{y} &= -mg, \\ m\ddot{z} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

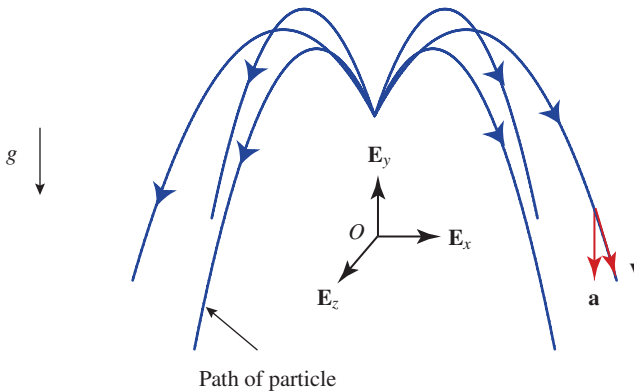


Fig. 1.5 Representative paths of a particle falling under the influence of gravity.

1.6.4 Analysis

The final step in solving the problem involves finding the solution to the previous differential equations that satisfies the given initial conditions:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{r}_0 &= \mathbf{r}(t=0) = x_0\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z, \\ \mathbf{v}_0 &= \mathbf{v}(t=0) = \dot{x}_0\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}_0\mathbf{E}_y + \dot{z}_0\mathbf{E}_z.\end{aligned}$$

The differential equations in question have simple solutions:

$$\begin{aligned}x(t) &= \dot{x}_0t + x_0, \\ y(t) &= -\frac{1}{2}gt^2 + \dot{y}_0t + y_0, \\ z(t) &= \dot{z}_0t + z_0.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, the motion of the particle can be written in a compact form:

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = \mathbf{r}_0 + \mathbf{v}_0t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2\mathbf{E}_y.$$

By specifying particular sets of initial conditions, the results for the motion of the particle apply to numerous special cases. Several representative examples of these paths where \mathbf{r}_0 is fixed and \mathbf{v}_0 is varied are shown in Fig. 1.5.

1.6.5 The Effects of a Drag Force

We now consider the modifications needed to the analysis if a drag force \mathbf{F}_D were included. Referring to Section 1.5.3, we consider the case where the magnitude of the drag force is proportional to the speed squared of the particle:

$$\mathbf{F}_D = -\frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A v \mathbf{v}.$$

In the sequel, we shall see that this force complicates the ordinary differential equations we obtain from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$.

After the drag force has been introduced, the resultant force on the particle becomes $\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y - \frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A v \mathbf{v}$. Using a balance of linear momentum, we arrive at the equations of motion:

$$m\ddot{x} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A v \dot{x}, \quad m\ddot{y} = -mg - \frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A v \dot{y}, \quad m\ddot{z} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A v \dot{z},$$

where

$$v = \sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2 + \dot{z}^2}.$$

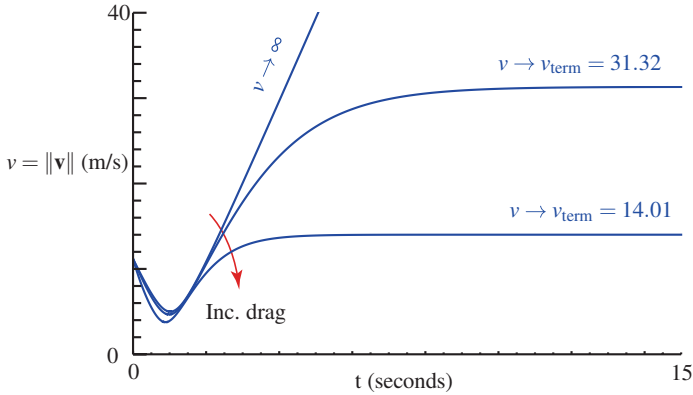


Fig. 1.6 The speed $v = \|\mathbf{v}\|$ of the particle as a function of time for the three particle paths shown in Fig. 1.1.

These differential equations of motion cannot be solved analytically. Instead, numerical methods are used to solve $x(t)$, $y(t)$, and $z(t)$. The resulting numerical solutions to the equations of motion for the values $\frac{\rho C_d A}{2m} = 0, 0.01$, and 0.05 and the initial conditions $\mathbf{r}(0) = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{v}(0) = 5\mathbf{E}_x + 10\mathbf{E}_y$ are shown in Fig. 1.1. The speed of the particle as a function of time for these three cases is shown in Fig. 1.6.

You may have noticed from Fig. 1.1 that as the drag coefficient C_d increases the trajectory deviates more and more from the parabolic form of the drag-free case. In the presence of drag, the trajectory asymptotes to a rectilinear vertical motion and the speed of the particle asymptotes to the terminal velocity v_{term} . To compute the terminal velocity, we set the accelerations to zero in the equations of motion and solve for the resulting velocity vector:

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{term}} = -v_{\text{term}}\mathbf{E}_y = -\left(\frac{2mg}{\rho C_d A}\right)^{1/2} \mathbf{E}_y.$$

Clearly, the terminal speed v_{term} is independent of the initial velocity vector of the particle and tends to ∞ as $C_d \rightarrow 0$ (see Fig. 1.6). You should also notice that as time progresses, the tangent to the path of the particle approaches $-\mathbf{E}_y$.

1.7 An Example from Aerosol Science

The material presented in this chapter also finds application to understanding the dynamics of solid particles or liquid droplets in a gas. These suspensions are known as aerosols. Examples of aerosols range from hair sprays to clouds, and there is a large body of scientific and engineering works seeking to model and analyze their

dynamics. We now consider the example of an aerosol spray, and discuss a model for the path of the particulates in the spray. The two primary forces assumed to act on the particulate are a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ and a Stokes drag force:

$$\mathbf{F}_D = -c_S\mathbf{v},$$

where c_S is a positive constant. The model for the particulate that we are using is adopted from the text of Flagan and Seinfeld [39, Chapter 5].

Suppose that the particulate exits the spray can with a velocity vector \mathbf{v}_0 as shown in Fig. 1.7. We seek to determine the path of the particulate, how far the particulate travels in the horizontal direction (the reach of the particulate), and the terminal velocity of the particulate.

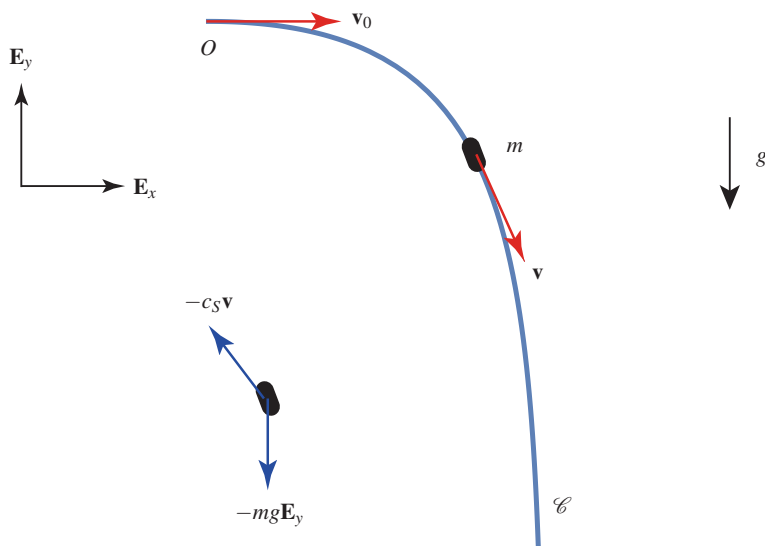


Fig. 1.7 The path \mathcal{C} of a particulate ejected with an initial velocity \mathbf{v}_0 from the nozzle of an aerosol can. The free-body diagram of the particle is shown as an inset image.

1.7.1 Kinematics

Referring to Fig. 1.7, we model the particulate as a particle of mass m that exits the aerosol can with the following initial position vector and initial velocity vector:

$$\mathbf{r}(t=0) = \mathbf{0}, \quad \mathbf{v}(t=0) = \mathbf{v}_0 = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + v_{0y}\mathbf{E}_y.$$

Note the choice of origin and the choice of the $x - y - z$ coordinate system so that $\mathbf{v}_0 \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = 0$. The position and acceleration vectors of the particle during the ensuing motion have the following representations:

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{a} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{y}\mathbf{E}_y + \ddot{z}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

In the sequel, we shall determine $x(t)$, $y(t)$, and $z(t)$.

1.7.2 Forces

The forces acting on the particle are gravity and a Stokes force:

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y - c_S\mathbf{v}.$$

The free-body diagram is shown as an inset image in Fig. 1.7.

1.7.3 Balance Law

The equation of motion for the particle is found from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$:

$$m\dot{\mathbf{v}} = -c_S\mathbf{v} - mg\mathbf{E}_y.$$

This balance law gives three differential equations:

$$\ddot{x} = -\frac{c_S}{m}\dot{x}, \quad \ddot{y} = -\frac{c_S}{m}\dot{y} - g, \quad \ddot{z} = -\frac{c_S}{m}\dot{z}.$$

To determine the path of the particulate, we will seek solutions to these three second-order differential equations subject to the initial conditions $\mathbf{r}(t = 0) = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{v}(t = 0) = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + v_{0y}\mathbf{E}_y$.

1.7.4 Analysis

In contrast to the example of a particle subject to a drag force that was proportional to v^2 discussed earlier in Section 1.6.5, the differential equations governing x , y , and z can be solved analytically using the methodology discussed in Section 1.4.2. A faster method of solution is to note that the differential equation $m\dot{y} = -c_S\dot{y} - mg$ can be rearranged to show that

$$\frac{dv_y}{\frac{c_S}{m}v_y + g} = -dt,$$

where $v_y = \dot{y}$. It is straightforward to integrate this equation and then impose the initial condition $v_y(0) = v_{0y}$ to arrive at the expression

$$v_y(t) = v_{0y} e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t} - \frac{mg}{c_S} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t}\right).$$

A further time integration and imposition of the initial condition $y(0) = 0$ gives

$$y(t) = \frac{m}{c_S} \left[1 - e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t}\right] v_{0y} + \frac{mg}{c_S} \left[\frac{m}{c_S} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t}\right) - t\right].$$

The corresponding expressions for $x(t)$ and $z(t)$ are obtained from $y(t)$ by setting $g = 0$ and changing the initial velocity.

We can combine the expressions for $x(t)$, $y(t)$, and $z(t)$ and their velocities using a vector notation:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r}(t) &= \frac{m}{c_S} \left[1 - e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t}\right] \mathbf{v}_0 + \frac{mg}{c_S} \left[\frac{m}{c_S} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t}\right) - t\right] \mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{v}(t) &= e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t} \mathbf{v}_0 - \frac{mg}{c_S} \left(1 - e^{-\frac{c_S}{m}t}\right) \mathbf{E}_y. \end{aligned}$$

An example of the path of the particulate computed using this expression for $\mathbf{r}(t)$ is shown in Fig. 1.7. The terminal velocity vector of the particulate is found by letting $t \rightarrow \infty$ in the expression for $\mathbf{v}(t)$:

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{v}(t) = -\frac{mg}{c_S} \mathbf{E}_y.$$

Note that as time progresses the particulate's motion in the horizontal direction reaches a limit. This limit is known as the reach. For the example at hand, we compute that the reach is

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} x(t) = \frac{mv_{0x}}{c_S}.$$

Thus, for a given c_S , the higher the speed v_{0x} that the particulate exits the aerosol can, the further it travels in the horizontal direction. This result is physically reasonable and conforms to our expectations.

1.8 Summary

In this chapter, several definitions of kinematical quantities pertaining to a single particle were presented. In particular, the position vector \mathbf{r} relative to a fixed origin was defined. This vector defines the path of the particle. Furthermore, the velocity \mathbf{v} and acceleration \mathbf{a} vectors were defined:

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt}, \quad \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a}(t) = \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}}{dt^2}.$$

These vectors can also be defined as functions of the arc-length parameter s : $\mathbf{v} = \hat{\mathbf{v}}(s)$ and $\mathbf{a} = \hat{\mathbf{a}}(s)$. Here, s is defined by integrating the differential equation $\dot{s} = \|\mathbf{v}\|$. The parameter s can be used to determine the distance travelled by the particle along its path. Using the chain rule, it was shown that

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{s} \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds}, \quad \mathbf{a} = \dot{s}^2 \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}}{ds^2} + \ddot{s} \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds}.$$

Two special cases of the aforementioned results were discussed in Sections 1.3 and 1.4. First, in Section 1.3, the kinematics of a particle moving in a circular path was discussed. Then, in Section 1.4, the corresponding quantities pertaining to rectilinear motion were presented.

The balance of linear momentum $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ was then introduced. This law relates the motion of the particle to the resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the particle. In Cartesian coordinates, it can be written as three scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} F_x &= ma_x = m\ddot{x}, \\ F_y &= ma_y = m\ddot{y}, \\ F_z &= ma_z = m\ddot{z}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\mathbf{F} = F_x\mathbf{E}_x + F_y\mathbf{E}_y + F_z\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{a} = a_x\mathbf{E}_x + a_y\mathbf{E}_y + a_z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

In order to develop a helpful problem-solving methodology, a series of four steps was introduced. These steps are designed to provide a systematic framework to help guide you through problems. To illustrate the steps, a well-known projectile problem was discussed in Section 1.6 and a model for the motion of a particulate in an aerosol was discussed in Section 1.7.

1.9 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 1.1: Why are the time derivatives of \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z all equal to zero?

Exercise 1.2: Suppose that you are given a vector as a function of s : $\mathbf{f}(s)$. Why do you need to know how s depends on time t in order to determine the derivative of \mathbf{f} as a function of time?

Exercise 1.3: Consider a particle of mass m that lies at rest on a horizontal surface. A vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ acts on the particle. Draw a free-body diagram of the particle. If one follows the four steps, then why is it a mistake to write $mg\mathbf{E}_y$ for the normal force instead of $N\mathbf{E}_y$, where N is unknown, in the free-body diagram?

Exercise 1.4: The motion of a particle is such that its position vector $\mathbf{r}(t) = 10\mathbf{E}_x + 10t\mathbf{E}_y + 5t\mathbf{E}_z$ (meters). Show that the path of the particle is a straight line and that

the particle moves along this line at a constant speed of $\sqrt{125}$ meters per second. Furthermore, show that the force \mathbf{F} needed to sustain this motion is $\mathbf{0}$.

Exercise 1.5: The motion of a particle is such that its position vector $\mathbf{r}(t) = 3t\mathbf{E}_x + 4t\mathbf{E}_y + 10t\mathbf{E}_z$ (meters). Show that the path of the particle is a straight line and that the particle moves along this line at a constant speed of 5 meters per second. Using this information, show that the arc-length parameter s is given by $s(t) = 5(t - t_0) + s_0$. Finally, show that the particle moves 50 meters along its path every 10 seconds.

Exercise 1.6: The motion of a particle is such that its position vector $\mathbf{r}(t) = 10\cos(n\pi t)\mathbf{E}_x + 10\sin(n\pi t)\mathbf{E}_y$ (meters). Show that the particle is moving on a circle of radius 10 meters and describes a complete circle every $2/n$ seconds. If the particle has a mass of 2 kilograms, then what force \mathbf{F} is needed to sustain this motion?

Exercise 1.7: To model the free-fall of a ball of mass m , the ball is modeled as a particle of the same mass. Suppose the particle is dropped from the top of a 100 meter high building. Following the steps discussed in Section 1.6, show that it takes $\sqrt{200/9.81}$ seconds for the ball to reach the ground. Furthermore, show that it will hit the ground at a speed of $\sqrt{1962}$ meters per second.⁸

Exercise 1.8: A projectile is launched at time $t_0 = 0$ seconds from a location $\mathbf{r}(t_0) = \mathbf{0}$. The initial velocity of the projectile is $\mathbf{v}(t_0) = v_0\cos(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_x + v_0\sin(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_y$. Here, v_0 and α are constants. During its flight, a vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ acts on the projectile. Modeling the projectile as a particle of mass m , show that its path is a parabola:

$$y(x) = -\left(\frac{g}{2v_0^2\cos^2(\alpha)}\right)x^2 + \tan(\alpha)x.$$

Why is this result not valid when $\alpha = \pm 90^\circ$?

⁸ This speed is equal to 99.09 miles per hour.

Chapter 2

Particles and Cylindrical Polar Coordinates



TOPICS

Here, we discuss the cylindrical polar coordinate system and how it can be used in particle mechanics. This coordinate system and its associated basis vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_r, \mathbf{e}_\theta, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ find application in a range of problems including particles moving on circular arcs and helical curves. To illustrate applications of the cylindrical polar coordinate system to particle mechanics, two examples involving planar pendula are discussed (cf. Fig. 2.1) and a qualitative discussion of some aspects of their dynamics is presented.

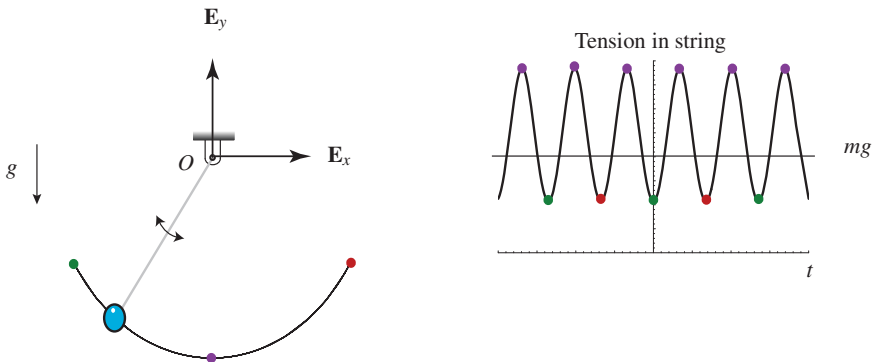


Fig. 2.1 An example of the motion of a pendulum. The behavior of the tension T in the string during this motion is also shown.

2.1 The Cylindrical Polar Coordinate System

Consider the pendulum system shown in Fig. 2.1. Here, a particle of mass m is attached by an inextensible string of length ℓ to a fixed point O . Assuming that the string remains taut, then the distance from O to the particle remains constant: $\|\mathbf{r}\| = \ell$. This system is a prototypical example of a situation where a polar coordinate system can be effectively used.

To define a cylindrical polar coordinate system $\{r, \theta, z\}$, we start with a Cartesian coordinate system $\{x, y, z\}$ for the three-dimensional space \mathbb{E}^3 . Using these coordinates, we define r , θ , and z as

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \quad \theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right), \quad z = z.$$

The coordinate $r \geq 0$. Apart from the points $\{x, y, z\} = \{0, 0, z\}$, given r , θ , and z , we can uniquely determine x , y , and z :

$$x = r \cos(\theta), \quad y = r \sin(\theta), \quad z = z.$$

Here, θ is taken to be positive in the counterclockwise direction.

If we now consider the position vector \mathbf{r} of a point in this space, we have, as always,

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

We can write this position vector using cylindrical polar coordinates by substituting for x and y in terms of r and θ :

$$\mathbf{r} = r \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + r \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Before we use this representation to establish expressions for the velocity and acceleration vectors, it is convenient to introduce the unit vectors \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{e}_θ :

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_r \\ \mathbf{e}_\theta \\ \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) & 0 \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_x \\ \mathbf{E}_y \\ \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

Two of these vectors are shown in Fig. 2.2.

Note that $\{\mathbf{e}_r, \mathbf{e}_\theta, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ are orthonormal and form a right-handed basis¹ for \mathbb{E}^3 . You should also be able to see that

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_x \\ \mathbf{E}_y \\ \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_r \\ \mathbf{e}_\theta \\ \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

¹ Details of these results are discussed in Section A.4 of Appendix A.

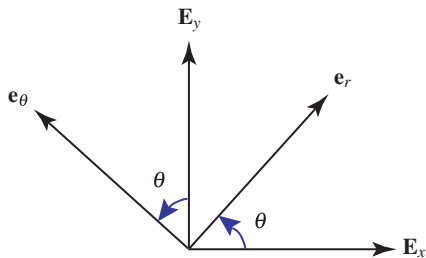


Fig. 2.2 The unit vectors \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{e}_θ are obtained by rotating \mathbf{E}_x and \mathbf{E}_y , respectively, about \mathbf{E}_z through an angle θ .

Because $\mathbf{e}_r = \mathbf{e}_r(\theta)$ and $\mathbf{e}_\theta = \mathbf{e}_\theta(\theta)$, these vectors change as θ changes:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{d\theta} &= -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y = \mathbf{e}_\theta, \\ \frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{d\theta} &= -\cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x - \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y = -\mathbf{e}_r.\end{aligned}$$

It is crucial to note that θ is measured positive in the counterclockwise direction.

Returning to the position vector \mathbf{r} , it follows that

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z = \underbrace{r\cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + r\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y}_{=r\mathbf{e}_r} + z\mathbf{E}_z = r\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Furthermore, because $\{\mathbf{e}_r, \mathbf{e}_\theta, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ is a basis, we have, for any vector \mathbf{b} , that

$$\mathbf{b} = b_r\mathbf{e}_r + b_\theta\mathbf{e}_\theta + b_z\mathbf{E}_z = b_x\mathbf{E}_x + b_y\mathbf{E}_y + b_z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

By taking the \mathbf{e}_r , \mathbf{e}_θ , and \mathbf{E}_z components of this equation, we find the relationships between the Cartesian and cylindrical polar components of a vector:

$$\begin{bmatrix} b_r = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_r \\ b_\theta = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_\theta \\ b_z = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) & 0 \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_x = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ b_y = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ b_z = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

We leave it as an exercise to compute the inverse of these relations.

2.2 Velocity and Acceleration Vectors

Consider a particle moving in space: $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$. We recall that

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

As the particle is in motion, its coordinates are functions of time: $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$, $r = r(t)$, $\theta = \theta(t)$, and $z = z(t)$. To calculate the (absolute) velocity vector \mathbf{v} of the particle, we differentiate $\mathbf{r}(t)$:

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{dr}{dt}\mathbf{e}_r + r\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{dt} + \frac{dz}{dt}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

We recall that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{d\theta} = -\mathbf{e}_r, \quad \frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{d\theta} = \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Thus, using the chain rule,

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}}_r = \dot{\theta}\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{d\theta} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_\theta = \dot{\theta}\frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{d\theta} = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_r.$$

It follows from these intermediate results that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \frac{dr}{dt}\mathbf{e}_r + r\frac{d\theta}{dt}\mathbf{e}_\theta + \frac{dz}{dt}\mathbf{E}_z \\ &= \frac{dx}{dt}\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{dy}{dt}\mathbf{E}_y + \frac{dz}{dt}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

To calculate the (absolute) acceleration vector \mathbf{a} , we differentiate \mathbf{v} with respect to time:

$$\mathbf{a} = \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{dr}{dt}\mathbf{e}_r\right) + \frac{d}{dt}\left(r\frac{d\theta}{dt}\mathbf{e}_\theta\right) + \frac{d^2z}{dt^2}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

After recalling that $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_r = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$ and $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_\theta = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_r$, and collecting terms in the expressions for \mathbf{a} , the final form of the results is obtained:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} &= \left(\frac{d^2r}{dt^2} - r\left(\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)^2\right)\mathbf{e}_r + \left(r\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + 2\frac{dr}{dt}\frac{d\theta}{dt}\right)\mathbf{e}_\theta + \frac{d^2z}{dt^2}\mathbf{E}_z \\ &= \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{d^2y}{dt^2}\mathbf{E}_y + \frac{d^2z}{dt^2}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

We have also included the representations for the velocity and acceleration vectors in Cartesian coordinates to emphasize the fact that the values of these vectors do not depend on the coordinate system used.

2.2.1 Common Errors

From experience, the most common error with using cylindrical polar coordinates is to write $\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r + \theta\mathbf{e}_\theta + z\mathbf{E}_z$. *This is not true.* Another mistake is to differentiate \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{e}_θ incorrectly with respect to time. Last, but not least, many people presume

that all of the results presented here apply when θ is taken to be positive in the clockwise direction. Alas, this is not the case.

2.3 Kinetics of a Particle

Consider a particle of mass m . Let \mathbf{F} denote the resultant external force acting on the particle, and let $\mathbf{G} = m\mathbf{v}$ be the linear momentum of the particle. Euler's first law (also known as Newton's second law or the balance of linear momentum) postulates that

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{d\mathbf{G}}{dt} = m\mathbf{a}.$$

With respect to a Cartesian basis $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is equivalent to three scalar equations:

$$F_x = ma_x = m\ddot{x}, \quad F_y = ma_y = m\ddot{y}, \quad F_z = ma_z = m\ddot{z},$$

where $\mathbf{F} = F_x\mathbf{E}_x + F_y\mathbf{E}_y + F_z\mathbf{E}_z$ and $\mathbf{a} = a_x\mathbf{E}_x + a_y\mathbf{E}_y + a_z\mathbf{E}_z$.

With respect to a cylindrical polar coordinate system, the single vector equation $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is equivalent to three scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_r &: F_r = m \left(\frac{d^2r}{dt^2} - r \left(\frac{d\theta}{dt} \right)^2 \right), \\ (\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_\theta &: F_\theta = m \left(r \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} + 2 \frac{dr}{dt} \frac{d\theta}{dt} \right), \\ (\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z &: F_z = m \frac{d^2z}{dt^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, we recall for emphasis the relations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_r &= \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{e}_\theta &= -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{E}_x &= \cos(\theta)\mathbf{e}_r - \sin(\theta)\mathbf{e}_\theta, \\ \mathbf{E}_y &= \sin(\theta)\mathbf{e}_r + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{e}_\theta. \end{aligned}$$

You will use these relations countless times in an undergraduate engineering dynamics course.

2.4 The Planar Pendulum

The planar pendulum is a classical problem in mechanics. As shown in Fig. 2.3, a particle of mass m is suspended from a fixed point O either by an inextensible

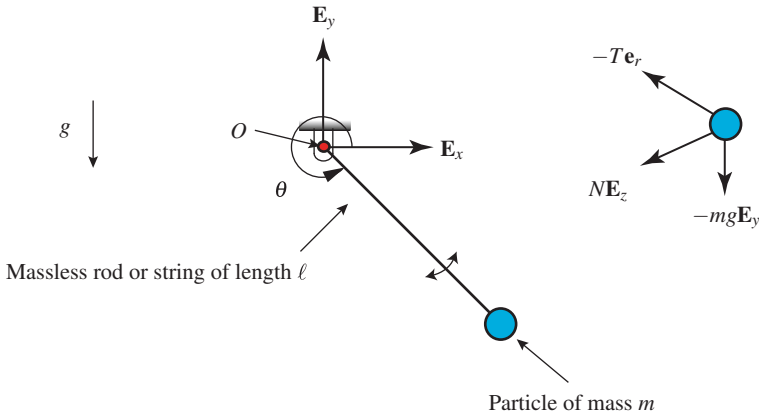


Fig. 2.3 The planar pendulum and the free-body diagram of the particle of mass m .

massless string or rigid massless rod of length ℓ . The particle is free to move on a plane ($z = 0$), and during its motion a vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ acts on the particle.

We ask the following questions: what are the equations governing the motion of the particle and what is the tension in the string or rod? The answers to these questions are used to construct the motion of the particle and the plot of tension as a function of time that were shown in Fig. 2.1 at the beginning of this chapter.

2.4.1 Kinematics

We begin by establishing some kinematical results. We note that $\mathbf{r} = \ell\mathbf{e}_r$. Differentiating with respect to t , and noting that ℓ is constant, gives us the velocity \mathbf{v} . Similarly, we obtain \mathbf{a} from \mathbf{v} :

$$\mathbf{v} = \ell \frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{dt} = \ell \frac{d\theta}{dt} \mathbf{e}_\theta,$$

$$\mathbf{a} = \ell \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} \mathbf{e}_\theta + \ell \frac{d\theta}{dt} \frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{dt} = \ell \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} \mathbf{e}_\theta - \ell \left(\frac{d\theta}{dt} \right)^2 \mathbf{e}_r.$$

Alternatively, one can get these results by substituting $r = \ell$ and $z = 0$ in the general expressions recorded in Section 2.2. We do not recommend this approach inasmuch as it emphasizes memorization.

2.4.2 Forces

Next, as shown in Fig. 2.3, we draw a free-body diagram. There is a tension force $-T\mathbf{e}_r$ and a normal force $N\mathbf{E}_z$ acting on a particle. The role of the tension force is to ensure that the distance of the particle from the origin is ℓ and the normal force ensures that there is no motion in the direction of \mathbf{E}_z . These two forces are known as constraint forces. They are indeterminate (we need to use $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ to determine them). One should also note that the gravitational force has the representations

$$-mg\mathbf{E}_y = -mg\sin(\theta)\mathbf{e}_r - mg\cos(\theta)\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

2.4.3 Balance Law

The third step is to write down the balance of linear momentum ($\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$):

$$-T\mathbf{e}_r + N\mathbf{E}_z - mg\mathbf{E}_y = m\ell\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta - m\ell\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{e}_r.$$

We obtain three scalar equations from this vector equation:

$$m\ell\ddot{\theta} = -mg\cos(\theta), \quad T = m\ell\dot{\theta}^2 - mg\sin(\theta), \quad N = 0.$$

It is useful to observe that $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ has provided us with three scalar equations for three unknowns. As expected, the third of these equations states that the normal force $N\mathbf{E}_z$ that is needed to maintain planar motion of the particle is zero.

We can perform a quick check on the differential equation $m\ell\ddot{\theta} = -mg\cos(\theta)$ for θ . Suppose the pendulum is at rest hanging vertically downwards: $\theta(t_0) = -\pi/2$ and $\dot{\theta}(t_0) = 0$. As $\cos(-\pi/2) = 0$, the differential equation implies that $\ddot{\theta}(t_0) = 0$. Consequently, $\dot{\theta}$ remains at 0. As $\dot{\theta} = 0$, θ remains at $-\pi/2$ and (as expected) the pendulum remains at rest.

2.4.4 Analysis

The first of the equations we established from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is a second-order differential equation for $\theta(t)$:

$$m\ell\ddot{\theta} = -mg\cos(\theta).$$

Given the initial conditions $\theta(t_0)$ and $\dot{\theta}(t_0)$, one can solve this equation and determine the motion of the particle. Next, the second equation that $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provided gives the tension T in the string or rod once $\theta(t)$ is known:

$$-T\mathbf{e}_r = -(m\ell\dot{\theta}^2 - mg\sin(\theta))\mathbf{e}_r.$$

A representative example of the behavior of T during a motion of the pendulum is shown in Fig. 2.1. This figure was constructed by first numerically solving the ordinary differential equations for $\theta(t)$ and then computing the corresponding $T(t)$.

For a string, it is normally assumed that $T > 0$, and for some motions of the string it is possible that this assumption is violated. In this case, the particle behaves as if it were free to move on the plane and $r \neq \ell$. Regardless, the normal force $N\mathbf{E}_z$ is zero in this problem.

2.5 Lifting a Pendulum

For our next application of the material on cylindrical polar coordinates, imagine a pendulum of length ℓ and mass m that is suspended from a fixed point O by a pin joint (cf. Fig. 2.4). Suppose a light cable is attached to the mass particle and the pendulum is pulled upwards by the application of a constant force $\mathbf{P} = -P_0\mathbf{E}_x$ to the end of the cable. We seek to determine the minimum force needed to raise the pendulum from the downwards position to a horizontal position. In addition, for forces whose magnitude is greater than this minimum, we wish to determine the speed of the particle when the pendulum reaches the horizontal position.

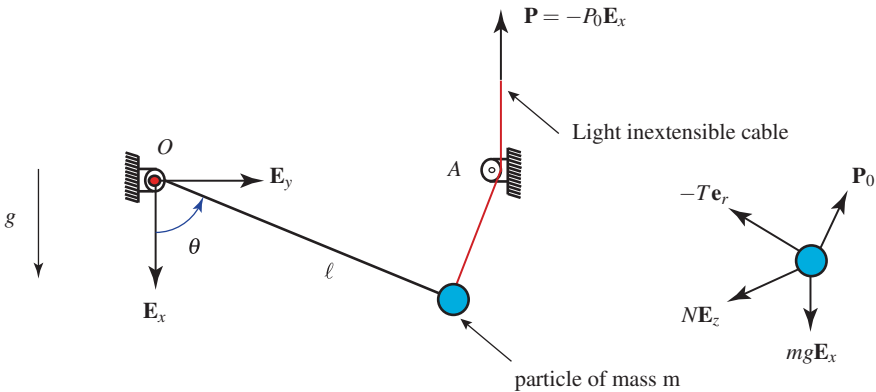


Fig. 2.4 A planar pendulum of mass m and length ℓ . An applied force \mathbf{P}_0 having a constant magnitude $P_0 > 0$ acts on the particle and raises the pendulum from the downwards vertical position. The inset image shows the free-body diagram of the particle. The forces \mathbf{P}_0 and \mathbf{P} have the same magnitudes but different directions.

2.5.1 Kinematics

As shown in Fig. 2.4, we model the pendulum as a particle of mass m attached to a fixed point O by a massless rod of length ℓ . In contrast to our earlier choice of Cartesian coordinates, we choose \mathbf{E}_x to point vertically downwards and \mathbf{E}_y to point in the horizontal direction. The motion of the pendulum is assumed to lie in the vertical plane:

$$\mathbf{r} = \ell \mathbf{e}_r.$$

Differentiating this representation for \mathbf{r} and using the identities $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_r = \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta$ and $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_\theta = -\dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_r$ gives expressions for the velocity and acceleration vectors:

$$\mathbf{v} = \ell \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \mathbf{a} = \ell \ddot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta - \ell \dot{\theta}^2 \mathbf{e}_r.$$

We assume that the point A where the cable transmitting the force \mathbf{P} is passed has a position vector

$$\mathbf{r}_A = \ell \mathbf{E}_y.$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A &= \ell (\mathbf{e}_r - \mathbf{E}_y), \\ \|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| &= \ell \sqrt{(\sin(\theta) - 1)^2 + \cos^2(\theta)} = \ell \sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta))}. \end{aligned}$$

Whence,

$$\frac{\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta))}} (\mathbf{E}_y - \mathbf{e}_r).$$

Observe that when $\theta = 90^\circ$, the particle of mass m is at A : $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_A$.

2.5.2 Forces

As shown in the inset image in Fig. 2.4, we now draw a free-body diagram. As with the earlier example of a planar pendulum, there is a tension force $-T \mathbf{e}_r$ and a normal force $M \mathbf{E}_z$ acting on a particle. For the choice of Cartesian coordinates used in this problem, the gravitational force has the representations

$$mg \mathbf{E}_x = mg \cos(\theta) \mathbf{e}_r - mg \sin(\theta) \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

The force \mathbf{P} acting on the cable is transmitted to the particle as a force \mathbf{P}_0 of magnitude P_0 in the direction of $\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}$:

$$\mathbf{P}_0 = P_0 \frac{\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|}.$$

We assume that \mathbf{P} induces a tension in the cable, so $P_0 > 0$. The resultant force acting on the particle is $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{P}_0 + mg\mathbf{E}_x + N\mathbf{E}_z - T\mathbf{e}_r$.

2.5.3 Balance Law

The third step is to write down $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. We take the \mathbf{e}_r , \mathbf{e}_θ , and \mathbf{E}_z components of this equation to arrive at the equations

$$\begin{aligned} -T + \mathbf{P}_0 \cdot \mathbf{e}_r + mg\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \mathbf{e}_r &= -m\ell\dot{\theta}^2, \\ \mathbf{P}_0 \cdot \mathbf{e}_\theta + mg\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \mathbf{e}_\theta &= m\ell\ddot{\theta}, \\ N &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Evaluating the dot products in these equations, we arrive at a second-order differential equation for θ and expressions for the tension force component T and normal force component N :

$$\begin{aligned} T &= mg \cos(\theta) + m\ell\dot{\theta}^2 - \frac{(1 - \sin(\theta))P_0}{\sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta))}}, & N &= 0, \\ m\ell\ddot{\theta} &= -mg \sin(\theta) + \frac{P_0 \cos(\theta)}{\sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta))}}. \end{aligned}$$

For future purposes, it is illuminating to note that the differential equation for $\theta(t)$ can be written as

$$m\ell\ddot{\theta} = \frac{d}{d\theta} \left(mg \cos(\theta) - P_0 \sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta))} \right).$$

This representation of the differential equation will enable us to easily find $\int \ddot{\theta} d\theta$.

2.5.4 Analysis

Having found the differential equation for θ , we can integrate the equation to determine the motion of the particle. We note that the equation is of the form $a = a(x)$ where $a = \ddot{\theta}$ and $x = \theta$. Hence, we can use the identity

$$\ddot{\theta} = \dot{\theta} \frac{d\dot{\theta}}{d\theta}$$

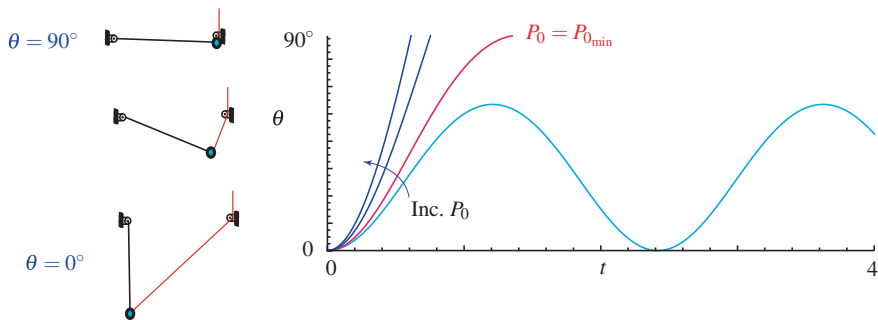


Fig. 2.5 The angle $\theta(t)$ for four distinct values of P_0 . The pendulum will simply oscillate back and forth from the downwards vertical position when $0 < P_0 < P_{0\min}$. For the results shown in this figure, $m = 1$ kilogram, $\ell = 1$ meter, and $P_0/P_{0\min} = 0.8, 1, 1.5,$ and 2.0 .

that we discussed in Section 1.4, to determine the speed $\dot{\theta}$ as a function of θ :²

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\theta}^2(\theta_1) - \dot{\theta}^2(\theta_0) &= \frac{2g}{\ell} (\cos(\theta_1) - \cos(\theta_0)) \\ &\quad - \frac{2P_0}{m\ell} \left(\sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta_1))} - \sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta_0))} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Now suppose that the pendulum is initially hanging vertically downwards at rest: $\theta_0 = 0$ and $\dot{\theta}(\theta_0) = 0$. If $\mathbf{P} = -P_0\mathbf{E}_x$ is applied, then the particle will start to move. If P_0 is sufficiently large, then the value of $\dot{\theta}$ when the pendulum becomes horizontal is given by the solution to

$$\dot{\theta}^2\left(\theta_1 = \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = -\frac{2g}{\ell} + \frac{2\sqrt{2}P_0}{m\ell}.$$

In other words, we need P_0 to be greater than a minimum value in order for the particle to reach the horizontal:

$$P_0 \geq P_{0\min} = \frac{mg}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

When $P_0 > P_{0\min}$, the particle will collide with A. At this instant of impact, the model we have presented is invalid and the impact and postimpact events must be modeled.

To examine the behavior of the particle for various values of P_0 , we numerically integrated the differential equation for θ and determined $\theta(t)$. A sample of the results of these computations are shown in Fig. 2.5. Referring to this figure, we observe that, when $P_0 < P_{0\min}$, the pendulum oscillates to and from 0 to a maximum

² We shall discuss this result again in Section 5.9.5 on Page 114 and show that the result is equivalent to energy conservation.

value of $\theta < 90^\circ$. When $P_0 = P_{0\min}$, the pendulum eventually reaches the horizontal and its velocity at this point is 0. For values of P_0 greater than $P_{0\min}$, θ will reach 90° . The particle's speed $v = \ell \dot{\theta}$ ($\theta_1 = 90^\circ$) at this impact can easily be computed using the expression for $\dot{\theta}^2$ (θ_1) that we established previously by setting $\theta_1 = 90^\circ$:

$$v = \sqrt{2g\ell \left(\frac{P_0}{P_{0\min}} - 1 \right)}.$$

Observe that the speed increases with increasing P_0 .

2.6 Summary

In this chapter, the cylindrical polar coordinate system $\{r, \theta, z\}$ was introduced. To assist with certain expressions, the vectors $\mathbf{e}_r = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y$ and $\mathbf{e}_\theta = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y$ were introduced. It was also shown that the position vector of a particle has the representations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r} &= r\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z \\ &= r\cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + r\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z \\ &= x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

By differentiating \mathbf{r} with respect to time, the velocity and acceleration vectors were obtained. These vectors have the representations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta + \dot{z}\mathbf{E}_z \\ &= \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y + \dot{z}\mathbf{E}_z, \\ \mathbf{a} &= \frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = (\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2)\mathbf{e}_r + (r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta})\mathbf{e}_\theta + \ddot{z}\mathbf{E}_z \\ &= \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{y}\mathbf{E}_y + \ddot{z}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

To establish these results, the chain rule and the important identities $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_r = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$ and $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_\theta = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_r$ were used.

Using a cylindrical polar coordinate system, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ can be written as three scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} F_r &= m(\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2), \\ F_\theta &= m(r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta}), \\ F_z &= m\ddot{z}. \end{aligned}$$

These equations were illustrated using examples involving a particle of mass m attached to a fixed point by a massless rod of length ℓ .

2.7 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 2.1: Using Fig. 2.2, verify that $\mathbf{e}_r = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y$ and $\mathbf{e}_\theta = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y$. Then, by considering cases where \mathbf{e}_r lies in the second, third, and fourth quadrants, verify that these definitions are valid for all values of θ .

Exercise 2.2: Starting from the definitions $\mathbf{e}_r = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y$ and $\mathbf{e}_\theta = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y$, show that $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_r = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$ and $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_\theta = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_r$. In addition, verify that $\mathbf{E}_x = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{e}_r - \sin(\theta)\mathbf{e}_\theta$ and $\mathbf{E}_y = \sin(\theta)\mathbf{e}_r + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{e}_\theta$.

Exercise 2.3: Calculate the velocity vectors of particles whose position vectors are $10\mathbf{e}_r$ and $5\mathbf{e}_r + t\mathbf{E}_z$, where $\theta = \pi t$. Why do all of these particles move with constant speed $\|\mathbf{v}\|$ yet have a nonzero acceleration?

Exercise 2.4: The position vector of a particle of mass m that is placed at the end of a rotating telescoping rod is $\mathbf{r} = 6t\mathbf{e}_r$, where $\theta = 10t + 5$ (radians). Calculate the velocity and acceleration vectors of the particle, and determine the force \mathbf{F} needed to sustain the motion of the particle. What is the force that the particle exerts on the telescoping rod?

Exercise 2.5: In solving a problem, one person uses cylindrical polar coordinates whereas another uses Cartesian coordinates. To check that their answers are identical, they need to examine the relationship between the Cartesian and cylindrical polar components of a certain vector, say $\mathbf{b} = b_r\mathbf{e}_r + b_\theta\mathbf{e}_\theta$. To this end, show that

$$b_x = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x = b_r \cos(\theta) - b_\theta \sin(\theta), \quad b_y = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y = b_r \sin(\theta) + b_\theta \cos(\theta).$$

Exercise 2.6: Consider the projectile problem discussed in Section 1.6 of Chapter 1. Using a cylindrical polar coordinate system, show that the equations governing the motion of the particle are

$$m\ddot{r} - m\dot{\theta}^2 = -mg \sin(\theta), \quad m\ddot{\theta} + 2m\dot{r}\dot{\theta} = -mg \cos(\theta), \quad m\ddot{z} = 0.$$

Notice that, in contrast to using Cartesian coordinates to determine the governing equations, solving these differential equations is nontrivial.

Exercise 2.7: Consider a spherical bead of mass m and radius R that is placed inside a long cylindrical tube. The inner radius of the tube is R , and the tube is pivoted so that it rotates in a horizontal plane. Furthermore, the contact between the tube and the bead is smooth. Here, the bead is modeled as a particle of mass m . Now suppose that the tube is whirled at a constant angular speed Ω (radians per

second). The whirling motion of the tube is such that the velocity vector of the bead is $\mathbf{v} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + \Omega r\mathbf{e}_\theta$. Show that the equation governing the motion of the bead is

$$\ddot{r} - \Omega^2 r = 0,$$

and the force exerted by the tube on the particle is $mg\mathbf{E}_z + 2m\dot{r}\Omega\mathbf{e}_\theta$.

Exercise 2.8: Consider the case where the bead is initially at rest relative to the center of the whirling tube at a location $r = r_0$. Using the solution to the differential equation $\ddot{r} - \Omega^2 r = 0$ recorded in Section A.5.3 of Appendix A, show that, unless $r_0 = 0$, the bead discussed in the previous exercise will eventually exit the whirling tube.

Chapter 3

Particles and Space Curves



TOPICS

We discuss the differential geometry of space curves (a curve embedded in Euclidean three-space \mathbb{E}^3) in this chapter. In particular, we introduce the Serret-Frenet basis vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$. This is followed by the derivation of an elegant set of relations describing the rate of change of the tangent \mathbf{e}_t , principal normal \mathbf{e}_n , and binormal \mathbf{e}_b vectors. Several examples of space curves are then discussed. We end the chapter with several applications to the mechanics of particles. Subsequent chapters also contain discussions of several pertinent examples.

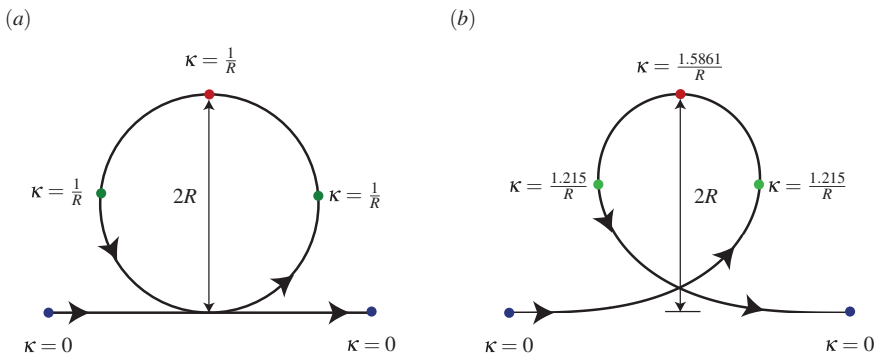


Fig. 3.1 Two potential designs for a loop-the-loop track section of a roller coaster and selected values of the curvature κ along their lengths: (a) a design based on connecting two semi-circular track sections of radius R with two straight track sections and (b) a design based on connecting two clothoid track sections.

3.1 Space Curves

For many systems, such as those involving the motion of a particle on a straight line or on a plane, it suffices to know how to manipulate Cartesian or polar coordinates. However, these coordinate systems become cumbersome for many problems. In general, the path of the particle is a curve in space and we refer to such curves as *space curves*. In many instances, this space curve is prescribed, as in the case of a particle moving on a circular path, or else it may lie on a surface. More often than not, this curve is not known a priori. In this chapter, the tools needed to analyze problems where a particle is moving on a space curve are developed and applied.

One of the most interesting applications of the tools we develop in this chapter is the design of roller coasters. A naive approach to designing a loop-the-loop section of a roller coaster would be to connect two circular arcs together (cf. Fig. 3.1). Unfortunately, this design will lead to undesirable changes in acceleration at the base of the loop. Instead, dating to the mid-1970s, a design based on a curve known as a clothoid is used [75].¹ One of the differences in the two designs can be seen from a parameter known as the curvature κ that we shortly define. For the design that uses circular arcs, κ is piecewise constant while κ varies in a linear manner for the clothoid design. In fact, moving along the clothoid loop shown in Fig. 3.1(b), we would find that κ increases linearly with the distance traveled on the path from 0 to a maximum of $1.5861/R$ and then decreases linearly to zero.² In contrast, for a circle-based design with the same total height of $2R$, the curvature would be 0 on the straight sections and jump instantaneously to $1/R$ on the circular sections of the path.

3.1.1 The Arc-Length Parameter

Consider a fixed curve \mathcal{C} that is embedded in \mathbb{E}^3 (i.e., \mathcal{C} is a space curve). Let the position vector of a point $P \in \mathcal{C}$ be denoted by \mathbf{r} . This vector has the representation

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where x , y , and z are the usual Cartesian coordinates and \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z are the orthonormal basis vectors associated with these coordinates.

Associated with the curve \mathcal{C} , we can define an arc-length parameter s , where by definition,

$$\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^2 = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt} \frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{dy}{dt} \frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{dz}{dt} \frac{dz}{dt}.$$

¹ The clothoid loop is also used in the design of freeway exit ramps [75].

² We explore this matter in further detail later on in Section 5.9.4.

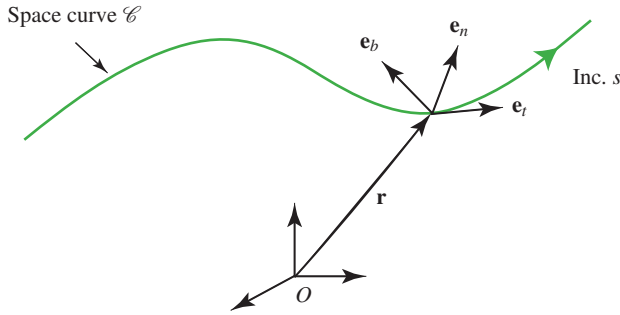


Fig. 3.2 A space curve and the Serret-Frenet triad at one of its points.

This parameter uniquely identifies a point P of \mathcal{C} , and we can use it to obtain a different representation of the position vector of a point on the curve:

$$\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s).$$

3.1.2 The Serret-Frenet Triad

In the sequel we need to examine the forces acting on a particle as it moves on a curve and use this information to determine the motion of the particle. For cases where the particle is moving on a straight line or a circular path, we can use Cartesian and cylindrical polar coordinate systems, respectively, to simplify our analysis. However when the particle is moving on a curve in the form of a parabola or clothoid, it is not convenient to use these two coordinate systems. We now turn to examining a set of basis vectors that will help us with these more complex cases.

Consider a fixed space curve such as the one shown in Fig. 3.2. We wish to define the so-called Serret-Frenet basis vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ for a point P of this space curve.³

To define a tangent vector, we consider two points P and P' of \mathcal{C} , where the position vectors of P and P' are $\hat{\mathbf{r}}(s)$ and $\hat{\mathbf{r}}(s + \Delta s)$, respectively. We define the vector \mathbf{e}_t as

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_t(s) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = \lim_{\Delta s \rightarrow 0} \frac{\hat{\mathbf{r}}(s + \Delta s) - \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s)}{\Delta s}.$$

³ These triads and formulae for their rates of change were established by Jean-Frédéric Frenet (1816–1900) in 1847 (see [40]) and Joseph Alfred Serret (1819–1885) in 1851 (see [84]). One can extend our forthcoming discussion to curves that are moving in space, for example, a curve in the form of a circle whose radius changes with time. In this case $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(s, t)$, and the Serret-Frenet triad is obtained by the partial differentiation of \mathbf{r} with respect to s . Such an extension is well known and needed for discussing the theory of rods but is beyond the scope of an undergraduate engineering dynamics course.

Because $\hat{\mathbf{r}}(s + \Delta s) - \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s) \rightarrow \Delta s \mathbf{e}_t$ as $\Delta s \rightarrow 0$,⁴ \mathbf{e}_t is known as the unit tangent vector to \mathcal{C} at the point P (see Fig. 3.2).

We next consider the second derivative of \mathbf{r} with respect to s :

$$\frac{d^2 \mathbf{r}}{ds^2} = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds}.$$

After noting that $\mathbf{e}_t \cdot \mathbf{e}_t = 1$ and then differentiating this relation, we find that $d\mathbf{e}_t/ds$ is perpendicular to \mathbf{e}_t . We define κ to be the magnitude of $d\mathbf{e}_t/ds$ and \mathbf{e}_n to be its direction:

$$\kappa \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds}.$$

The vector \mathbf{e}_n is known as the (unit) principal normal vector to \mathcal{C} at the point P , and the scalar κ is known as the curvature of \mathcal{C} at the point P .⁵ It should be noted that \mathbf{e}_n and κ are functions of s :

$$\kappa = \hat{\kappa}(s), \quad \mathbf{e}_n = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_n(s).$$

Often an additional variable ρ , known as the radius of curvature, is defined:

$$\rho = \hat{\rho}(s) = \frac{1}{\kappa}.$$

For the degenerate case where $d\mathbf{e}_t/ds = \mathbf{0}$ for a particular s , the curvature κ is 0 and the vector \mathbf{e}_n is not uniquely defined. In this case, one usually defines \mathbf{e}_n to be a unit vector perpendicular to \mathbf{e}_t . The most common case of this occurrence is when the curve \mathcal{C} is a straight line.

We will show later that a circle of radius R has a curvature of $1/R$. Another special plane curve of particular interest is the clothoid shown in Fig. 3.3. For this curve, κ is a linear function of s .⁶ It is easy to see how one can use the clothoid shown in Fig. 3.3 to smoothly connect a straight line to an arc of a circle of radius $a/2\pi$.

The final vector of interest is \mathbf{e}_b , and it is defined by

$$\mathbf{e}_b = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_b(s) = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n.$$

Clearly, \mathbf{e}_b is a unit vector. It is known as the (unit) binormal vector to \mathcal{C} at the point P .

It should be noted that the set of vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ is defined for each point of \mathcal{C} , is orthonormal, and, because $\mathbf{e}_b \cdot (\mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n) = 1$, forms a right-handed set. We refer to the set $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ as the Serret-Frenet triad. Because this set is orthonormal it may

⁴ This may be easily seen by sketching the curve and the position vectors of P and P' and then taking the limit as Δs tends to 0.

⁵ Often the convention that κ is nonnegative is adopted. This allows the convenient identification that \mathbf{e}_n points in the direction of $d\mathbf{e}_t/ds$. We adhere strictly to this convention.

⁶ This result is left as an exercise for the interested reader (see Exercise 3.11 on Page 65).

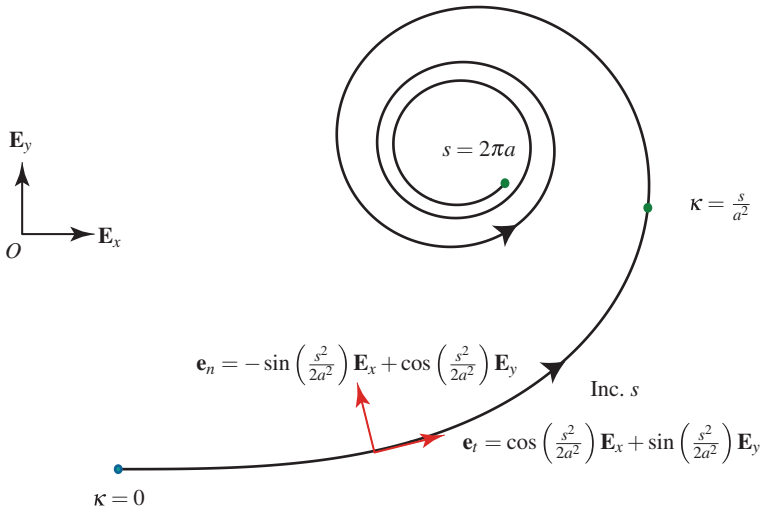


Fig. 3.3 A section of a plane curve known as a clothoid. For this curve, $\kappa = s/a^2$ where a is a constant.

be used as a basis for \mathbb{E}^3 . That is, given any vector \mathbf{b} , one has the representations

$$\mathbf{b} = b_t \mathbf{e}_t + b_n \mathbf{e}_n + b_b \mathbf{e}_b = b_x \mathbf{E}_x + b_y \mathbf{E}_y + b_z \mathbf{E}_z,$$

where $b_t = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t$, and so on.

At a particular s , the plane defined by the vectors \mathbf{e}_t and \mathbf{e}_n is known as the *osculating plane*, and the plane defined by the vectors \mathbf{e}_t and \mathbf{e}_b is known as the *rectifying plane*. These planes will, in general, depend on the particular point P of \mathcal{C} .⁷

3.2 The Serret-Frenet Formulae

The three Serret-Frenet formulae relate the rate of change of the vectors \mathbf{e}_t , \mathbf{e}_n , and \mathbf{e}_b with respect to the arc-length parameter s to the set of vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$.

Consider the vector \mathbf{e}_t . Recalling one of the previous results, the first of the desired formulae is recorded:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \kappa \mathbf{e}_n.$$

⁷ It is beyond our purposes to present an additional discussion on these planes. The interested reader is referred to an introductory text on differential geometry. We mention in particular Kreyszig [57], Spivak [90], and Struik [94].

It is convenient to consider next the vector \mathbf{e}_b . This vector is a unit vector, and therefore, it cannot change along its own length. Mathematically, we see this by noting that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n &\implies \mathbf{e}_b \cdot \mathbf{e}_b = 1 \\ &\implies \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \cdot \mathbf{e}_b = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Consequently, $d\mathbf{e}_b/ds$ has components only in the directions of \mathbf{e}_t and \mathbf{e}_n . Let's first examine what the component of $d\mathbf{e}_b/ds$ is in the \mathbf{e}_t direction:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e}_t \cdot \mathbf{e}_b = 0 &\implies \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} \cdot \mathbf{e}_b + \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t = 0 \\ &\implies \kappa \mathbf{e}_n \cdot \mathbf{e}_b + \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t = 0 \\ &\implies \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t = 0.\end{aligned}$$

It now follows that $d\mathbf{e}_b/ds$ is parallel to \mathbf{e}_n . Consequently, we define

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} = -\tau \mathbf{e}_n,$$

where $\tau = \hat{\tau}(s)$ is the torsion of the curve \mathcal{C} at the particular point P corresponding to the value of s . The negative sign in the above formula is conventional.

To obtain the final Serret-Frenet formula for $d\mathbf{e}_n/ds$, we perform a direct calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d\mathbf{e}_n}{ds} &= \frac{d}{ds}(\mathbf{e}_b \times \mathbf{e}_t) = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \times \mathbf{e}_t + \mathbf{e}_b \times \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} \\ &= (-\tau \mathbf{e}_n) \times \mathbf{e}_t + \mathbf{e}_b \times (\kappa \mathbf{e}_n).\end{aligned}$$

After simplifying this result by evaluating the cross products, we obtain

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_n}{ds} = -\kappa \mathbf{e}_t + \tau \mathbf{e}_b.$$

The Serret-Frenet formulae can be conveniently summarized as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} \\ \frac{d\mathbf{e}_n}{ds} \\ \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \kappa & 0 \\ -\kappa & 0 & \tau \\ 0 & -\tau & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_t \\ \mathbf{e}_n \\ \mathbf{e}_b \end{bmatrix}.$$

One can define what is often referred to as the Darboux⁸ vector $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{SF}}$:

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{SF}} = \kappa \mathbf{e}_b + \tau \mathbf{e}_t.$$

⁸ Gaston Darboux (1842–1917) was a French mathematician who wrote an authoritative four-volume treatise on differential geometry, published between 1887 and 1896 (see [27]).

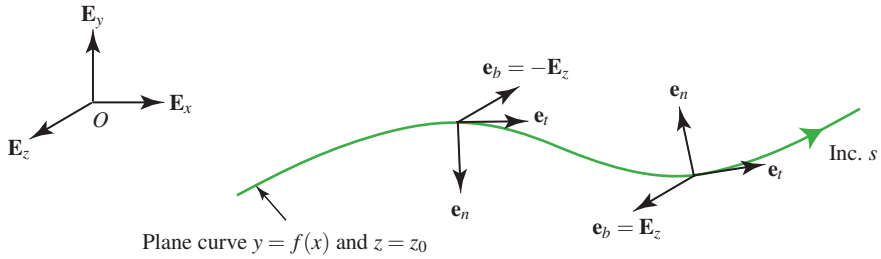


Fig. 3.4 An example of a plane curve and the Serret-Frenet triad $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ at two distinct points along its length.

Using the Darboux vector, the Serret-Frenet relations can also be written in the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_i}{ds} = \boldsymbol{\omega}_{SF} \times \mathbf{e}_i,$$

where $i = t, n, \text{ or } b$.

3.3 Examples of Space Curves

We proceed to discuss four examples of spaces curves: a plane curve, a circle, a space curve parameterized by x , and a circular helix. The degenerate case of a straight line is discussed in conjunction with the plane curve.

3.3.1 A Curve on a Plane

As shown in Fig. 3.4,⁹ consider a curve on a plane in \mathbb{E}^3 . The plane is defined by the relation $z = z_0$, and the curve is defined by the intersection of two 2-dimensional surfaces:

$$z = z_0, \quad y = f(x),$$

where we assume that f is as smooth as necessary. A specific example is presented in Section 3.6.

The position vector of a point P on this curve is

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z = x\mathbf{E}_x + f(x)\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z.$$

⁹ The convention that $\kappa \geq 0$ has been used to define the vector \mathbf{e}_n .

To determine the arc-length parameter s of the curve, we first note that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt} \mathbf{E}_x + \frac{df}{dx} \frac{dx}{dt} \mathbf{E}_y.$$

Consequently,

$$\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^2 = \left(1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2\right) \left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2,$$

or, assuming that s increases in the direction of increasing x ,

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt} \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}.$$

Integrating both sides of the above equation, we obtain¹⁰

$$s = s(x) = \int_{x_0}^x \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2} du + s(x_0).$$

As follows from our previous developments, we should invert $s(x)$ to determine $x(s)$. However, because we prefer to keep the function $f(x)$ arbitrary, we will express the results as functions of x .

To determine the tangent vector, we recall its definition and use the chain rule:

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{e}_t(x) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dx} \frac{dx}{ds} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_y\right),$$

where we have also used the identity

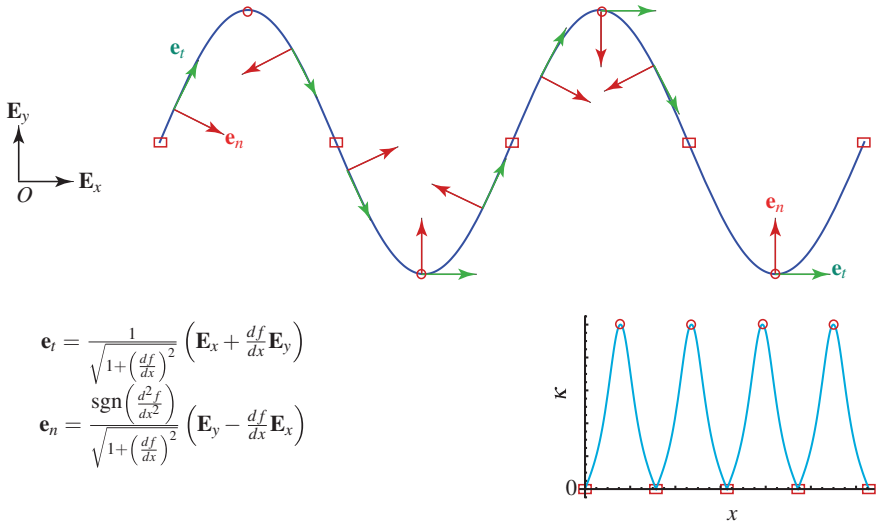
$$\frac{dx}{ds} = \left(\frac{ds}{dx}\right)^{-1}.$$

The expected unit magnitude of \mathbf{e}_t should be noted.

The principal normal vector \mathbf{e}_n and the curvature κ are determined by evaluating the derivative of \mathbf{e}_t with respect to s :

$$\kappa \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{dx} \frac{dx}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{dx} \left(\frac{ds}{dx}\right)^{-1}.$$

¹⁰ It is tacitly understood that we need to express df/dx in terms of the dummy variable u in order to evaluate this integral.



$$\mathbf{e}_t = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_y \right)$$

$$\mathbf{e}_n = \frac{\text{sgn}\left(\frac{d^2f}{dx^2}\right)}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\mathbf{E}_y - \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_x \right)$$

Fig. 3.5 A plane curve $y = f(x)$ showing the unit tangent vector \mathbf{e}_t and unit normal vectors \mathbf{e}_n . The inset image shows a schematic of the curvature $\kappa(x)$ for this curve. The points labeled \circ are points where $\frac{df}{dx} = 0$. At these points, $\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{E}_x$ and $\mathbf{e}_n = \pm \mathbf{E}_y$. The points labeled \square are points where $\frac{d^2f}{dx^2} = 0$. At these points, $\kappa = 0$ and \mathbf{e}_n are not defined. You should also notice how \mathbf{e}_n switches from $\pm \mathbf{E}_y$ to $\mp \mathbf{E}_y$ at these points of discontinuity.

Omitting the details of the calculation, after some subsequent rearrangement we obtain

$$\kappa \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{\frac{d^2f}{dx^2}}{\left(1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2\right)^2} \left(\mathbf{E}_y - \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_x \right).$$

Recalling that \mathbf{e}_n is a unit vector and that κ is positive, the final results are obtained:

$$\kappa = \kappa(x) = \frac{\left| \frac{d^2f}{dx^2} \right|}{\left(\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2} \right)^3},$$

$$\mathbf{e}_n = \mathbf{e}_n(x) = \frac{\text{sgn}\left(\frac{d^2f}{dx^2}\right)}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\mathbf{E}_y - \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_x \right).$$

Here, $\text{sgn}(a) = 1$ if $a > 0$ and -1 if $a < 0$.

Finally, the binormal vector \mathbf{e}_b may be determined:

$$\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n = \operatorname{sgn} \left(\frac{d^2 f}{dx^2} \right) \mathbf{E}_z,$$

and, because this vector is a piecewise constant, the torsion of the curve is

$$\tau = 0.$$

Returning briefly to Fig. 3.4, you may have noticed that for certain segments of the curve $\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{E}_z$ and for others $\mathbf{e}_b = -\mathbf{E}_z$. The points where this transition occurs are those where $d^2 f/dx^2 = 0$. At these points, $\kappa = 0$ and \mathbf{e}_n is not defined by the Serret-Frenet formula $d\mathbf{e}_t/ds = \kappa\mathbf{e}_n$.

To illuminate the previous expressions for \mathbf{e}_t , \mathbf{e}_n , and κ , we consider the plane curve $y = f(x)$ shown in Fig. 3.5. We assume that $\dot{x} > 0$ and sketch examples of \mathbf{e}_t and \mathbf{e}_n using the formulae we have just established. It is useful to identify points of inflexion and minima and maxima of $f(x)$ to help in sketching the vectors. Referring to the figure, observe that, as we pass through the points of inflexion, \mathbf{e}_n switches direction in a discontinuous manner. At the inflexion points, $\kappa = 0$ and the function $\kappa(x)$ increases to a maximum at the minima and maxima of $f(x)$.

For plane curves, some texts use a particular representation of the unit tangent vector \mathbf{e}_t and a normal vector $\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n$ by defining an angle $\beta = \beta(s)$:

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \cos(\beta(s))\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\beta(s))\mathbf{E}_y,$$

$$\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n = \cos(\beta(s))\mathbf{E}_y - \sin(\beta(s))\mathbf{E}_x.$$

Notice that \mathbf{e}_t and $\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n$ are unit vectors, as expected. By differentiating these expressions with respect to s , one finds that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \frac{d\beta}{ds}\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n, \quad \frac{d\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n}{ds} = -\frac{d\beta}{ds}\mathbf{e}_t.$$

For this parameterization, we can identify

$$\mathbf{e}_n = \pm\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n, \quad \kappa = \left| \frac{d\beta}{ds} \right|.$$

Consequently, $\frac{d\beta}{ds}$ can be interpreted as a rate of rotation of the vectors \mathbf{e}_t and $\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n$ about \mathbf{E}_z . The curvature $\frac{d\beta}{ds}$ in this case is a signed curvature: it can take positive and negative values unlike $\kappa \geq 0$.¹¹

¹¹ The triad $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \bar{\mathbf{e}}_n, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ is now known as an example of a Bishop triad following a seminal paper by Bishop [13] that was published in 1975. Unlike the Serret-Frenet triad, this triad is uniquely defined at every point of a space curve (i.e., even at inflexion points). For additional examples of Bishop frames, the reader is referred to [13, 47, 54].

3.3.1.1 The Straight Line

A special case of the plane curve arises when $f(x) = ax + b$, where a and b are constants. In this case, we find from above that

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{e}_t(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_y \right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + a^2}} (\mathbf{E}_x + a\mathbf{E}_y).$$

It should be clear that we are assuming that

$$\frac{ds}{dx} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2},$$

as opposed to $-\sqrt{1 + (df/dx)^2}$. Turning to the principal normal vector, because $d\mathbf{e}_t/ds = \mathbf{0}$, the curvature $\kappa = 0$ and \mathbf{e}_n is not defined. For consistency, it is convenient to choose \mathbf{e}_n to be perpendicular to \mathbf{e}_t . A popular choice is $\mathbf{e}_n = \mathbf{E}_z \times \mathbf{e}_t$. The binormal vector is then defined by $\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n$.

3.3.2 A Space Curve Parameterized by x

Consider a curve \mathcal{C} in \mathbb{E}^3 . Suppose that the curve is defined by the intersection of the two 2-dimensional surfaces

$$z = g(x), \quad y = f(x),$$

where we assume that f and g are as smooth as necessary. The plane curve discussed in Section 3.3.1 can be considered as a particular example of a space curve. The position vector of a point P on this curve is

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + f(x)\mathbf{E}_y + g(x)\mathbf{E}_z.$$

The arc-length parameter s may be determined in a manner similar to what was discussed previously:

$$s = s(x) = \int_{x_0}^x \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dg}{dx}\right)^2} du + s(x_0).$$

As in Section 3.3.1, we assume that the function $x(s)$ is available to us and express all of our results as functions of x . It follows that we can later express all of our results as functions of s if required.

To calculate the tangent vector, we use the chain rule as before:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e}_t &= \mathbf{e}_t(x) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dx} \frac{dx}{ds} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dg}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{df}{dx} \mathbf{E}_y + \frac{dg}{dx} \mathbf{E}_z \right).\end{aligned}$$

The principal normal vector \mathbf{e}_n and the curvature κ are determined by evaluating the derivative of \mathbf{e}_t with respect to s :

$$\kappa \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{dx} \frac{dx}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{dx} \left(\frac{ds}{dx} \right)^{-1}.$$

Finally, the binormal vector \mathbf{e}_b may be determined using its definition: $\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n$. We omit details of the expressions for the principal normal \mathbf{e}_n and binormal \mathbf{e}_b vectors, curvature κ , and the torsion τ . They may be obtained using the quoted relations, and their specific general forms are not of further interest here.

3.3.3 A Circle on a Plane

As shown in Fig. 3.6, consider a curve in the form of a circle that lies on a plane in \mathbb{E}^3 . The plane is defined by the relation $z = z_0$, and the curve is defined by the intersection of two 2-dimensional surfaces:

$$z = z_0, \quad r = R = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}.$$

In addition, it is convenient to recall the relations

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{y}{x} \right),$$

$$\mathbf{e}_r = \cos(\theta) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta) \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_\theta = \cos(\theta) \mathbf{E}_y - \sin(\theta) \mathbf{E}_x.$$

The position vector of a point P on this curve is

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z = R\mathbf{e}_r + z_0\mathbf{E}_z.$$

To determine the arc-length parameter s of the curve, we first note that

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = R \frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{dt} = R \frac{d\theta}{dt} \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Consequently,

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = R \frac{d\theta}{dt}.$$

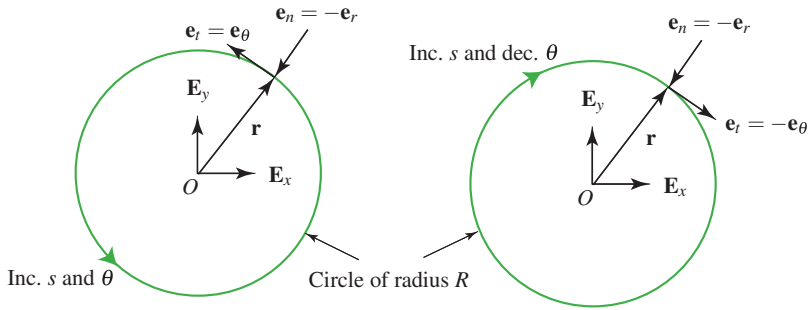


Fig. 3.6 A circle of radius R . On the left, the directions of increasing s and θ are identical, whereas they are opposite to each other in the right-hand side image.

Here, we have assumed that s increases in the direction of increasing θ .¹² Integrating both sides of this equation, we obtain

$$s(\theta) = R(\theta - \theta_0) + s(\theta_0).$$

Fortunately, we can invert the function $s(\theta)$ to solve for $\theta(s)$:

$$\theta(s) = \frac{1}{R}(s - s_0) + \theta(s_0).$$

The previous result enables us to write

$$\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s) = R\hat{\mathbf{e}}_r(s) + z_0\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}}_r(s) = \cos(\theta(s))\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta(s))\mathbf{E}_y.$$

It should be noted that the function $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(s)$ can be defined in a similar manner.

To determine the tangent vector, we differentiate \mathbf{r} as a function of s :

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_t(s) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = R\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{d\theta} \frac{d\theta}{ds} = R\mathbf{e}_\theta \frac{1}{R} = \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

The expected unit magnitude of \mathbf{e}_t should again be noted. The principal normal vector \mathbf{e}_n and the curvature κ are determined by evaluating the derivative of \mathbf{e}_t with respect to s :

$$\kappa\mathbf{e}_n = \hat{\kappa}(s)\hat{\mathbf{e}}_n(s) = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{d\theta} \frac{d\theta}{ds} = -\frac{1}{R}\mathbf{e}_r.$$

¹² Otherwise, $ds/d\theta = -R$ and the forthcoming results need some minor modifications. As can be seen from Fig. 3.6, when $ds/d\theta = -R$, $\mathbf{e}_t = -\mathbf{e}_\theta$, $\mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{e}_r$, and $\mathbf{e}_b = -\mathbf{E}_z$.

Recalling that \mathbf{e}_n has unit magnitude and adopting the convention that $\kappa \geq 0$, we obtain

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{R}, \quad \mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{e}_r.$$

Finally, the binormal vector \mathbf{e}_b may be determined:

$$\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Because this vector is constant, the torsion of the circular curve is, trivially,

$$\tau = 0.$$

In summary, for a circle in the $\mathbf{E}_x - \mathbf{E}_y$ plane with $ds/d\theta = +R$,

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \rho = R, \quad \tau = 0.$$

Based on previous work with cylindrical polar coordinates, the tangent and normal vectors for this curve should have been anticipated.

3.3.4 A Circular Helix

Consider a curve in the form of a helix that is embedded in \mathbb{E}^3 .¹³ The helix is defined by the intersection of a pair of two-dimensional surfaces. One of these surfaces is a cylinder defined by the relation

$$r = R,$$

where $\{r, \theta, z\}$ are the usual cylindrical polar coordinates:

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \quad \theta = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{y}{x} \right).$$

The second surface is defined by the equation

$$z = g(r, \theta) = \alpha r \theta.$$

This surface is known as a helicoid.¹⁴ Taking the intersection of the cylinder and helicoid one obtains a circular helix. The helix is right handed if $\alpha > 0$, left handed if $\alpha < 0$, and degenerates to a circle if $\alpha = 0$. An example of a right-handed circular helix is shown in Fig. 3.7. The angle γ whose tangent is α is known as the pitch angle of the helix.

¹³ According to Kreyszig [57], the circular helix is the only nontrivial example of a curve with constant torsion and constant curvature.

¹⁴ See, for example, Struik [94, Section 2.2 and Fig. 3-4].

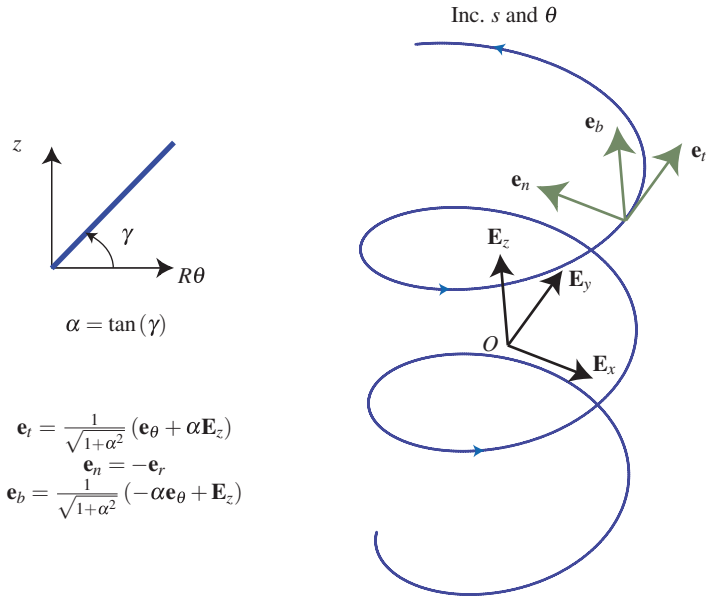


Fig. 3.7 An examples of a Serret-Frenet triad for a portion of a (right-handed) circular helix. The inset image shows the relationship between the pitch angle γ and the parameter α .

In Cartesian coordinates, the circular helix may be represented by

$$x = R\cos(\theta), \quad y = R\sin(\theta), \quad z = \alpha R\theta.$$

The position vector of a point P on the helix is

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z = R\mathbf{e}_r + \alpha R\theta\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where for convenience we have defined, as always,

$$\mathbf{e}_r = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_\theta = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y.$$

To determine the arc-length parameter s of the curve we first note that

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = R\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{dt} + \frac{d}{dt}(\alpha R\theta\mathbf{E}_z) = R\frac{d\theta}{dt}\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha R\frac{d\theta}{dt}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Consequently,

$$\frac{ds}{dt} = R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}\frac{d\theta}{dt}.$$

Here, we have assumed that s increases in the direction of increasing θ .¹⁵ Integrating both sides of this equation we obtain

$$s(\theta) = R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}(\theta - \theta_0) + s(\theta_0).$$

Fortunately, as in the case of the plane circle, we can invert the function $s(\theta)$ to solve for $\theta(s)$:

$$\theta(s) = \frac{1}{R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}(s - s_0) + \theta(s_0).$$

The previous result enables us to write \mathbf{r} as a function of s :

$$\mathbf{r} = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s) = R\hat{\mathbf{e}}_r(s) + \left(\frac{1}{R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}(s - s_0) + \theta(s_0) \right) R\alpha\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where

$$\hat{\mathbf{e}}_r(s) = \cos(\theta(s))\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta(s))\mathbf{E}_y.$$

It should be noted that the function $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(s)$ can be defined in a similar manner.

To determine the tangent vector, we differentiate \mathbf{r} with respect to s :

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_t(s) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = R\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{d\theta}\frac{d\theta}{ds} + R\alpha\frac{d\theta}{ds}\mathbf{E}_z = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}(\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha\mathbf{E}_z).$$

The expected unit magnitude of \mathbf{e}_t should again be noted. The principal normal vector \mathbf{e}_n and the curvature κ are determined as usual by evaluating the derivative of \mathbf{e}_t with respect to s :

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa\mathbf{e}_n &= \hat{\kappa}(s)\hat{\mathbf{e}}_n(s) = \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}\frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{ds} + \frac{d}{ds}\left(\frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}\mathbf{E}_z\right) \\ &= -\frac{1}{R(1 + \alpha^2)}\mathbf{e}_r. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling that the vector \mathbf{e}_n has unit magnitude and adopting the convention that $\kappa \geq 0$, we obtain

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{R(1 + \alpha^2)}, \quad \mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{e}_r.$$

Finally, the binormal vector \mathbf{e}_b may be determined:

$$\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}(-\alpha\mathbf{e}_\theta + \mathbf{E}_z).$$

¹⁵ Otherwise, $ds/d\theta = -R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}$ and the forthcoming results need some minor modifications: \mathbf{e}_n remains equal to $-\mathbf{e}_r$ but $\mathbf{e}_t \rightarrow -\mathbf{e}_t$ and $\mathbf{e}_b \rightarrow -\mathbf{e}_b$.

The binormal vector is not constant. Differentiating \mathbf{e}_b with respect to s and rearranging the resulting expression reveals that the torsion of the circular helix is

$$\tau = \frac{\alpha}{R(1 + \alpha^2)}.$$

Observe that the torsion is constant. Indeed, $\tau = \alpha\kappa$ for a circular helix.

An alternative method of computing the Serret-Frenet triad for the helical space curve that exploits the kinematics of a particle moving on a helix will be presented in Section 3.4.2. This alternative methodology can also be applied to plane curves including circles.

3.4 Application to Particle Mechanics

In applications of the Serret-Frenet formulae to particle dynamics we make two identifications:

- (a) The space curve \mathcal{C} is identified as the path of the particle.
- (b) The arc-length parameter s is considered to be a function of t .

In particular, we note that s may be identified as the distance traveled along the curve \mathcal{C} from a given reference point.

3.4.1 Kinematics

With the above identifications in mind, the position vector \mathbf{r} of the particle can be given the equivalent functional representations

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{r}(t) = \hat{\mathbf{r}}(s(t)).$$

Differentiating these representations, we obtain equivalent expressions for the velocity vector \mathbf{v} of the particle

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y + \dot{z}\mathbf{E}_z = \dot{\mathbf{r}}(t) = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} \frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{ds}{dt} \mathbf{e}_t.$$

It is important to observe here that

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{ds}{dt} \mathbf{e}_t = v \mathbf{e}_t.$$

Because the speed v is greater than or equal to zero, it is apparent that \mathbf{e}_t is the unit vector in the direction of \mathbf{v} . Similarly, for the acceleration vector \mathbf{a} , we obtain the

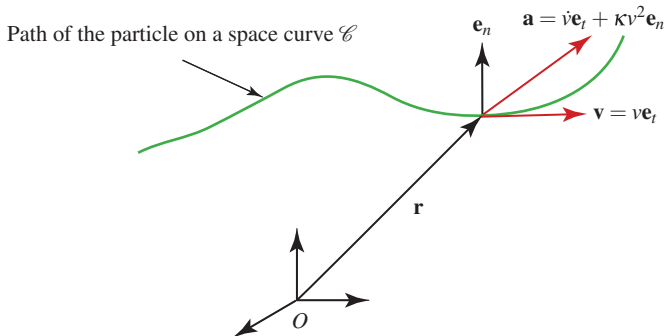


Fig. 3.8 The velocity \mathbf{v} and acceleration \mathbf{a} vectors of a particle moving on a space curve.

expression

$$\mathbf{a} = \dot{\mathbf{v}} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \mathbf{e}_t \right) = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} \mathbf{e}_t + \frac{ds}{dt} \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{dt} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} \mathbf{e}_t + \frac{ds}{dt} \frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} \frac{ds}{dt}.$$

Recalling the definitions of the principal normal vector \mathbf{e}_n and the speed $v = \dot{s}$, we obtain the final desired expression for \mathbf{a} :

$$\mathbf{a} = \dot{\mathbf{v}} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} \mathbf{e}_t + \kappa \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \right)^2 \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{dv}{dt} \mathbf{e}_t + \kappa v^2 \mathbf{e}_n.$$

This remarkable result states that the acceleration vector of the particle lies entirely in the osculating plane (see Fig. 3.8).

We note in passing that the distance traveled by the particle along its path may be determined from the vector \mathbf{v} . To see this, we first recall that

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \right)^2.$$

This implies that

$$s - s_0 = \int_{s_0}^s ds = \int_{t_0}^t \sqrt{\mathbf{v}(\mu) \cdot \mathbf{v}(\mu)} d\mu,$$

where s_0 denotes the value of s when $t = t_0$.

3.4.2 Computing the Serret-Frenet Triad

Given an expression for $\mathbf{r}(t)$, we can exploit the representations $\mathbf{v} = v\mathbf{e}_t$ and $\mathbf{a} = \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t + \kappa v^2\mathbf{e}_n$. For example, consider a particle in motion on a helical space curve:

$$\mathbf{r} = R\mathbf{e}_r + R\alpha\theta\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Taking the time derivatives of \mathbf{r} we find

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{r}} &= R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta + R\alpha\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \\ \ddot{\mathbf{r}} &= R\ddot{\theta}(\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha\mathbf{E}_z) - R\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{e}_r.\end{aligned}$$

Equating $R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta + R\alpha\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$ to $v\mathbf{e}_t$, we can compute expressions for v and \mathbf{e}_t :

$$v = \|\dot{\mathbf{r}}\| = R\dot{\theta}\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}, \quad \mathbf{e}_t = \frac{\dot{\mathbf{r}}}{\|\dot{\mathbf{r}}\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}(\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha\mathbf{E}_z),$$

where we have assumed that $\dot{\theta} > 0$.¹⁶ Differentiating v with respect to t , we quickly find an expression for \dot{v} :

$$\dot{v} = R\ddot{\theta}\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}.$$

It remains to compute κ , τ , \mathbf{e}_n , and \mathbf{e}_b .

Using the expression for $\ddot{\mathbf{r}}$, we find an equation for κ and \mathbf{e}_n :

$$\begin{aligned}\kappa\mathbf{e}_n &= \frac{1}{v^2}(\ddot{\mathbf{r}} - \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t) \\ &= \frac{1}{v^2} \left(\underbrace{R\ddot{\theta}(\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha\mathbf{E}_z) - R\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{e}_r}_{=\ddot{\mathbf{r}}} - \underbrace{R\ddot{\theta}\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2} \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}(\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha\mathbf{E}_z) \right)}_{=\dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{v^2}(-R\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{e}_r).\end{aligned}$$

Substituting for v in this final expression and noting that $\kappa > 0$, we arrive at the expressions for κ and \mathbf{e}_n :

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{R(1 + \alpha^2)}, \quad \mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{e}_r.$$

As anticipated, the expressions we have found for \mathbf{e}_t , κ , and \mathbf{e}_n agree with our earlier results in Section 3.3.4. To compute expressions for the torsion τ and unit binormal

¹⁶ The case $\dot{\theta} < 0$ is left as an exercise.

vector \mathbf{e}_b , we can first compute \mathbf{e}_b using the identity $\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e}_b &= \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}} (\mathbf{e}_\theta + \alpha \mathbf{E}_z) \times (-\mathbf{e}_r) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}} (\mathbf{E}_z - \alpha \mathbf{e}_\theta).\end{aligned}$$

Using the chain rule, the identity $\tau = -\frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} \cdot \mathbf{e}_n$ can also be expressed using $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_b$ and the resulting expression used to compute τ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\tau &= -\frac{1}{v} \dot{\mathbf{e}}_b \cdot \mathbf{e}_n = -\frac{1}{v\sqrt{1+\alpha^2}} (\alpha \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_r) \cdot (-\mathbf{e}_r) \\ &= \frac{\alpha}{(1+\alpha^2)R}.\end{aligned}$$

In conclusion, given the motion of a particle $\mathbf{r}(t)$, by computing $\dot{\mathbf{r}}(t)$ and $\ddot{\mathbf{r}}(t)$, the Serret-Frenet triad and the curvature and torsion of the path of the particle can be computed. An additional example of this methodology will be discussed in Section 3.5.

3.4.3 Kinetics

For a particle of mass m , Newton's second law states that

$$\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a},$$

where \mathbf{F} is the resultant external force acting on the particle. Recalling that, for each s , the set of vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ forms a basis for \mathbb{E}^3 , we may write

$$\mathbf{F} = F_t \mathbf{e}_t + F_n \mathbf{e}_n + F_b \mathbf{e}_b,$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}F_t &= \hat{F}_t(s) = \mathbf{F} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_t(s), \\ F_n &= \hat{F}_n(s) = \mathbf{F} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_n(s), \\ F_b &= \hat{F}_b(s) = \mathbf{F} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{e}}_b(s).\end{aligned}$$

Using these results, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_t &: F_t = m \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}, \\(\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_n &: F_n = m\kappa \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \right)^2, \\(\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{e}_b &: F_b = 0.\end{aligned}$$

In certain cases, these three equations are completely uncoupled and allow a problem in particle dynamics to be easily solved. We note that the previous equations also imply that \mathbf{F} lies entirely in the osculating plane.

3.5 A Particle Moving in Space Under Gravity

For our first example, we return to the problem discussed in Section 1.6, and consider a particle that is launched into the air with an initial velocity $\mathbf{v}_0 = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + v_{0y}\mathbf{E}_y$. The curve of interest is the path \mathcal{C} of the particle. For the sake of simplicity, we ignore drag forces and assume that the only force acting on the particle is gravitational: $\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y$. We also choose our origin so that the launching point coincides with the origin: $\mathbf{r}(t=0) = \mathbf{0}$. As discussed earlier, the trajectory of the particle is given by

$$x(t) = v_{0x}t, \quad y(t) = v_{0y}t - \frac{g}{2}t^2.$$

Assuming $v_{0x} \neq 0$, the path is a parabola in the $x - y$ plane and we now seek to determine the speed v , acceleration \dot{v} of the particle as well as the curvature of the path. In addition, we seek expressions for the unit vectors \mathbf{e}_t and \mathbf{e}_n .¹⁷ A graphical summary of some of our results can be seen in Fig. 3.9.

3.5.1 Computing Speed and Acceleration

We start with the speed v :

$$v = \sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2} = \sqrt{v_{0x}^2 + v_{0y}^2 + g^2t^2 - 2gtv_{0y}}.$$

¹⁷ An alternative approach to calculating the curvature κ and Serret-Frenet triad for this example is to exploit the fact that the space curve is a parabola $y = f(x)$ where $f = -gx^2 / (2v_{0x}^2) + (v_{0y}/v_{0x})x$ (cf. Exercise 1.8) and then appeal to formulae in Section 3.3.1 to compute $\kappa(x)$, $\mathbf{e}_t(x)$, $\mathbf{e}_n(x)$, and $\mathbf{e}_b(x)$. The method we employ here computes these quantities as functions of time t and was discussed previously in Section 3.4.2.

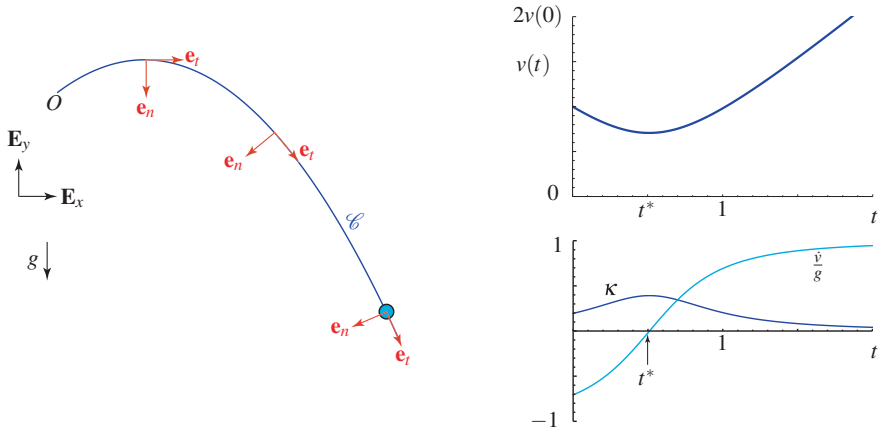


Fig. 3.9 Representative trajectory \mathcal{C} of a projectile launched with an initial velocity \mathbf{v}_0 from a point O . The inset images show $v(t)$, $\kappa(t)$ and $\dot{v}(t)/g$ for a particle where $\mathbf{v}_0 = 5(\mathbf{E}_x + \mathbf{E}_y)$ (meters/second).

Differentiating this expression for v with respect to time t , we find that

$$\dot{v} = \frac{-g(v_{0y} - gt)}{v}.$$

Observe that at time $t = t^* = \frac{v_{0y}}{g}$, the velocity in the \mathbf{E}_y direction is zero and the particle has reached the apex of its trajectory. At this instant, $\dot{v} = 0$: $\dot{v}(t^*) = 0$. In addition, as $t \rightarrow \infty$, $\dot{v} \rightarrow g$.

3.5.2 Computing the Serret-Frenet Triad

For this problem, the velocity and acceleration vectors of the particle have two equivalent representations:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v} &= v\mathbf{e}_t = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + (v_{0y} - gt)\mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{a} &= \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t + \kappa v^2\mathbf{e}_n = -g\mathbf{E}_y.\end{aligned}$$

We now exploit these representations to solve for \mathbf{e}_t , κ , and \mathbf{e}_n . From the representations for \mathbf{v} , we conclude that

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{v} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{v_{0x}^2 + v_{0y}^2 + g^2t^2 - 2gtv_{0y}}}(v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + (v_{0y} - gt)\mathbf{E}_y).$$

As expected, we find from this expression that $\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{E}_x$ when $t = t^*$ and $v_{0x} > 0$.

It is convenient to next compute κ by taking the magnitude of the acceleration vector:

$$\|\mathbf{a}\|^2 = g^2 = \dot{v}^2 + \kappa^2 v^4.$$

We may solve for κ from this expression to find that

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa &= \frac{\sqrt{g^2 - \dot{v}^2}}{v^2} \\ &= \frac{g |v_{0x}|}{v^3}. \end{aligned}$$

In the interests of brevity, we refrain from substituting for v^3 in the final expression for κ . Substituting into the representation for $\mathbf{a} = \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t + \kappa v^2\mathbf{e}_n$, we can now solve for \mathbf{e}_n :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_n &= \frac{1}{\kappa v^2} (-g\mathbf{E}_y - \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t) \\ &= \frac{v_{0x}}{|v_{0x}|v} ((v_{0y} - gt)\mathbf{E}_x - v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_y). \end{aligned}$$

You should verify that the final expression for \mathbf{e}_n satisfies the identity $\mathbf{e}_n \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{E}_y$ when $t = t^*$. We leave it as an exercise to compute \mathbf{e}_b for the two cases $v_{0x} > 0$ and $v_{0x} < 0$ and encourage the reader to examine the results shown in Fig. 3.9.

3.6 A Particle Moving on a Fixed Curve Under Gravity

As shown in Fig. 3.10, we consider a particle of mass m moving on a smooth plane curve defined by $y = f(x) = -cx^2$ and $z = 0$ where c is a constant with dimensions meters⁻¹. In the sequel, we shall assume that $c = 1$. A vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ acts on the particle. We seek to determine the differential equation governing the motion of the particle and the force exerted by the curve on the particle. In addition, we examine the conditions on the motion of the particle that result in a loss of contact of the particle with the curve.

3.6.1 Kinematics

We first consider the Serret-Frenet triad for this plane curve. From the results in Section 3.1.2, after setting $c = 1$ in the expression for $f(x) = -cx^2$, we find that the

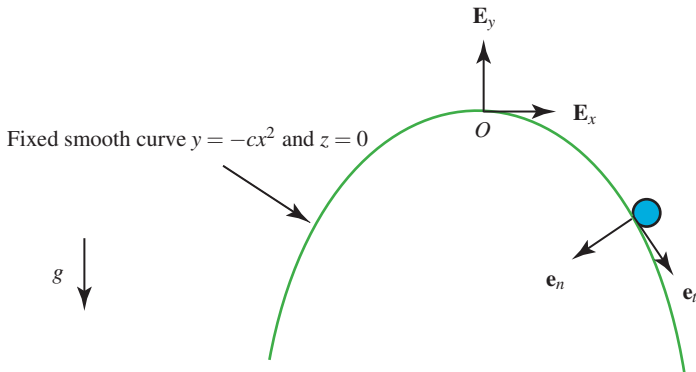


Fig. 3.10 A particle moving on a curve under gravity.

arc-length parameter s of the curve as a function of x is

$$\begin{aligned} s &= s(x) = \int_0^x \sqrt{1+4u^2} du + s(0) \\ &= \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{1+4x^2} + \frac{1}{4} \sinh^{-1}(2x) + s(0). \end{aligned}$$

Here, we have taken the arbitrary constant $x_0 = 0$. One can also determine the radius of curvature:

$$\rho = \frac{1}{2} \left(\sqrt{1+4x^2} \right)^3.$$

The Serret-Frenet triad as a function of x can be calculated from our earlier results for a plane curve $y = f(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_t &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}} (\mathbf{E}_x - 2x\mathbf{E}_y), \\ \mathbf{e}_n &= \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}} (\mathbf{E}_y + 2x\mathbf{E}_x), \\ \mathbf{e}_b &= -\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

The kinematics of the particle is given by formulae in Section 3.4:

$$\mathbf{a} = \dot{\mathbf{v}} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} \mathbf{e}_t + \kappa \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \right)^2 \mathbf{e}_n.$$

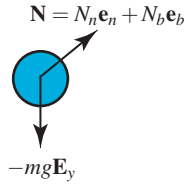


Fig. 3.11 Free-body diagram of the particle.

3.6.2 Forces

As shown in Fig. 3.11, we next consider a free-body diagram of the particle. The forces acting on the particle are due to the gravitational force and the normal force $\mathbf{N} = N_n \mathbf{e}_n + N_b \mathbf{e}_b$:

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y + N_n \mathbf{e}_n + N_b \mathbf{e}_b.$$

Here, \mathbf{N} is the force that the curve exerts on the particle. Examining the direction of \mathbf{e}_n for this example, we note that it is antiparallel to the unit outward normal to the surface. Hence, the \mathbf{e}_n component of \mathbf{N} must be negative in order for the particle to remain on the curve. Loss of contact of the particle with the curve will occur when $N_n > 0$ for the problem of interest here.

3.6.3 Balance Law

Taking the components of $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ with respect to the Serret-Frenet triad, three scalar equations are obtained:

$$m\dot{s} = \frac{2xmg}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}}, \quad N_n = \frac{ms^2}{\rho} - \frac{mg}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}}, \quad N_b = 0.$$

Observe that the equations have separated into a pair of equations for the components of the normal force and an equation of motion for the particle. Taking the Cartesian components or cylindrical polar components of $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ would not have produced this decoupled set of scalar equations.

3.6.4 Analysis

The last two of the above equations determine the normal force \mathbf{N} :

$$\mathbf{N} = \left(\frac{mv^2}{\rho} - \frac{mg}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}} \right) \mathbf{e}_n.$$

We observe from this equation that if $N_n < 0$, then the contribution from gravity must be greater than the contribution to N_n from the inertia $m\kappa v^2$. Otherwise, the particle will lose contact with the curve.

The \mathbf{e}_t component of $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provides a differential equation for the motion of the particle on the curve:

$$m\dot{v} = \frac{2xmg}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}}.$$

To proceed to describe this equation as a differential equation for $x(t)$, we note that

$$\begin{aligned} v &= \frac{ds}{dt} = \frac{ds}{dx} \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt} \sqrt{1+4x^2}, \\ \frac{dv}{dt} &= \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = \frac{4x}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}} \left(\frac{dx}{dt} \right)^2 + \sqrt{1+4x^2} \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}. \end{aligned}$$

You should note that $v \neq dx/dt$. For the example at hand, we substitute these results into the differential equation for dv/dt . After some rearranging, we obtain the desired ordinary differential equation:

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = \frac{1}{1+4x^2} \left(2xg - 4x \left(\frac{dx}{dt} \right)^2 \right).$$

Given the initial conditions $x(t_0)$ and $\dot{x}(t_0)$, the solution $x(t)$ of this equation can then be used to determine the motion $\mathbf{r}(t) = x(t)\mathbf{E}_x - x^2(t)\mathbf{E}_y$ of the particle and the force $\mathbf{N}(t)$ exerted by the curve on the particle.

The nonlinear ordinary differential equation governing $x(t)$ is formidable. Developing an analytical solution for $x(t)$ is well beyond the scope of an undergraduate engineering dynamics course. Instead, one is content with finding the speed v as a function of x . To this end, one uses the identity

$$a_t = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{dv}{dx} \frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{v}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}} \frac{dv}{dx}.$$

It follows that

$$v^2(x) = v^2(x_0) + 2 \int_{x_0}^x a_t(u) \sqrt{1+4u^2} du.$$

For the example at hand,

$$a_t(x) = \frac{2xg}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}},$$

and hence,

$$v^2(x) = v^2(x_0) + \int_{x_0}^x 4ug du = v^2(x_0) + 2g(x^2 - x_0^2).$$

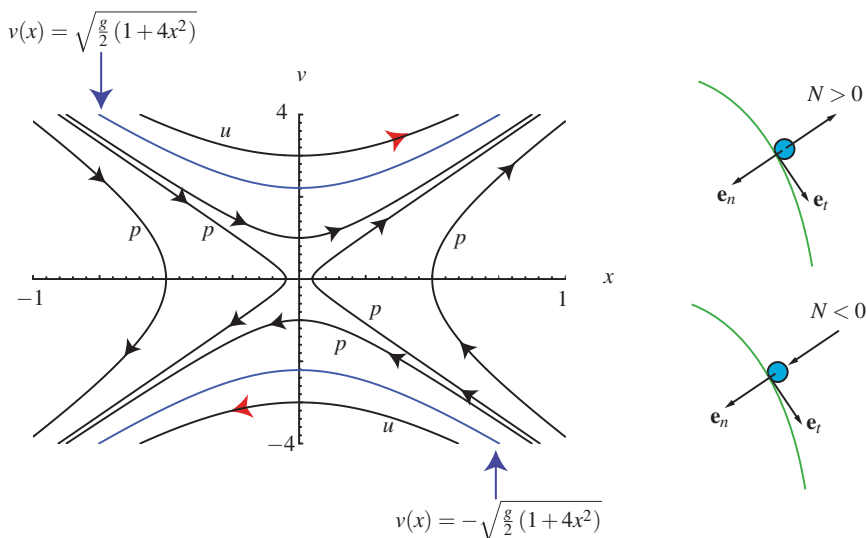


Fig. 3.12 The speed v of a particle moving on the curve $y = -x^2$ shown in Fig. 3.10. The arrows in this figure denote increasing time, and the curves formed by $v(x) = \pm\sqrt{g(1+4x^2)}/2$ divide regions where $N > 0$ and $N < 0$, where $\mathbf{N} = -N\mathbf{e}_n$. The six situations labeled p are physically possible because $N > 0$, whereas the two curves $v(x)$ labeled u are not.

Here, x_0 and $v(x_0)$ are given initial conditions. Because $y = -x^2$, you may have noticed that this is none other than a conservation of energy result (cf. the latter part of Section 5.8 of Chapter 5 where this problem is revisited).

We are now in a position to establish a criterion for the particle leaving the curve. One can use the previous equation and the expression for ρ to calculate the force \mathbf{N} as a function of x :

$$\mathbf{N} = \left(\frac{mv^2}{\rho} - \frac{mg}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}} \right) \mathbf{e}_n = \left(\frac{2mv^2(x_0) - mg(1+4x_0^2)}{(\sqrt{1+4x^2})^3} \right) \mathbf{e}_n.$$

Notice that if $v(x_0)$ is sufficiently large, then $\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{e}_n \geq 0$ and the particle will not remain on the curve. Specifically, if

$$v^2(x_0) \geq \frac{g}{2} (1+4x_0^2),$$

then the particle immediately loses contact with the curve.

To illustrate the results for $v(x)$ and the loss of contact, we first use energy conservation, $v^2(x) = v^2(x_0) + 2g(x^2 - x_0^2)$, to show representative cases of $v(x)$ in Fig. 3.12. We also show the curves where $v^2 = g(1+4x^2)/2$. You should notice from this figure that for certain motions, the particle moves up the curve $y = -x^2$ toward $x = 0$ but does not reach the summit. Instead, it stops, reverses its direction

of motion, and starts moving down the curve. We leave it as an exercise to interpret the three other types of situations shown in Fig. 3.12. You should observe that for two of these situations, labeled u , the normal force needed to prevent the particle leaving the curve is a suction force and so the motions are not physically possible.

3.7 Summary

This chapter established the machinery needed to examine the dynamics of particles moving in a general manner in three-dimensional space. To this end, some results pertaining to curves in three-dimensional space were presented.

For a given space curve, the Serret-Frenet basis vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ form a right-handed orthonormal basis at each point of the curve. The three vectors are defined by

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds}, \quad \kappa\mathbf{e}_n = \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}}{ds^2}, \quad \mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n.$$

The rate of change of these vectors as the arc-length parameter s of the curve varies is given by the Serret-Frenet relations:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{e}_t}{ds} = \kappa\mathbf{e}_n, \quad \frac{d\mathbf{e}_n}{ds} = -\kappa\mathbf{e}_t + \tau\mathbf{e}_b, \quad \frac{d\mathbf{e}_b}{ds} = -\tau\mathbf{e}_n.$$

These relations and the Serret-Frenet basis vectors were illustrated for the case of a plane curve, a straight line, a circle, a space curve parameterized by x , and a circular helix. For three of these examples, it was convenient to describe the Serret-Frenet basis vectors, torsion τ , and curvature κ as functions of x rather than s . In a similar manner, the variable θ was used for the circle and circular helix.

To use these results in particle dynamics, the path of the particle is identified with a space curve. Then, we showed that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \dot{s} \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = \dot{s}\mathbf{e}_t = v\mathbf{e}_t, \\ \mathbf{a} &= \dot{s}^2 \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}}{ds^2} + \ddot{s} \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{ds} = \kappa\dot{s}^2\mathbf{e}_n + \ddot{s}\mathbf{e}_t = \kappa v^2\mathbf{e}_n + \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t. \end{aligned}$$

In these equations, $v = \dot{s}$. Using the Serret-Frenet basis vectors, the balance of linear momentum can be described by three equations:

$$F_t = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t = m\dot{v}, \quad F_n = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_n = m\kappa v^2, \quad F_b = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_b = 0.$$

These equations were illustrated using the example of a particle moving on a smooth fixed curve.

3.8 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the material in the present chapter.

Exercise 3.1: For the space curve $\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + ax\mathbf{E}_y$, show that

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+a^2}} (\mathbf{E}_x + a\mathbf{E}_y), \quad \kappa = 0.$$

In addition, show that \mathbf{e}_n is any vector perpendicular to \mathbf{e}_t , for example,

$$\mathbf{e}_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+a^2}} (-a\mathbf{E}_x + \mathbf{E}_y).$$

Why is the torsion τ of this curve 0?

Exercise 3.2: Calculate the Serret-Frenet basis vectors for the space curve

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{x^3}{3}\mathbf{E}_y.$$

It is convenient to describe these vectors as functions of x . In addition, show that the arc-length parameter s as a function of x is given by

$$s = s(x) = \int_{x_0}^x \sqrt{1+u^4} du + s(x_0).$$

Exercise 3.3: Consider the space curve

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{x^3}{3}\mathbf{E}_y + \frac{x^2}{2}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Calculate the Serret-Frenet basis vectors for this curve. Again, it is convenient to describe these vectors as functions of x . In addition, show that the arc-length parameter s as a function of x is given by

$$s = s(x) = \int_{x_0}^x \sqrt{1+u^4+u^2} du + s(x_0).$$

Exercise 3.4: Consider the plane circle $\mathbf{r} = 10\mathbf{e}_r$. Show that $\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{e}_\theta$, $\mathbf{e}_n = -\mathbf{e}_r$, $\kappa = 0.1$, $\rho = 10$, $\tau = 0$, and $\mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{E}_z$.

Exercise 3.5: Calculate the Serret-Frenet basis vectors for the circular helix $\mathbf{r} = 10\mathbf{e}_r + 10\theta\mathbf{E}_z$. In addition, show that $s(\theta) = 10\sqrt{2}(\theta - \theta_0) + s(\theta_0)$ and $\kappa = \tau = 1/20$.

Exercise 3.6: Starting from $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(s(t))$, show that $\mathbf{v} = v\mathbf{e}_t$ and $\mathbf{a} = \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t + \kappa v^2\mathbf{e}_n$.

Exercise 3.7: A section of track of a roller coaster can be defined using the space curve $\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + f(x)\mathbf{E}_y$. The measurement system used to determine the speed of a trolley moving on this track measures $x(t)$ rather than $s(t)$. Consequently, in order to establish and verify the equations of motion of the trolley, it is desirable to know \dot{x} and \ddot{x} in terms of \dot{s} and \ddot{s} . Starting from the definition $\dot{s} = \|\mathbf{v}\|$, show that

$$\dot{s} = \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2} \dot{x}.$$

Using this result and the chain rule, show that

$$\ddot{s} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2}} \left(\frac{df}{dx} \frac{d^2f}{dx^2} \dot{x}^2 + \left(1 + \left(\frac{df}{dx}\right)^2\right) \ddot{x} \right).$$

Exercise 3.8: Using the results of Exercise 3.7 and the expressions for the Serret-Frenet basis vectors recorded in Section 3.3.1, write out the equations governing the motion of the trolley. You should assume that a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ acts on the trolley while it is moving on the track, and model the trolley as a particle of mass m .

Exercise 3.9: Consider a particle of mass m moving on a circular helix $\mathbf{r} = R\mathbf{e}_R + \alpha R\theta\mathbf{E}_z$. A gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the particle. Show that

$$s(\theta) = R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}(\theta - \theta_0) + s(\theta_0), \quad \dot{s} = R\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}\dot{\theta}.$$

Using $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ and the results of Section 3.4, show that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t &= -\frac{mg\alpha}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}} = mR\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}\ddot{\theta}, \\ \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_n &= N_n = mR\dot{\theta}^2, \\ \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_b &= N_b - \frac{mg}{\sqrt{1 + \alpha^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

Here, $N_n\mathbf{e}_n + N_b\mathbf{e}_b$ is the normal force exerted by the curve on the particle.

Exercise 3.10: Show that the polar coordinate θ of the particle discussed in Exercise 3.9 is

$$\theta(t) = -\frac{g\alpha}{2R(1 + \alpha^2)}(t - t_0)^2 + \dot{\theta}_0(t - t_0) + \theta_0.$$

For various initial conditions θ_0 and $\dot{\theta}_0$, discuss the motion of the particle on the helix. You should notice the similarities between the results of this exercise and the projectile problem discussed in Section 1.6 of Chapter 1.

Exercise 3.11: The equation of a clothoid is given by

$$x(u) = a\sqrt{\pi} \int_0^{u/\sqrt{\pi}} \cos\left(\frac{\pi z^2}{2}\right) dz,$$
$$y(u) = a\sqrt{\pi} \int_0^{u/\sqrt{\pi}} \sin\left(\frac{\pi z^2}{2}\right) dz,$$

where $a > 0$ is a constant (see Fig. 3.3). Show that the arc-length parameter s of the clothoid is governed by the equation

$$\frac{ds}{du} = a.$$

Verify that the curvature is given by the simple expression $\kappa = u/a$, and compute the Serret-Frenet triad for the clothoid.

Chapter 4

Friction Forces and Spring Forces



TOPICS

Two types of forces are discussed in this chapter: friction forces and spring forces. We start with the former and consider a simple classic experiment. Based on this experiment, general (coordinate-free) expressions for friction forces are obtained. The chapter closes with the corresponding developments for a spring force. Several examples are used throughout the chapter to illustrate applications of the formulations of the spring and friction forces.

The reason for including a separate chapter on these two types of forces is that we have found that they present the most difficulty to students when they are formulating problems. In particular, many students have the impression that if they do not correctly guess the direction of spring and friction forces in their free-body diagram, then they will inevitably obtain the wrong answer. The coordinate-free formulation of these forces in this chapter bypasses this issue.

4.1 An Experiment on Friction

Most theories of friction forces arise from studies by the French scientist Charles Augustin Coulomb.¹ Here, we review a simple experiment that is easily replicated (at least qualitatively) using a blackboard eraser, some weights, and a table.

As shown in Fig. 4.1, consider a block of mass m that is initially at rest on a horizontal plane. A force $P\mathbf{E}_x$ acts on the block.

Upon increasing P , several observations can be made:

- For small values of P , the block remains at rest.
- Beyond a critical value $P = P^*$, the block starts to move.

¹ The most cited reference to his work is his prize-winning paper [24], published in 1785. Accounts of Coulomb's work on friction are contained in Dugas [29] and Heyman [49].

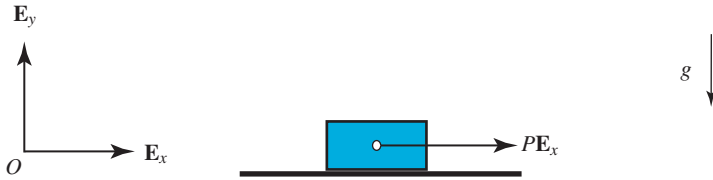


Fig. 4.1 A block on a rough horizontal plane.

- (c) Once in motion, a constant value of $P = P^{**}$ is required to move the block at a constant speed.
- (d) Both P^* and P^{**} are proportional to the magnitude of the normal force \mathbf{N} .

Let's now analyze this experiment. We model the block as a particle of mass m , and set

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where y_0 and z_0 are constants. We leave it as an exercise to derive expressions for \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{a} .

The free-body diagram of the particle is shown in Fig. 4.2. In this figure, $\mathbf{F}_f = F_{f_x}\mathbf{E}_x + F_{f_z}\mathbf{E}_z$ is the friction force exerted by the surface on the particle and $\mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{E}_y$ is the normal (or reaction) force exerted by the surface on the particle.

From $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, we obtain three equations:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{f_x} + P &= m\ddot{x}, \\ N - mg &= 0, \\ F_{f_z} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

For the purposes of our discussion, we assume that $P > 0$, so the applied force $P\mathbf{E}_x$ tries to move the block to the right (i.e., in the positive \mathbf{E}_x direction). Now, for the static case, $\ddot{x} = 0$, and from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ we find that $\mathbf{F}_f = -P\mathbf{E}_x$. As noted previously, as the magnitude of \mathbf{P} is increased beyond a critical value P^* , the block starts to move. The critical value of P^* is proportional to the magnitude of the normal

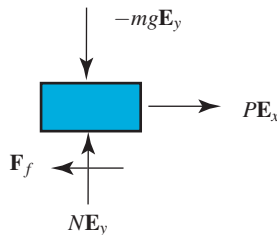


Fig. 4.2 Free-body diagram of the block.

force \mathbf{N} . We denote this constant of proportionality by the coefficient of static friction μ_s . Hence, $|F_{f_x}| \leq \mu_s |N| = \mu_s mg$ and $P^* = \mu_s mg$. In summary, for the static case, $\mathbf{F}_f = -P\mathbf{E}_x$ until $P = \mu_s mg$. As P increases beyond this value, then the block moves and the friction force is no longer equal to $-P\mathbf{E}_x$.

When the block starts moving, it does so to the right: $\mathbf{v}/\|\mathbf{v}\| = \mathbf{E}_x$. The friction force in this case is dynamic, and it opposes the motion. Furthermore, as noted above, the magnitude of the friction force is proportional to the magnitude of \mathbf{N} . The constant of proportionality is denoted by μ_d , the coefficient of dynamic friction. Hence, as the block will move to the right, $\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d |N| \mathbf{E}_x = -\mu_d mg \mathbf{E}_x$. If the block moves at constant speed, then we find from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ that the applied force is balanced by the friction force: $P^{**} = \mu_d mg$.

The coefficients of static friction and dynamic friction depend on the nature of the surfaces of the horizontal surface and the block. They must be determined experimentally.

4.2 Static and Dynamic Coulomb Friction Forces

Among others, the previous developments assumed that the horizontal surface was flat and stationary. For many problems, these developments are insufficient and need to be generalized in several directions:

- (a) Cases where the surface that the particle lies on is curved.
- (b) Cases where the particle is moving on a space curve.
- (c) Cases where the particle moves on a space curve or surface that is in motion.

It is to these cases that we now turn. The theory that we present here is not universally applicable, although it is used extensively in engineering.² For instance, in theories proposed to explain the squealing induced by brake pads pressing on rotors in automobiles [56] and in explanations of locomotion in microsystems [30, 103], Coulomb's theory of friction is used extensively. On the other hand, this friction theory is generally not used in modeling the contact forces between tires and the surface of the road.

To proceed, the position vector and absolute velocity vector of the particle are denoted by \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{v} , respectively. If the particle is in motion on a space curve, then the velocity vector of the point of the space curve that is in contact with the particle is denoted by \mathbf{v}_c . Similarly, if the particle is in motion on a surface, then the velocity vector of the point of the surface that is in contact with the particle is denoted by \mathbf{v}_s .

² For further information on the limitations of Coulomb's theory of friction, we refer the reader to Rabinowicz [78] and Ruina [83].

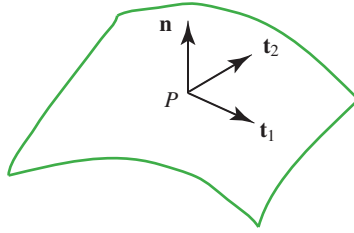


Fig. 4.3 The pair of tangent vectors \mathbf{t}_1 and \mathbf{t}_2 and normal vector \mathbf{n} at a point P of a surface.

4.2.1 A Particle on a Surface

Here, we assume that the particle is moving on a surface. Referring to Fig. 4.3, at the point P of the surface that is in contact with the particle, we assume that there is a well-defined unit normal vector \mathbf{n} . At this point of contact one also has a pair of unit tangent vectors \mathbf{t}_1 and \mathbf{t}_2 . We choose these tangent vectors such that $\{\mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{t}_2, \mathbf{n}\}$ is a right-handed basis for Euclidean three-space.

It is convenient to consider some examples. First, if the particle is moving on a horizontal plane, then $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{E}_z$, $\mathbf{t}_1 = \mathbf{E}_x$, and $\mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{E}_y$. Another example, that we will examine later in Section 4.7, is a particle on the inner surface of a cone $z = r \tan(\alpha)$. Here, α is the angle of inclination of the conical surface. In this case, we have

$$\mathbf{n} = \cos(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z - \sin(\alpha)\mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{t}_1 = \cos(\alpha)\mathbf{e}_r + \sin(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Notice how these vectors have been normalized so as to have unit magnitude.

Recall that \mathbf{v}_s denotes the absolute velocity vector of the point of contact P . Then, the velocity vector of the particle relative to P is

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_s = v_1\mathbf{t}_1 + v_2\mathbf{t}_2.$$

If $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$, then the particle is said to be stationary relative to the surface. Specifically, we have

$$\text{static friction when } \mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0} \text{ and dynamic friction when } \mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} \neq \mathbf{0}.$$

The force exerted by the surface on the particle is composed of two parts: the normal (or reaction) force \mathbf{N} and the friction force \mathbf{F}_f . For both the static and dynamic cases,

$$\mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{n}.$$

Furthermore, N is indeterminate. It can only be found from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. The static friction force is

$$\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{static}}} = F_{f_1}\mathbf{t}_1 + F_{f_2}\mathbf{t}_2,$$

where F_{f_1} and F_{f_2} are also indeterminate. The amount of static friction available is limited by the coefficient of static friction:

$$\|\mathbf{F}_f\| \leq \mu_s \|\mathbf{N}\|.$$

If this criterion fails, then the particle will move relative to the surface. The friction force in this case is dynamic:

$$\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{dynamic}}} = -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|}.$$

You should notice that this force opposes the motion of the particle relative to the surface.

At the instant of the transition from static friction to dynamic friction $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$, so the expression for dynamic friction above is not defined. In this case, known as the stick-slip transition, we assume that the dynamic friction force is given by

$$\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{dynamic}}} = -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \mathbf{s},$$

where \mathbf{s} is a unit vector that is parallel to the static friction force $\mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{static}}}$ at the instant where $\|\mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{static}}}\| = \mu_s \|\mathbf{N}\|$ and

$$\mathbf{s} = \frac{\mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{static}}}}{\|\mathbf{F}_{f_{\text{static}}}\|}.$$

The vector $-\mathbf{s}$ is the slip direction for the particle.

4.2.2 A Particle on a Space Curve

Here, we assume that the particle is moving on a curve. At the point P of the curve that is in contact with the particle, we assume that there is a well-defined unit tangent vector \mathbf{e}_t (see Fig. 4.4). At this point of contact, one also has two unit normal vectors \mathbf{n}_1 and \mathbf{n}_2 . We choose these vectors such that $\{\mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2, \mathbf{e}_t\}$ is a right-handed basis for Euclidean three-space. The vectors \mathbf{n}_1 and \mathbf{n}_2 lie in the plane spanned by \mathbf{e}_n and \mathbf{e}_b . For instance, if the particle is moving on a horizontal line, then we can choose $\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{E}_x$, $\mathbf{n}_1 = \mathbf{E}_y$, and $\mathbf{n}_2 = \mathbf{E}_z$.

Recall that \mathbf{v}_c denotes the absolute velocity vector of the point of contact P . Then, the velocity vector of the particle relative to P is

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c = v_t \mathbf{e}_t.$$

If $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$, then the particle is said to be stationary relative to the curve. Specifically, we again have that

static friction when $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$ and dynamic friction when $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} \neq \mathbf{0}$.

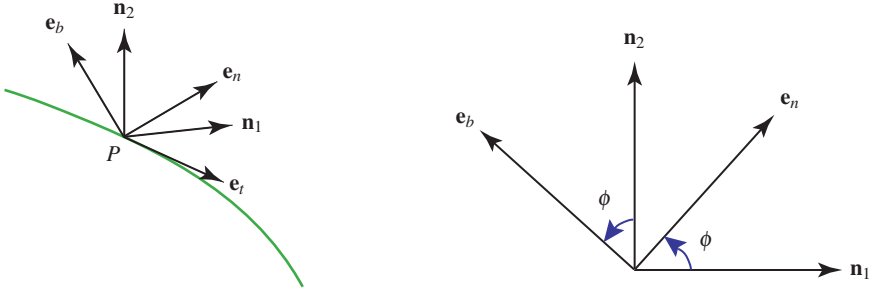


Fig. 4.4 The tangent vector \mathbf{e}_t and two normal vectors \mathbf{n}_1 and \mathbf{n}_2 at a point P of a curve. The inset figure shows the pair of normal vectors lying in the plane formed by \mathbf{e}_n and \mathbf{e}_b .

The force exerted by the curve on the particle is composed of two parts: the normal (or reaction) force \mathbf{N} and the friction force \mathbf{F}_f . For both the static and dynamic cases,

$$\mathbf{N} = N_1 \mathbf{n}_1 + N_2 \mathbf{n}_2.$$

Furthermore, N_1 and N_2 are indeterminate. They can be found only from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. The static friction force is

$$\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{F}_{f\text{static}} = F_f \mathbf{e}_t,$$

where F_f is also indeterminate. The amount of static friction available is limited by the coefficient of static friction:

$$\|\mathbf{F}_f\| \leq \mu_s \|\mathbf{N}\|.$$

Specifically,

$$|F_f| \leq \mu_s \sqrt{N_1^2 + N_2^2}.$$

If this criterion fails, then the particle will move relative to the curve. The friction force in this case is dynamic:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{F}_{f\text{dynamic}} &= -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|} \\ &= -\mu_d \sqrt{N_1^2 + N_2^2} \frac{v_t}{|v_t|} \mathbf{e}_t. \end{aligned}$$

You should notice that this force opposes the motion of the particle relative to the curve. For the stick-slip transition, as in the case of a particle moving on a surface, we can again use the direction of $\mathbf{F}_{f\text{static}}$ at the transition to determine the direction of the dynamic friction force $\mathbf{F}_{f\text{dynamic}}$ at the instant when slip occurs.

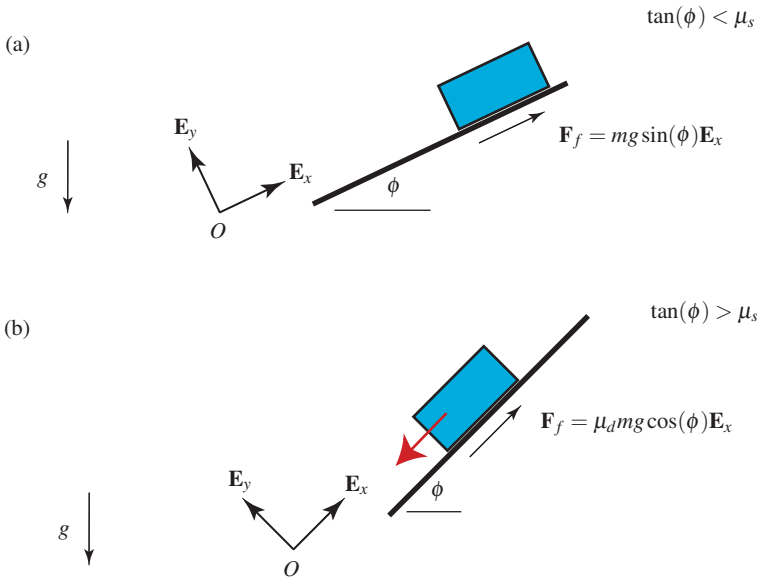


Fig. 4.5 A block on a rough plane at various angles of inclination: (a) $\tan(\phi) < \mu_s$ and the block remains at rest and (b) $\tan(\phi) > \mu_s$ and there is insufficient static friction to prevent motion of the block sliding down the incline.

4.2.3 Additional Comments

In the static friction case, $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$ and the particle is stuck on the surface or curve. For these instances, both the friction force \mathbf{F}_f and the normal force \mathbf{N} are unknown. However, because the motion of the surface/curve is known, the motion of the particle is also known and \mathbf{a} can be determined. Hence, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provides three equations to determine these forces.

An error many students make is setting the static friction force F_{f_s} , say, equal to $\mu_s N$ or, worse, $\mu_s mg$. Setting the static friction force equal to one of its maximum values is generally not valid. The easiest example to explain this error is shown in Fig. 4.5. In this figure, two examples of the friction force for a block that is initially placed at rest on a plane are shown. If the plane were horizontal, then it would be easy to show that $\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{0}$. As the angle of inclination ϕ of the plane is increased, the magnitude of the friction force increases. Eventually, there is insufficient static friction to hold the block at rest and it starts moving. Once in motion, the friction force changes to dynamic Coulomb friction and the block accelerates down the incline.

You may have noted that we are using \mathbf{e}_t to denote the tangent vector to a moving curve. However, our previous developments in Chapter 3 were limited to a fixed curve. As mentioned there, they can be extended to a moving curve. Specifically, let \mathbf{p} denote the position vector to any point on a moving space curve. This position

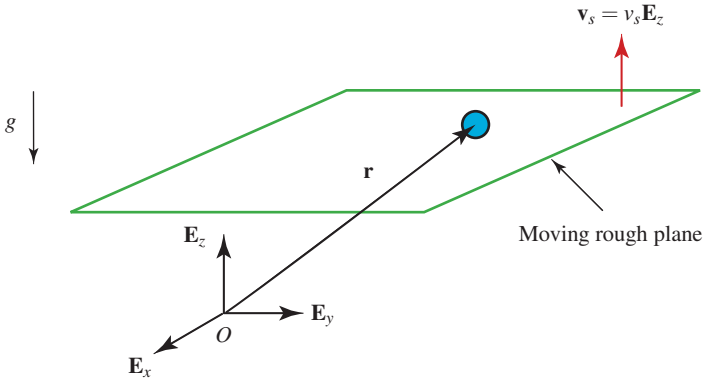


Fig. 4.6 A particle moving on a horizontal plane.

vector depends on the arc-length parameter and time:

$$\mathbf{p} = \tilde{\mathbf{p}}(s, t).$$

One now has derivatives featuring in the definitions of the Serret-Frenet triad which are partial derivatives with respect to s :

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \tilde{\mathbf{e}}_t(s, t) = \frac{\partial \mathbf{p}}{\partial s}, \quad \kappa \mathbf{e}_n = \frac{\partial \mathbf{e}_t}{\partial s}, \quad \mathbf{e}_b = \mathbf{e}_t \times \mathbf{e}_n.$$

In essence one is *freezing* time and evaluating the Serret-Frenet triad for the *frozen* curve. Another point of interest is that the velocity \mathbf{v}_c discussed earlier is equal to $\partial \mathbf{p} / \partial t$. It is interesting to note that these developments are used in theories of rods (see, e.g., Antman [1] or Love [61]).

4.3 A Particle on a Rough Plane Subject to a Vertical Motion

To illustrate the previous developments, we consider the problem of a particle moving on a rough horizontal plane as shown in Fig. 4.6. Every point on this plane is assumed to be moving with a velocity $\mathbf{v}_s = v_s \mathbf{E}_z$. A vertical gravitational force also acts on the particle.

For this problem,

$$\mathbf{t}_1 = \mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Furthermore, the velocity vector of the particle is

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{x} \mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y} \mathbf{E}_y + v_s \mathbf{E}_z.$$

The relative velocity vector of the particle is

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_s = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y.$$

We leave it as an exercise to draw the free-body diagrams of the particle for the static and dynamic cases.

Turning to the results for the static case, we have

$$\mathbf{F} = N\mathbf{E}_z + F_{f_x}\mathbf{E}_x + F_{f_y}\mathbf{E}_y - mg\mathbf{E}_z = m\mathbf{a} = m\dot{v}_s\mathbf{E}_z.$$

It follows from these equations that

$$\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{0}, \quad \mathbf{N} = m(g + \dot{v}_s)\mathbf{E}_z.$$

As expected, the friction force is zero in this case.

Alternatively for the dynamic case we have

$$\mathbf{F} = N\mathbf{E}_z - \mu_d |N| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|} - mg\mathbf{E}_z = m\mathbf{a}.$$

From these three scalar equations, we find that the normal force is

$$\mathbf{N} = m(g + \dot{v}_s)\mathbf{E}_z.$$

In addition, two ordinary differential equations for the motion of the particle relative to the surface are obtained:

$$m\ddot{x} = -\mu_d |m(g + \dot{v}_s)| \frac{\dot{x}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2}}, \quad m\ddot{y} = -\mu_d |m(g + \dot{v}_s)| \frac{\dot{y}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2}}.$$

As expected, these differential equations are valid only when $\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|$ is nonzero.

4.4 Pulling a Block Over a Rough Surface

As a second illustrative example, imagine a block of mass m that is initially at rest on a rough horizontal surface (see Fig. 4.7). A force $\mathbf{P} = P \cos(\beta)\mathbf{E}_x + P \sin(\beta)\mathbf{E}_y$ is applied to the block, and the magnitude of this force is gradually increased and then decreased over time: $P = P(t)$ and β is a constant. We seek to determine the motion of the block. We will find that the block initially remains at rest. Eventually, there is insufficient static friction for the block to stay stationary and it will accelerate from rest. After $P(t)$ goes to zero, the dynamic friction force brings the block back to rest. These results will be illustrated shortly using a numerical example.

4.4.1 Kinematics

The block will be modeled as a particle of mass m . We start by using a Cartesian coordinate system to describe the motion of the block. It shall be assumed that the block does not leave the surface. Hence, the y coordinate is constant:

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{v} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{z}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{a} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{z}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

In the sequel, we will find that z remains constant.

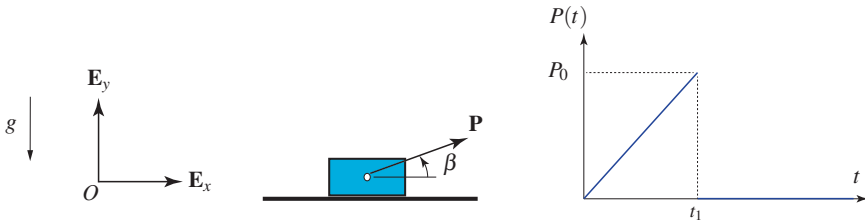


Fig. 4.7 A block on a rough horizontal plane that is acted upon by a force $\mathbf{P} = P \cos(\beta) \mathbf{E}_x + P \sin(\beta) \mathbf{E}_y$ where $P = P(t)$. Initially, the block is at rest, then it starts to slide, and eventually it returns to a state of rest.

4.4.2 Forces

The free-body diagram of the particle is shown in Fig. 4.8. In relation to our earlier discussion of the friction force acting on a particle lying on a surface, $\mathbf{t}_1 = \mathbf{E}_x$, $\mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{E}_z$, and $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{E}_y$ for this example. For the case where the particle is stationary, the friction is static and so

$$\mathbf{F} = (N - mg) \mathbf{E}_y + F_{f_x} \mathbf{E}_x + F_{f_z} \mathbf{E}_z + P \cos(\beta) \mathbf{E}_x + P \sin(\beta) \mathbf{E}_y.$$

The friction force is limited by the static friction criterion:

$$\sqrt{F_{f_x}^2 + F_{f_z}^2} \leq \mu_s |N|.$$

When the particle is moving, the resultant force acting on the particle is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} &= N\mathbf{E}_y - mg\mathbf{E}_y + F_{f_x} \mathbf{E}_x + F_{f_z} \mathbf{E}_z + P \cos(\beta) \mathbf{E}_x + P \sin(\beta) \mathbf{E}_y \\ &= (F_{f_x} + P \cos(\beta)) \mathbf{E}_x + (N - mg + P \sin(\beta)) \mathbf{E}_y + F_{f_z} \mathbf{E}_z, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$F_{f_x} \mathbf{E}_x + F_{f_z} \mathbf{E}_z = -\mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{x} \mathbf{E}_x + \dot{z} \mathbf{E}_z}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{z}^2}}.$$

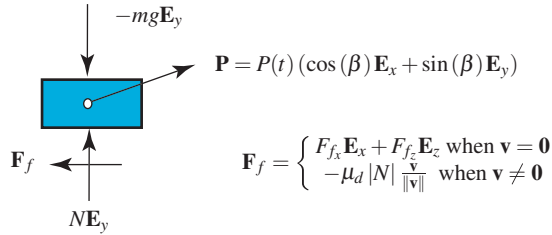


Fig. 4.8 Free-body diagram of the block.

4.4.3 Balance Law

We first consider the case where the particle is at rest. In this case, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provides three equations for the three unknowns N and \mathbf{F}_f :

$$F_{f_x} = -P \cos(\beta), \quad F_{f_z} = 0, \quad N = mg - P \sin(\beta).$$

When the particle is in motion, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provides differential equations for $x(t)$ and $z(t)$ and an equation for N :

$$m\ddot{x} = P \cos(\beta) - \mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{x}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{z}^2}}, \quad m\ddot{z} = -\mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{z}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{z}^2}}, \quad N = mg - P \sin(\beta).$$

4.4.4 Analysis

We assume that the block is initially at rest and the force magnitude $P(t)$ has the sawtooth behavior shown in Figure 4.7:

$$P(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{when } t < 0 \\ P_0 \frac{t}{t_1} & \text{when } 0 \leq t \leq t_1 \\ 0 & \text{when } t > t_1 \end{cases}$$

Initially, there is sufficient static friction to hold the block stationary. From $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, we find that

$$\mathbf{F}_f = -P_0 \left(\frac{t}{t_1} \right) \cos(\beta) \mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{N} = \left(mg - P_0 \left(\frac{t}{t_1} \right) \sin(\beta) \right) \mathbf{E}_y.$$

Eventually, however the static friction criterion will be violated. This happens at time t_s :

$$P_0 \left(\frac{t_s}{t_1} \right) \cos(\beta) = \mu_s \left(mg - P_0 \left(\frac{t_s}{t_1} \right) \sin(\beta) \right).$$

In writing this criterion, we have assumed that $N > 0$. Solving for t_s :

$$\frac{t_s}{t_1} = \frac{\mu_s mg}{P_0} (\cos(\beta) + \mu_s \sin(\beta))^{-1}.$$

If the solution t_s to this equation is such that $t_s > t_1$, then there is sufficient static friction for the particle to remain at rest for all time.

Tacitly assuming that $t_s < t_1$, the block will now start slipping. The initial direction of the dynamic friction force is not defined because $\dot{x}(t_s) = \dot{z}(t_s) = 0$ and the expression we use for the dynamic friction force blows up. To set the direction of the friction force in this case, we note that the particle will initially seek to slip to the right, so $\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d |N| \mathbf{E}_x$ when $t = t_s$ (i.e., $\mathbf{s} = \mathbf{E}_x$). Typically, $\mu_s > \mu_d$, so there will be a drop in the magnitude of the friction force acting on the particle at the instant that the particle starts to move. When the particle is in motion, it is governed by the differential equations

$$\begin{aligned} m\ddot{x} &= P \cos(\beta) - \mu_d |mg - P \sin(\beta)| \frac{\dot{x}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{z}^2}}, \\ m\ddot{z} &= -\mu_d |mg - P \sin(\beta)| \frac{\dot{z}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{z}^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

However, when the block initially starts to slip, there is no motion in the z -direction: $\dot{z}(t_s) = 0$. The equation for \ddot{z} informs us that $\ddot{z} = 0$ and so \dot{z} will remain 0. We can therefore ignore motion in the z -direction and focus our attention on $x(t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} m\ddot{x} &= P \cos(\beta) - \mu_d |mg - P \sin(\beta)| \frac{\dot{x}}{\sqrt{\dot{x}^2 + \dot{z}^2}} \\ &= P(t) (\cos(\beta) + \mu_d \sin(\beta)) - \mu_d mg. \end{aligned}$$

We have also used the fact that $\dot{x} > 0$ and $N = (mg - P(t) \sin(\beta)) > 0$ to simplify the differential equation for $x(t)$. Substituting for $P(t)$ and noting that $\dot{x}(t_s) = 0$, it is straightforward to determine $\dot{x}(t)$:

$$\dot{x}(t) = -\mu_d g(t - t_s) + \frac{1}{m} (\cos(\beta) + \mu_d \sin(\beta)) \int_{t_s}^t P(\tau) d\tau.$$

We can also use this equation to determine the time t_p where the block stops moving and static friction force becomes activated.

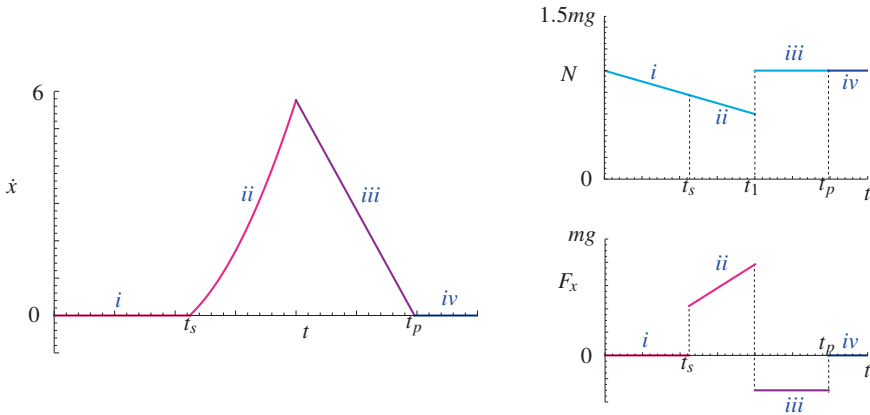


Fig. 4.9 The speed \dot{x} of the particle and normal force N and resultant force $\mathbf{F} = F_x \mathbf{E}_x$ acting on the particle as functions of time t . The numerical values that are used for the example shown in this figure are discussed in Section 4.4.5.

4.4.5 Numerical Example

To illustrate the previous results and commentary, we consider an example where

$$\mu_s = 0.5, \quad \mu_d = 0.3, \quad P_0 = 0.8mg, \quad \beta = 30^\circ, \quad t_1 = 4 \text{ seconds.}$$

From the previous analysis, we compute the time t_s where the particle starts to slip and the time t_p when it eventually returns to rest:

$$t_s = 2.24 \text{ seconds}, \quad t_p = 5.96 \text{ seconds.}$$

The numerical results are presented in Fig. 4.9. Referring to this figure, we make the following observations:

- (i) For $t < t_s$, the particle is at rest, and, because the static friction force is balancing $\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$, the net force acting on the particle $\mathbf{F} = 0$. The normal force however is decreasing because $\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y$ is increasing.
- (ii) For $t_s < t < t_1$, the particle slips and starts to move. The acceleration is linear in time, so the velocity increases quadratically in time. The resultant force acting on the particle $\mathbf{F} = F_x \mathbf{E}_x$ is now nonzero because the applied force in the horizontal direction is greater than the dynamic friction force.

- (iii) For $t_1 < t < t_p$, the particle continues to slide. Because $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{0}$, the normal force simply balances gravity and the resultant force on the particle is entirely due to dynamic friction: $\mathbf{F} = F_x \mathbf{E}_x = -\mu_d mg \mathbf{E}_x$. The particle has a constant deceleration, and the velocity decays linearly in time.
- (iv) For $t_p < t$, the particle is at rest. The normal force balances gravity and the friction force is 0 because this is the amount of friction needed to keep the particle at rest. The resultant force on the particle is zero.

This concludes our analysis of this example. We hope you can envision how to generalize the analysis to other examples of $P(t)$.

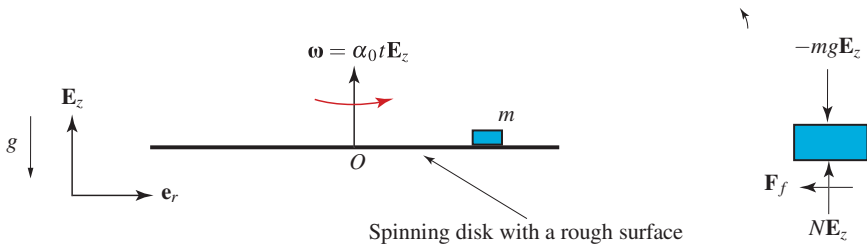


Fig. 4.10 A block on a disk that is being spun with an angular velocity $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \alpha_0 t \mathbf{E}_z$. The contact between the block and disk is rough. A free-body diagram of the particle of mass m modeling the block is also shown.

4.5 A Particle on a Spinning Disk

For our third example, we consider the problem of a block of mass m that is initially placed at rest on the upper surface of a stationary disk (cf. Fig. 4.10). The disk is then spun up at a constant angular acceleration: $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega \mathbf{E}_z$ where $\omega = \alpha_0 t$ and $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is the angular velocity vector of the disk. Eventually, the amount of static friction between the disk and the block is insufficient and the block will slip on the disk. In this section, we analyze the stick-slip transition problem and also determine the motion of the block after slipping has occurred. Our numerical results, shown in Fig. 4.11, demonstrate that the block will eventually fall off the edge of the disk.

4.5.1 Kinematics

The block will be modeled as a particle of mass m . We start by using a cylindrical polar coordinate system to describe the motion of the block. It shall be assumed that

the block remains in contact with the surface of the disk and that the origin of the coordinate system is at the stationary center of the disk:

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r + 0\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{v} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \mathbf{a} = (\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2)\mathbf{e}_r + (r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta})\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

When the particle is stuck on the disk (i.e., the particle is not moving relative to the spinning disk), these expressions simplify because $r = r_0$ is a constant, and $\ddot{\theta} = \alpha_0$.

$$\mathbf{r} = r_0\mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{v} = r_0(\alpha_0 t)\mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \mathbf{a} = -r_0(\alpha_0 t)^2\mathbf{e}_r + r_0\alpha_0\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

For simplicity, we shall assume that $\theta(t=0) = 0$.

When the particle is slipping on the disk, the relative velocity vector of the particle is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} &= \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_s \\ &= \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta - r(\alpha_0 t)\mathbf{e}_\theta \\ &= \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)\mathbf{e}_\theta. \end{aligned}$$

As a check on our expression for \mathbf{v}_{rel} , observe that when the particle is stuck on the disk $\dot{r} = 0$, $\dot{\theta} = \alpha_0 t$, and, as expected, $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$.

4.5.2 Forces

The free-body diagram of the particle is shown in Fig. 4.10. In relation to our earlier discussion of the friction force acting on a particle lying on a surface, $\mathbf{t}_1 = \mathbf{e}_r$, $\mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{e}_\theta$, and $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{E}_z$ for this example. For the case where the particle is not sliding relative to the disk, the friction is static and so

$$\mathbf{F} = (N - mg)\mathbf{E}_z + F_{fr}\mathbf{e}_r + F_{f\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

The friction force is limited by the static friction criterion:

$$\sqrt{F_{fr}^2 + F_{f\theta}^2} \leq \mu_s |N|.$$

When the particle is in motion relative to the disk, the resultant force acting on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F} = N\mathbf{E}_z - mg\mathbf{E}_z + F_{fr}\mathbf{e}_r + F_{f\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta,$$

where

$$F_{fr}\mathbf{e}_r + F_{f\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta = -\mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)\mathbf{e}_\theta}{\sqrt{\dot{r}^2 + r^2(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)^2}}.$$

4.5.3 Balance Law

We first consider the case where the particle is at rest relative to the disk. In this case, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provides three equations for the three unknowns N and \mathbf{F}_f :

$$F_{f_r} = -mr_0\alpha_0^2 t^2, \quad F_{f_\theta} = mr_0\alpha_0, \quad N = mg.$$

Observe that the component F_{f_θ} would be zero if the disk were spinning at a constant speed.

When the particle is in motion, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ provides differential equations for $r(t)$ and $\theta(t)$ and an equation for N :

$$\begin{aligned} m(\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2) &= -\mu_d mg \frac{\dot{r}}{\sqrt{\dot{r}^2 + r^2(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)^2}}, \\ m(r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta}) &= -\mu_d mg \frac{r(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)}{\sqrt{\dot{r}^2 + r^2(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)^2}}, \\ N &= mg. \end{aligned}$$

4.5.4 Analysis

We assume that the block is placed at rest on the surface of the stationary disk and that the disk is spun up from rest with an angular acceleration α_0 . As mentioned earlier, we choose $\theta(t=0) = 0$ for convenience. While the disk is being spun up from rest, the block will initially remain at rest relative to the disk. However, eventually the static friction criterion will be violated. We denote the time t that this occurs by t_s . We determine t_s from the following equation:

$$\sqrt{F_{f_r}^2 + F_{f_\theta}^2} = \mu_s N.$$

That is,

$$(mr_0\alpha_0^2 t_s^2)^2 + (mr_0\alpha_0)^2 = \mu_s^2 m^2 g^2.$$

Solving for t_s :

$$t_s = \frac{1}{\alpha_0} \left(\frac{\mu_s^2 g^2}{r_0^2} - \alpha_0^2 \right)^{1/4}.$$

If there is sufficient angular acceleration, i.e.,

$$\alpha_0 \geq \frac{\mu_s g}{r_0},$$

then t_s is imaginary and slipping will immediately occur at $t = 0$. Otherwise, slipping will eventually occur.

When slipping occurs, the motion of the particle is governed by the nonlinear differential equations we established earlier:

$$m(\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2) = -\mu_d mg \frac{\dot{r}}{\sqrt{\dot{r}^2 + r^2(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)^2}},$$

$$m(r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta}) = -\mu_d mg \frac{r(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)}{\sqrt{\dot{r}^2 + r^2(\dot{\theta} - \alpha_0 t)^2}}.$$

These equations can only be solved numerically.

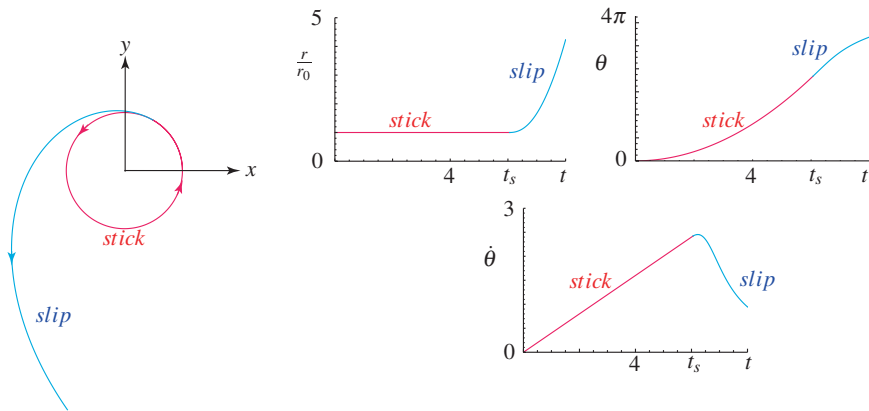


Fig. 4.11 Motion of a particle that is initially stuck on a spinning disk and, at time $t = t_s$, slips on the surface of the rough disk. The results shown in this figure include plots of $x(t) - y(t)$, $r(t)$, $\theta(t)$, and $\dot{\theta}(t)$. The numerical values that are used for the example shown in this figure are discussed in Section 4.5.5.

4.5.5 Numerical Example

As an example, we consider the case where

$$\mu_s = 0.3, \quad \mu_d = 0.25, \quad \alpha_0 = 0.4 \text{ radians/second}^2,$$

$$r(t = 0) = r_0 = 0.5 \text{ meters}, \quad \theta(t = 0) = 0.$$

Substituting some of these numbers into the expression for t_s we established earlier, we find that slipping occurs when

$$t_s \approx 6.06 \text{ seconds.}$$

Referring to Fig. 4.11, after slipping has occurred the block no longer moves in a circular path. Instead, it starts to move in a spiral path away from the origin with $\dot{r} > 0$ and r continually increasing. As can be seen from Fig. 4.11, the disk continues to accelerate and there is insufficient dynamic friction for $\dot{\theta}$ to catch up with the angular velocity $\alpha_0 t$ of the disk. Eventually, because r is continually increasing, for a disk of finite size and dimensions, the block will fall off the side of the disk.

4.6 Hooke’s Law and Linear Springs

The classical result on linear springs is due to a contemporary of Isaac Newton, Robert Hooke (1635–1703), who announced his result in the form of the anagram *ceiinossttuu* in 1660. He later published his result in his work *Lectures de Potentia restitutiva, or, Of spring explaining the power of springing bodies* in 1678:

Ut tensio sic vis.

This statement translates to “the power of any spring is in the same proportion with the tension thereof.”³ His result is often known as Hooke’s law.

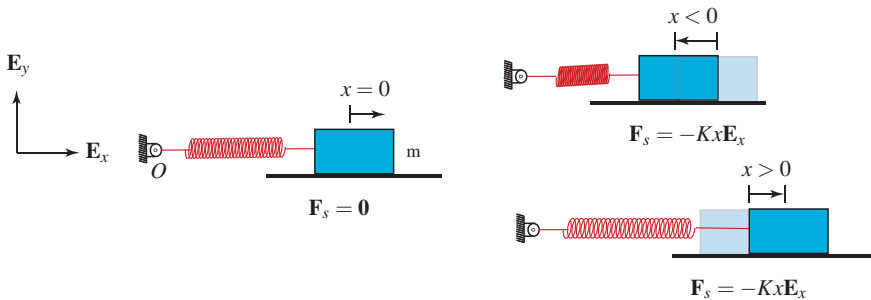


Fig. 4.12 A particle of mass m that is attached to a fixed point O by a linear spring of unstretched length ℓ_0 and stiffness K . The variable x in this figure is the displacement of the particle in the \mathbf{E}_x direction. When $x = 0$, the string is unstretched, the spring is compressed when $x < 0$, and the spring is extended when $x > 0$. The expression for the spring force \mathbf{F}_s acting on the particle in all three cases has the representation $\mathbf{F}_s = -Kx\mathbf{E}_x$. It is useful to observe that the spring force always seeks to move the particle in such a manner that the spring returns to its unstretched state.

³ From the *Historical Introduction to Love* [61]. In modern terminology, *power* is force and *tension* is extension.

As with Coulomb's work on friction, Hooke's law is based on experimental evidence. It is not valid in all situations. For instance, it implies that it is possible to extend a spring as much as desired without the spring breaking. This is patently not true. However, for many applications, where the change in the spring's length is small, it is a valid and extremely useful observation.

The prototypical example to illustrate Hooke's law is the harmonic oscillator shown in Fig. 4.12. When x is the displacement of the mass from the unstretched state (or equilibrium state) of the spring, then it is straightforward to verify that the spring force \mathbf{F}_s acting on the particle has the representation $\mathbf{F}_s = -Kx\mathbf{E}_x$. That is, the spring force always seeks to move the particle so that the spring returns to its unstretched state. For the applications of interest to us, we need to generalize this representation to situations such as those shown in Fig. 4.13 where the motion of the particle changes both the length of the spring and the direction of the spring force. Referring to this figure, one end of the spring is attached to a point A that has a position vector \mathbf{r}_A . The other end of the spring is attached to a mass particle whose position vector is \mathbf{r} . We confine our attention to a linear spring and denote its stiffness by K . That is, we assume Hooke's law is valid.

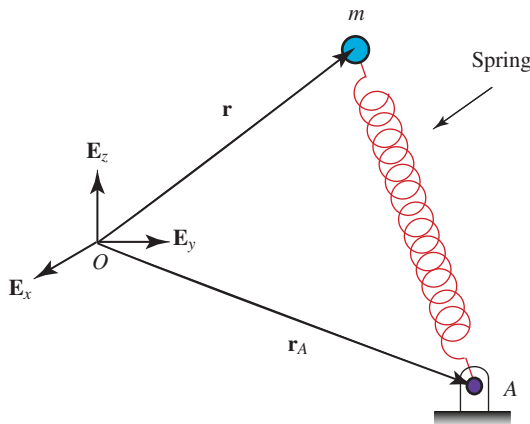


Fig. 4.13 A spring attached to a mass particle.

The force generated by the spring is assumed to be linearly proportional to its extension/compression. Here, the change in length of the spring is

$$\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0,$$

where ℓ_0 is the unstretched length of the spring. If this number is positive, then the spring is extended. The magnitude of the spring force \mathbf{F}_s is

$$\|\mathbf{F}_s\| = |K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0)|.$$

This is a statement of Hooke's law.

It remains to determine the direction of \mathbf{F}_s . First, suppose the spring is extended. Then the force \mathbf{F}_s will attempt to pull the particle toward A . In other words, its direction is

$$-\frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

Combining this observation with the result on the magnitude of the spring force, and noting that the extension is positive, we arrive at the expression

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

On the other hand, if the spring is compressed, then this force will attempt to push the particle away from A . As a result, its direction will be

$$\frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

Because the change in length of the spring force is negative, we find that the magnitude of the spring force in this case is

$$\|\mathbf{F}_s\| = -K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0).$$

Consequently, the spring force when the spring is compressed is

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

It should be clear that the final expressions for \mathbf{F}_s we have obtained for the extended and compressed springs are identical. In summary, for a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 , the force exerted by the spring on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|},$$

where the change in length of the spring is

$$\varepsilon = \|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0.$$

If, for a specific problem, one can choose the point A to be the origin, then the expression for \mathbf{F}_s simplifies considerably:

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K(\|\mathbf{r}\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}\|}.$$

We leave it as a useful exercise to repeat our analysis for the spring shown in Figure 4.12 and to verify that the expression for the spring force given in the caption to this figure is a special case of the general representation we have just established.

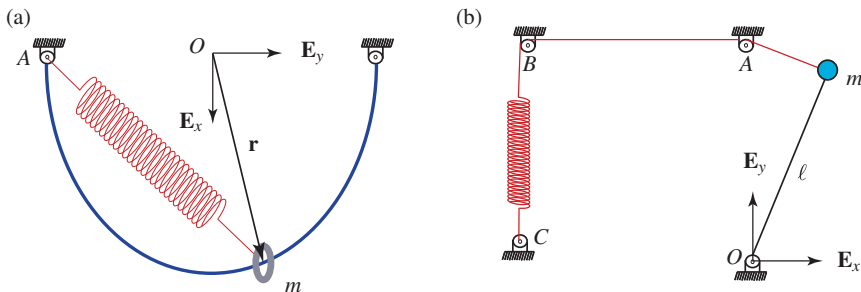


Fig. 4.14 (a) A particle of mass m is free to move on a circular track and is under the influence of a spring force. (b) A planar pendulum is attached by a series of inextensible massless cables to a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 .

4.6.1 Additional Examples

To illuminate our discussion of the spring force and extend its representation to other situations, we explore the spring force expression for two types of problems. In the first problem, shown in Fig. 4.14(a), a particle of mass m is free to move on a circular track of radius r_0 . The spring is attached to the particle and the fixed point A . Using a cylindrical polar coordinate system, we see that

$$\mathbf{r} = r_0 \mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{r}_A = -r_0 \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|^2 = 2r_0^2 (1 + \sin(\theta)).$$

The spring force acting on the particle has the representation

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_s &= -K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|} \\ &= -K \left(r_0 \sqrt{2(1 + \sin(\theta))} - \ell_0 \right) \frac{\mathbf{e}_r + \mathbf{E}_y}{\sqrt{2(1 + \sin(\theta))}}. \end{aligned}$$

You should notice how the expression for the spring force simplifies significantly when the unstretched length of the spring is zero: $\ell_0 = 0$.

As a second example, consider the pendulum shown in Fig. 4.14(b). Here, a spring is attached to a pendulum by a series of inextensible cables. The position vectors of A and the particle have the representations

$$\mathbf{r}_A = H \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{r} = \ell \mathbf{e}_r.$$

For ease of exposition, we do not explicitly use these expressions in what follows. The extension ε of the spring can be easily established:

$$\varepsilon = \|\mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_C\| + \|\mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_A\| + \|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0.$$

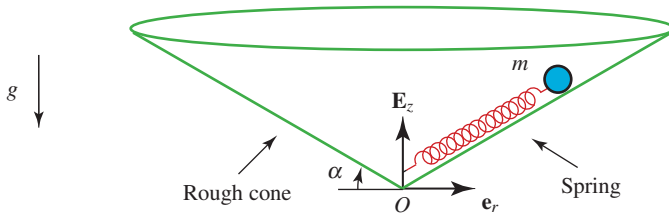


Fig. 4.15 A particle moving on a rough spinning cone.

Assuming that $\varepsilon > 0$, then the spring force will pull the particle toward A. Thus,

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

When the spring is compressed, $\varepsilon < 0$ and the spring will push the particle away from A. We will again find the same expression for the spring force in this case. In conclusion, the expression above is a valid representation for the spring force acting on the particle when the spring is either extended or compressed.

4.7 A Particle on a Rough Spinning Cone

We now consider the dynamics of a particle on a rough circular cone $z = r \tan(\alpha)$. The cone is rotating about its axis of symmetry with an angular speed $\Omega = \Omega(t)$. As shown in Fig. 4.15, the particle is attached to the apex of the cone by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 .

In what follows, we seek to determine the differential equations governing the motion of the particle and, in the event that the particle is not moving, the force exerted by the surface on the particle. The problem presented here is formidable; it has spring forces, friction, and a nontrivial surface. However, various special cases of this system arise in many problems in mechanics. For instance, by setting $\alpha = 0^\circ$ or 90° , one has the problem of a particle on a cylinder or horizontal plane, respectively. Representative trajectories of the particle for the case when the cone is smooth are shown in Fig. 4.16.

4.7.1 Kinematics

We choose our origin to coincide with the fixed apex of the cone. Neglecting the thickness of the spring, this point also coincides with the point of attachment of the spring to the apex of the cone. It is convenient to use a cylindrical polar coordinate

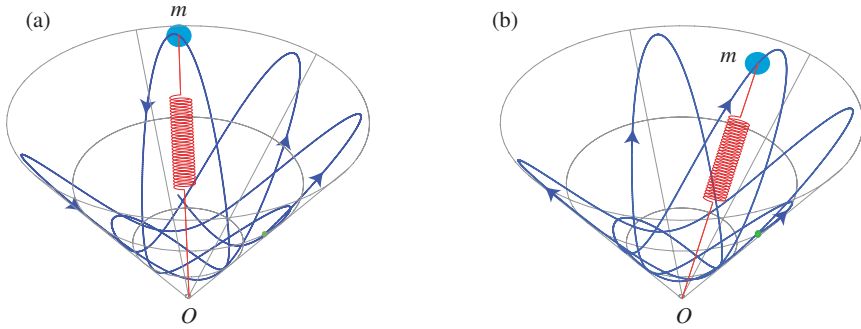


Fig. 4.16 Examples of the trajectories of a particle moving on a smooth cone. The particle is attached to the apex O of the cone by a linear spring and a vertical gravitational force also acts on the particle. For (a) $\dot{\theta}(0) > 0$ and for (b) $\dot{\theta}(0) < 0$.

system to describe the kinematics of this problem:

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r + r \tan(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Differentiating this position vector, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \dot{r}(\mathbf{e}_r + \tan(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z) + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta, \\ \mathbf{a} &= \ddot{r}(\mathbf{e}_r + \tan(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z) + (r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta})\mathbf{e}_\theta - r\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{e}_r. \end{aligned}$$

We also note that $\|\mathbf{r}\| = r/\cos(\alpha)$.

The position vector of the point of contact P of the particle with the cone is the same as that for the particle. It follows that, at P , the normal and tangential vectors are

$$\mathbf{n} = \cos(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z - \sin(\alpha)\mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{t}_1 = \cos(\alpha)\mathbf{e}_r + \sin(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Turning to the velocity vector of the point P , it is easily seen that this vector is

$$\mathbf{v}_s = r\Omega\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Consequently,

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \dot{r}(\mathbf{e}_r + \tan(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z) + r(\dot{\theta} - \Omega)\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

You should notice that, in general, $\dot{\theta} \neq \Omega$. However, if \mathbf{v}_{rel} is zero, then \mathbf{a} simplifies considerably to $-r_0\Omega^2\mathbf{e}_r$ where r_0 is a constant.

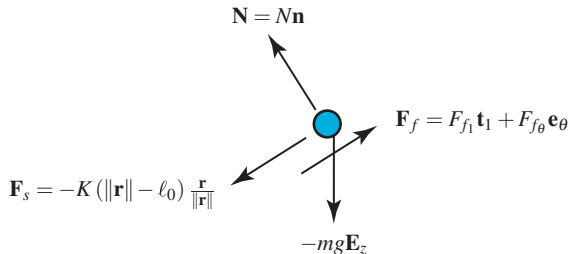


Fig. 4.17 Free-body diagram of the particle.

4.7.2 Forces

The free-body diagram for this problem is shown in Fig. 4.17. Because we have chosen the origin to be the point of attachment of the spring, the spring force has the representation

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K(\|\mathbf{r}\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}\|} = -K(r\sec(\alpha) - \ell_0) \mathbf{t}_1.$$

Notice that we are taking the general expression for the spring force that was established in Section 4.6 and substituting for \mathbf{r} . Alternatively, one can derive the second expression for the spring force above from scratch. We follow the (far easier) procedure of substituting directly into the general expression throughout the remainder of this book. Furthermore, the normal and friction forces acting on the particle are

$$\mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{n}, \quad \mathbf{F}_f = F_{f_1} \mathbf{t}_1 + F_{f_\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

The resultant force acting on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F} = N\mathbf{n} + (F_{f_1} - K(r\sec(\alpha) - \ell_0)) \mathbf{t}_1 + F_{f_\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta - mg\mathbf{E}_z.$$

4.7.3 Balance Law

It is convenient to take the \mathbf{t}_1 , \mathbf{e}_θ , and \mathbf{n} components of $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{f_1} - K(r\sec(\alpha) - \ell_0) - mg \sin(\alpha) &= m(\ddot{r}\sec(\alpha) - r\dot{\theta}^2 \cos(\alpha)), \\ F_{f_\theta} &= mr\ddot{\theta} + 2m\dot{r}\dot{\theta}, \\ N - mg \cos(\alpha) &= mr\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\alpha). \end{aligned}$$

We have omitted several algebraic details that were used to arrive at the final form of these equations.

4.7.4 Analysis

From the three equations above, we find that the normal force \mathbf{N} is

$$\mathbf{N} = mg \cos(\alpha) \mathbf{n} + mr\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\alpha) \mathbf{n}.$$

If the particle is not moving relative to the surface, then $\dot{\theta} = \Omega$ and $r = r_0$. As a result, the expression for \mathbf{N} becomes

$$\mathbf{N} = (mg \cos(\alpha) + mr_0\Omega^2 \sin(\alpha)) \mathbf{n}.$$

In both cases, this force always points in the direction of \mathbf{n} , so the particle does not lose contact with the surface.

Turning to the static friction case, we find from the remaining two equations that the friction force is

$$\mathbf{F}_f = (K(r_0 \sec(\alpha) - \ell_0) + mg \sin(\alpha) - mr_0\Omega^2 \cos(\alpha)) \mathbf{t}_1 + mr_0\Omega \mathbf{e}_\theta,$$

where $\mathbf{r}_0 = r_0 \mathbf{e}_r + r_0 \tan(\alpha) \mathbf{E}_z$. You should notice that if Ω is constant, then the static friction force has no component in the \mathbf{e}_θ direction. The static friction force is limited by the static friction criterion:

$$\|\mathbf{F}_f\| \leq \mu_s \|\mathbf{N}\| = \mu_s |mg \cos(\alpha) + mr_0\Omega^2 \sin(\alpha)|.$$

When this criterion fails, then the particle begins to move relative to the surface.

When the particle is in motion relative to the surface, the friction force is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_f &= -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|} \\ &= -\mu_d |mg \cos(\alpha) + mr\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\alpha)| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \dot{r}(\mathbf{e}_r + \tan(\alpha) \mathbf{E}_z) + r(\dot{\theta} - \Omega) \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Substituting for the components of the dynamic friction force in the two equations obtained from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$,

$$\begin{aligned} F_{f_1} - mg \sin(\alpha) - K(r \sec(\alpha) - \ell_0) &= m(\ddot{r} \sec(\alpha) - r\dot{\theta}^2 \cos(\alpha)), \\ F_{f_\theta} &= mr\ddot{\theta} + 2m\dot{r}\dot{\theta}, \end{aligned}$$

one arrives at a pair of ordinary differential equations for r and θ . The solution of these equations determines the motion of the particle relative to the surface. It is these equations that were integrated numerically with $F_{f_1} = F_{f_\theta} = 0$ to produce the results shown in Fig. 4.16.

4.8 Summary

Two types of forces were discussed in this chapter: friction forces and spring forces. For the friction forces, two classes needed to be considered, namely, static friction forces and dynamic friction forces. In addition, it was necessary to consider the two cases of a particle moving relative to a curve and a particle moving relative to a surface.

For a particle moving relative to a curve, a triad $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{n}_1, \mathbf{n}_2\}$ associated with each point of the curve was defined. It should be noted that the vectors \mathbf{e}_n and \mathbf{e}_b will lie in the plane spanned by \mathbf{n}_1 and \mathbf{n}_2 . The velocity vector of the point of the curve that is in contact with the particle was denoted \mathbf{v}_c . Hence, the velocity vector of the particle relative to its point of contact with the curve was $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c = v_t \mathbf{e}_t$. The friction force in this case had one component, $\mathbf{F}_f = F_f \mathbf{e}_t$, whereas the normal force had two components: $\mathbf{N} = N_1 \mathbf{n}_1 + N_2 \mathbf{n}_2$.

For a particle moving relative to a surface, a triad $\{\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{t}_2\}$ associated with each point of the surface was defined. The velocity vector of the point of the surface that is in contact with the particle was denoted \mathbf{v}_s . Hence, the velocity vector of the particle relative to its point of contact with the surface is $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_s = v_1 \mathbf{t}_1 + v_2 \mathbf{t}_2$. The friction force in this case had two components, $\mathbf{F}_f = F_{f1} \mathbf{t}_1 + F_{f2} \mathbf{t}_2$, whereas the normal force had one component: $\mathbf{N} = N \mathbf{n}$.

For both cases, when \mathbf{v}_{rel} is nonzero, the friction force is of the dynamic Coulomb friction type:

$$\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}\|}.$$

However, if there is no relative motion, then $\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{0}$ and \mathbf{F}_f is indeterminate. In other words, it must be calculated from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. However, the magnitude of the friction force is limited by the static friction criterion $\|\mathbf{F}_f\| \leq \mu_s \|\mathbf{N}\|$.

The second force we examined was the spring force. We considered a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . One end of the spring was attached to a fixed point A , and the other end was attached to a particle. Using Hooke's law, the spring force was shown to be

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

Several examples were presented to illustrate the use of the aforementioned expressions for the spring and friction forces.

4.9 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing Chapter 4.

Exercise 4.1: Consider a particle moving on a circle of radius R . The position vector of the particle is $\mathbf{r} = R\mathbf{e}_r$. Show that the dynamic friction force and normal force have

the representations

$$\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{\dot{\theta}}{|\dot{\theta}|} \mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \mathbf{N} = N_r \mathbf{e}_r + N_z \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Exercise 4.2: Consider a particle moving on a cylinder of radius R . The position vector of the particle is $\mathbf{r} = R\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z$. Show that the dynamic friction force and normal force have the representations

$$\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta + \dot{z}\mathbf{E}_z}{\sqrt{R^2\dot{\theta}^2 + \dot{z}^2}}, \quad \mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{e}_r.$$

Exercise 4.3: Consider a bead of mass m that is stationary on a rough circular hoop of radius R . The position vector of the particle is $\mathbf{r} = R\mathbf{e}_r$. Show that the static friction force and normal force have the representations

$$\mathbf{F}_f = F_f \mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad \mathbf{N} = N_r \mathbf{e}_r + N_z \mathbf{E}_z.$$

In addition, show that the static friction criterion for this problem is

$$|F_f| \leq \mu_s \sqrt{N_r^2 + N_z^2}.$$

Show that this inequality is equivalent to

$$-\mu_s \sqrt{N_r^2 + N_z^2} \leq F_f \leq \mu_s \sqrt{N_r^2 + N_z^2}.$$

Exercise 4.4: Consider a particle that is stationary on a rough cylinder of radius R . The position vector of the particle is $\mathbf{r} = R\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z$. Show that the static friction force and normal force have the representations

$$\mathbf{F}_f = F_{f_\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta + F_{f_z} \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{e}_r.$$

In addition, show that the static friction criterion for this problem is

$$\sqrt{F_{f_\theta}^2 + F_{f_z}^2} \leq \mu_s |N|.$$

Exercise 4.5: A particle of mass m is connected to a fixed point O by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . The particle is free to move on a circle of radius R that lies on the $z = z_0$ plane. A vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the particle. If the circle is smooth, show that the resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the particle has the representation

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_z + N_z \mathbf{E}_z + N_r \mathbf{e}_r - K \left(\sqrt{R^2 + z_0^2} - \ell_0 \right) \frac{R\mathbf{e}_r + z_0\mathbf{E}_z}{\sqrt{R^2 + z_0^2}}.$$

Exercise 4.6: Suppose that the particle in Exercise 4.5 is a bead in motion on a rough circular hoop. Show that the resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the particle now has the representation

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_z + N_z\mathbf{E}_z + N_r\mathbf{e}_r - K \left(\sqrt{R^2 + z_0^2} - \ell_0 \right) \frac{R\mathbf{e}_r + z_0\mathbf{E}_z}{\sqrt{R^2 + z_0^2}} \\ - \mu_d \sqrt{N_r^2 + N_z^2} \frac{\dot{\theta}}{|\dot{\theta}|} \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Exercise 4.7: Sometimes it is incorrect to write the following representation for the dynamic friction force:

$$\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d \|\mathbf{N}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{v}\|}.$$

Give two examples that illustrate that this expression is incorrect when the surface or curve that the particle is moving on is itself in motion.

Exercise 4.8: A particle of mass m is connected to a fixed point O by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . Show that the spring force has the representations

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K \left(\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2} - \ell_0 \right) \frac{x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}} \\ = -K \left(\sqrt{r^2 + z^2} - \ell_0 \right) \frac{r\mathbf{e}_r + z\mathbf{E}_z}{\sqrt{r^2 + z^2}}.$$

Exercise 4.9: For the system considered in Section 4.7, establish the differential equations governing the motion of the particle when the contact between the cone and the particle is smooth. In addition, specialize your results to the case where the spring is replaced by an inextensible cable of length ℓ_0 .

Chapter 5

Power, Work, and Energy



TOPICS

The chapter starts with a discussion of the notions of power and work. Subsequently, we make these ideas more precise by defining the mechanical power of a force and, from this, the work done by the force during the motion of a particle. Next, the work-energy theorem $\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is derived from the balance of linear momentum. It is then appropriate to discuss conservative forces, and we spend some added time discussing the potential energies of gravitational and spring forces. With these preliminaries aside, energy conservation is discussed and a second form of the work-energy theorem, $\dot{E} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}$, is established. Numerous examples are presented that show how to prove and exploit energy conservation if it occurs in a problem featuring the dynamics of a particle.

5.1 The Concepts of Work and Power

You may recall from other courses the notion that the work done by a constant force in moving an object through a distance is the product of the force and the distance. This idea has been traced to Coriolis in the 1820s (see [53]).¹ Subsequent works on the notion of work extended the concept to nonconstant forces moving a particle along a curved path at a nonconstant speed. For this more general case, it is convenient to use the concept of mechanical power or the rate at which a force performs work. Energy is defined as the ability to perform work.

In SI units, the units of work are Newton meters (or Joule) and the units of power are Newton meters per second (or Watt).² The power of an automotive engine is

¹ Gaspard-Gustav de Coriolis (1792–1843) was a French engineer, mathematician, and scientist. His most famous contribution to science was the discovery of the Coriolis effect.

² The Scotsman James Watt (1736–1819) played a seminal role in the development of the steam engine, and James P. Joule (1818–1889) was an English physicist who is famed for his discovery of the formula for the heat developed by passing a current through a conductor.

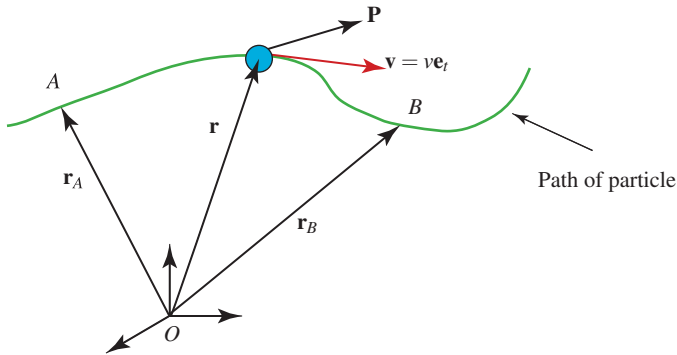


Fig. 5.1 Schematic of the motion of a particle.

often described in units of horsepower (Hp). Noting that one (metric) Hp ≈ 735.5 Watts, the power rating of the Bugatti Veyron of 1001 metric Hp translates to 736 kiloWatts. Assuming perfect energy conversion, the Bugatti's engine has the ability to generate enough electricity to power over seven thousand 100-Watt light bulbs. In nutrition, the unit of work most often used is the calorie (≈ 4200 Joules). Hence, one calorie is sufficient energy to raise 100 kilograms through a distance of ≈ 4.3 meters.

5.2 The Power of a Force

Consider a force \mathbf{P} acting on a particle of mass m . We do not assume that the force is constant or that the particle moves in a straight line. The rate of work done by the force \mathbf{P} on the particle is known as its mechanical power:

$$\text{Mechanical Power of } \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Here, the particle has a position vector \mathbf{r} and an absolute velocity vector $\mathbf{v} = \dot{\mathbf{r}}$. Consequently, if $\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$ (i.e., \mathbf{P} is normal to \mathbf{v}), then the force \mathbf{P} does no work. There are several instances of this occurrence presented in the remainder of this book.

Consider the work done by \mathbf{P} as the particle moves from $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t_A) = \mathbf{r}_A$ to $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t_B) = \mathbf{r}_B$ (cf. Fig. 5.1). At A , the arc-length parameter $s = s_A$, whereas at B , $s = s_B$. In what follows, the vector \mathbf{e}_t is the unit tangent vector to the path of the particle. If the particle is moving on a fixed curve, then this vector is also the unit tangent vector to the fixed curve. On the other hand, if the particle is in motion on a moving

curve, then the respective tangent vectors to the curve and the path of the particle will not coincide.³

With some algebra, we obtain several equivalent expressions for the work done by \mathbf{P} by integrating its power with respect to time:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{AB} &= \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} dt \\ &= \int_{\mathbf{r}_A}^{\mathbf{r}_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot d\mathbf{r} \\ &= \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot \frac{ds}{dt} \mathbf{e}_t dt \\ &= \int_{s_A}^{s_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t ds. \end{aligned}$$

We see from these results that only the tangential component of \mathbf{P} does work. In particular, forces that are normal to the path of the particle do no work.

Writing the force \mathbf{P} and the differential $d\mathbf{r} = v dt$ with respect to their components in various bases,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{P} &= P_x \mathbf{E}_x + P_y \mathbf{E}_y + P_z \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= P_r \mathbf{e}_r + P_\theta \mathbf{e}_\theta + P_z \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= P_t \mathbf{e}_t + P_n \mathbf{e}_n + P_b \mathbf{e}_b, \\ d\mathbf{r} &= dx \mathbf{E}_x + dy \mathbf{E}_y + dz \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= dr \mathbf{e}_r + r d\theta \mathbf{e}_\theta + dz \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= ds \mathbf{e}_t, \end{aligned}$$

we obtain the component forms of the previous results:

$$\begin{aligned} W_{AB} &= \int_{\mathbf{r}_A}^{\mathbf{r}_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = \int_{\mathbf{r}_A}^{\mathbf{r}_B} P_x dx + P_y dy + P_z dz \\ &= \int_{\mathbf{r}_A}^{\mathbf{r}_B} P_r dr + P_\theta r d\theta + P_z dz \\ &= \int_{s_A}^{s_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t ds \\ &= \int_{s_A}^{s_B} P_t ds. \end{aligned}$$

These integrals are evaluated along the path of the particle.

³ The easiest example that illuminates this point is to consider a particle moving on a horizontal line. The tangent vector is constant; say \mathbf{E}_x . However, if the line is moving, say with a velocity $v_c \mathbf{E}_y$, then the velocity vector of the particle is not $v_x \mathbf{E}_x$, rather it is $v_x \mathbf{E}_x + v_c \mathbf{E}_y = \left(\sqrt{v_x^2 + v_c^2} \right) \mathbf{e}_t$, where \mathbf{e}_t is the unit tangent vector to the path of the particle.

5.3 The Work-Energy Theorem

The kinetic energy T of a particle is defined to be

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{2} m v^2 = \frac{1}{2} m (v_x^2 + v_y^2 + v_z^2),$$

where $\mathbf{v} = v\mathbf{e}_t$. The work-energy theorem relates the change in kinetic energy to the resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the particle:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \right) = \frac{1}{2} m \dot{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{v}} = m \dot{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

In summary, the work-energy theorem is

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

That is, the rate of change of the kinetic energy is equal to the mechanical power of the resultant force. You should note that this theorem is a consequence of $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$.

We can integrate $\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ with respect to time to get a result that you have used previously:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} m v_B^2 - \frac{1}{2} m v_A^2 &= \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \dot{T} dt = \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} dt = \int_{s_A}^{s_B} \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t ds \\ &= \int_{s_A}^{s_B} m \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{e}_t ds \\ &= m \int_{s_A}^{s_B} a_t ds. \end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$v_B^2 - v_A^2 = \int_{s_A}^{s_B} 2a_t ds.$$

Alternatively, you can derive this result from the identity $a_t = \dot{v} = v dv/ds$.

5.4 Conservative Forces

A force \mathbf{P} is defined to be conservative when we can find a potential energy function $U = U(\mathbf{r})$ such that

$$\mathbf{P} = -\text{grad}(U) = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}}.$$

The negative sign in this equation is a historical convention.

The potential energy function U has several representations:

$$U = U(\mathbf{r}) = \bar{U}(s) = \hat{U}(x, y, z) = \tilde{U}(r, \theta, z).$$

Furthermore, this energy is defined modulo an arbitrary additive constant. Here, we always take this constant to be zero. The gradient of U has several representations depending on the coordinate system used:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}} &= \frac{\partial \hat{U}}{\partial x} \mathbf{E}_x + \frac{\partial \hat{U}}{\partial y} \mathbf{E}_y + \frac{\partial \hat{U}}{\partial z} \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= \frac{\partial \tilde{U}}{\partial r} \mathbf{e}_r + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \tilde{U}}{\partial \theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta + \frac{\partial \tilde{U}}{\partial z} \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

You can also use any of these representations to obtain the results discussed below. However, it is easier to derive most of them without specifying a particular basis or coordinate system.

If a force \mathbf{P} is conservative, then the work done by \mathbf{P} in any motion depends only on the endpoints and not on the path. To see this, we use our earlier results on the work done by \mathbf{P} :

$$\begin{aligned} W_{AB} &= \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \dot{W} dt = \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} dt \\ &= \int_{\mathbf{r}_A}^{\mathbf{r}_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot d\mathbf{r} = - \int_{\mathbf{r}_A}^{\mathbf{r}_B} \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot d\mathbf{r} \\ &= U(\mathbf{r}_A) - U(\mathbf{r}_B). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, if A and B have the same location (i.e., $\mathbf{r}_A = \mathbf{r}_B$), then no work is done by \mathbf{P} . This leads to the statement that the work done by a conservative force in a closed path of the particle is zero.

It is important to note that if \mathbf{P} is conservative then its mechanical power has a simple expression:

$$\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v} = - \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = - \frac{dU}{dt}.$$

This identity provides an easy method to verify that a function $U = U(\mathbf{r})$ is a potential energy function for a force \mathbf{P} : we simply check that \dot{U} is equal to $-\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v}$. Not all forces are conservative. For example, drag forces, tension forces in inextensible strings, friction forces \mathbf{F}_f , and normal forces \mathbf{N} are not conservative.

5.5 Examples of Conservative Forces

The two main examples of conservative forces one encounters are constant forces \mathbf{C} , of which the gravitational force is an example, and spring forces \mathbf{F}_s .

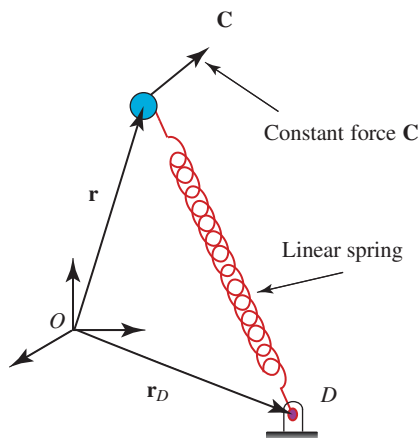


Fig. 5.2 A particle under the influence of conservative forces \mathbf{C} and \mathbf{F}_s . The total potential energy of the particle is $U = U_c + U_s$.

5.5.1 Constant Forces

The conservative nature of the gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ can be seen by defining the potential energy U_c of any constant force \mathbf{C} :

$$U_c = -\mathbf{C} \cdot \mathbf{r}.$$

To see that U_c is indeed the potential energy of the force \mathbf{C} , we need to show that, for all velocity vectors \mathbf{v} ,

$$\mathbf{C} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\frac{\partial U_c}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\frac{dU_c}{dt}.$$

Computing \dot{U}_c , we quickly arrive at the desired result:

$$\frac{dU_c}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} (-\mathbf{C} \cdot \mathbf{r}) = -\dot{\mathbf{C}} \cdot \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{C} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}} = -\mathbf{C} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Based on this result, we then have the following representative constant forces and their potential energies:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{C} &= -mg\mathbf{E}_y, & U_c &= mg\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}, \\ \mathbf{C} &= -mg\mathbf{E}_z, & U_c &= mg\mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{r}, \\ \mathbf{C} &= 10\mathbf{E}_x, & U_c &= -10\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \mathbf{r}. \end{aligned}$$

You can easily construct some others. Notice that the gravitational potential energy is “ mg ” times the “height.”

5.5.2 Spring Forces

Consider a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . As shown in Fig. 5.2, one end of the spring is attached to a particle of mass m and the other end is attached to a fixed point D . You should recall that in Section 4.6 of the previous chapter we showed that the force exerted by the spring on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\|}.$$

This force is conservative and has a potential energy

$$U_s = \frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0)^2.$$

That is, the potential energy of a linear spring is half the stiffness times the change in length squared.

To show that U_s is indeed the potential energy of \mathbf{F}_s , we need to determine its gradient or, equivalently, we need to show that, for all velocity vectors \mathbf{v} ,

$$\mathbf{F}_s \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\frac{\partial U_s}{\partial \mathbf{r}} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\frac{dU_s}{dt}.$$

Because \mathbf{F}_s is not a constant force,

$$\mathbf{F}_s \cdot \mathbf{v} \neq \frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{F}_s \cdot \mathbf{r}).$$

To show that U_s is the correct potential energy, we first need to establish an intermediate result pertaining to the time derivative of the magnitude of a vector. Suppose \mathbf{x} is a function of time: $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t)$. Differentiating both sides of the identity

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 = \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}$$

we find that

$$2 \|\mathbf{x}\| \frac{d\|\mathbf{x}\|}{dt} = 2\mathbf{x} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}.$$

It follows that

$$\frac{d\|\mathbf{x}\|}{dt} = \frac{\mathbf{x} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|}.$$

This is the identity we sought to establish. If now we let $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D$ where $\dot{\mathbf{r}}_D = \mathbf{0}$, then we find the result

$$\frac{d\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\|}{dt} = \frac{(\dot{\mathbf{r}} - \dot{\mathbf{r}}_D) \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D)}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\|} = \frac{\mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D)}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\|}.$$

Computing \dot{U}_s :

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dU_s}{dt} &= \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0)^2 \right) \\ &= K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0) \frac{d}{dt} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0) \\ &= K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0) \frac{\dot{\mathbf{r}} \cdot (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D)}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\|} \\ &= -\mathbf{F}_s \cdot \mathbf{v}.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, U_s is indeed the potential energy of the linear spring force. You should notice that in the proof we used the fact that $\mathbf{v}_D = \mathbf{0}$. Finally, the expression we have obtained for U_s is valid even when $\mathbf{r}_D = \mathbf{0}$, that is, when the point D can be chosen to be the origin.

5.6 Energy Conservation

Consider a particle of mass m that is acted upon by a set of forces: n of these forces are conservative, $\mathbf{F}_1, \mathbf{F}_2, \dots, \mathbf{F}_n$, and the remainder, whose resultant we denote by \mathbf{F}_{nc} , is nonconservative. The potential energies of the conservative forces are denoted by U_1, U_2, \dots, U_n :

$$\mathbf{F}_i = -\frac{\partial U_i}{\partial \mathbf{r}},$$

where $i = 1, \dots, n$. The resultant conservative force acting on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F}_c = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{F}_i = -\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial U_i}{\partial \mathbf{r}} = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}},$$

where U , the total potential energy of the conservative forces, is

$$U = \sum_{i=1}^n U_i.$$

In summary,

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} + \mathbf{F}_c = \mathbf{F}_{nc} - \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}}.$$

To establish energy conservation results, we start with the work-energy theorem:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

For the case at hand,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dT}{dt} &= \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{F}_c + \mathbf{F}_{nc}) \cdot \mathbf{v} = \left(-\frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}} + \mathbf{F}_{nc} \right) \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= -\frac{dU}{dt} + \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}.\end{aligned}$$

We now define the total energy E of the particle:

$$E = T + U.$$

This energy is the sum of the kinetic and potential energies of the particle. Rearranging the previous equation with the assistance of the definition of E , we find that

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

This equation can be viewed as an alternative form of the work-energy theorem.

If the nonconservative forces do no work during a motion of the particle, that is, $\mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$, then the total energy E of the particle is conserved:⁴

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = 0.$$

This implies that E is a constant E_0 during the motion of the particle:⁵

$$E = T + U = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + U(\mathbf{r}) = E_0.$$

During an energy-conserving motion, there is a transfer between the kinetic and potential energies of a particle.

In problems, one often uses energy conservation $\dot{E} = 0$ to solve for one unknown. For example, suppose one is given an initial speed v_0 and location \mathbf{r}_0 of a particle at some instant during an energy-conserving motion. One can then exploit energy conservation to determine the speed v at another location \mathbf{r} during this motion:

$$v^2 = \frac{2}{m} (U(\mathbf{r}_0) - U(\mathbf{r})) + v_0^2.$$

In light of our earlier discussion in Section 5.3 of the identity $a_t = dv/dt = vdv/ds$, you should notice that

$$\frac{1}{m} (U(\mathbf{r}_0) - U(\mathbf{r})) = \int_{s_0}^s a_t(u) du = \frac{1}{m} \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} d\tau.$$

⁴ This is a classical result that was known, although not in the form written here, to the Dutch scientist Christiaan Huygens (1629–1695) and the German scientist Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716). These men were contemporaries of Isaac Newton (1643–1727).

⁵ A common error is to assume that $\dot{E} = 0$ implies that $E = 0$. It does not.

That is, if the only forces that do work are conservative, then the existence of the potential energies makes integrating the power of \mathbf{F} trivial.

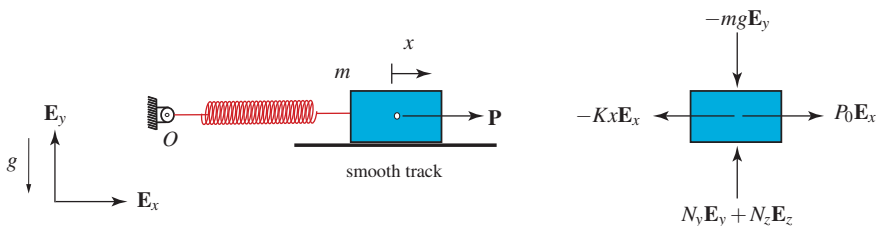


Fig. 5.3 A block of mass m that is free to move on a smooth horizontal track. An applied force $\mathbf{P} = P_0 \mathbf{E}_x$ acts on the block. The free-body diagram of the particle of mass m modeling the block is also displayed in this figure.

5.7 A Harmonic Oscillator

As our first example exploring energy conservation, let us consider a block of mass m that is attached to a fixed point O by a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 (cf. Fig. 5.3). The block is free to move on a smooth horizontal track. In addition to a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$, the block is also acted upon by a constant force $P_0\mathbf{E}_x$. We wish to establish energy conservation for the block of mass m .

5.7.1 Kinematics

The block is modeled as a particle of mass m . We choose a Cartesian coordinate system such that when $x = 0$, the spring is unstretched:

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{v} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{a} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x.$$

The kinetic energy of the particle of mass m is

$$T = \frac{m}{2}\dot{x}^2.$$

5.7.2 Forces

The free-body diagram of the particle of mass m that is modeling the block is shown in Fig. 5.3. Referring to this figure, a normal force $\mathbf{N} = N_y\mathbf{E}_y + N_z\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the particle. In addition to a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$, two other conservative forces act on the particle: $P_0\mathbf{E}_x$ and $-Kx\mathbf{E}_x$. The combined potential energy for these conservative forces is

$$U = \frac{1}{2}Kx^2 - P_0x.$$

The gravitational potential energy mgy is omitted from this expression because it is always zero for this problem.

5.7.3 Balance Law

From $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ for this problem, we obtain the equation of motion

$$m\ddot{x} = -Kx + P_0,$$

and an expression for the normal force:

$$\mathbf{N} = mg\mathbf{E}_y.$$

We note in passing that the equation of motion has an analytical solution. One method of establishing the solution is to use a change of variables:

$$y(t) = x(t) + \frac{P_0}{K}, \quad \dot{y}(t) = \dot{x}(t).$$

The differential equation satisfied by $y(t)$ is

$$m\ddot{y} = -Ky,$$

and this equation has the analytical solution⁶

$$y = y(0)\cos(\omega_0 t) + \frac{\dot{y}(0)}{\omega_0}\sin(\omega_0 t), \quad \omega_0 = \sqrt{\frac{K}{m}}.$$

Substituting for $x = y - \frac{P_0}{K}$, the analytical solution for $x(t)$ is found:

$$x(t) = x(0)\cos(\omega_0 t) + \frac{\dot{x}(0)}{\omega_0}\sin(\omega_0 t) + \frac{P_0}{K}(1 - \cos(\omega_0 t)).$$

⁶ This solution can be found using the solution to (the unforced harmonic oscillator) $\ddot{x} + \omega_0^2 x = 0$ that is discussed in Section A.5.2 of Appendix A.

Hence, $x(t)$ oscillates with a frequency ω_0 that depends on the ratio of the stiffness of the spring to the mass of the particle.

5.7.4 Energy Conservation

To prove that energy is conserved, several methods are available. First, we can appeal to the work-energy theorem $\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{T} &= \underbrace{\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{v}}_{=0} - \underbrace{mg\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{v}}_{=0} + P_0\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \mathbf{v} - Kx\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= P_0\dot{x} - Kx\dot{x} \\ &= -\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2}Kx^2 - P_0x \right). \end{aligned}$$

Whence,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(E = T + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}Kx^2 - P_0x}_{=U} \right) = 0.$$

Consequently, E is conserved.

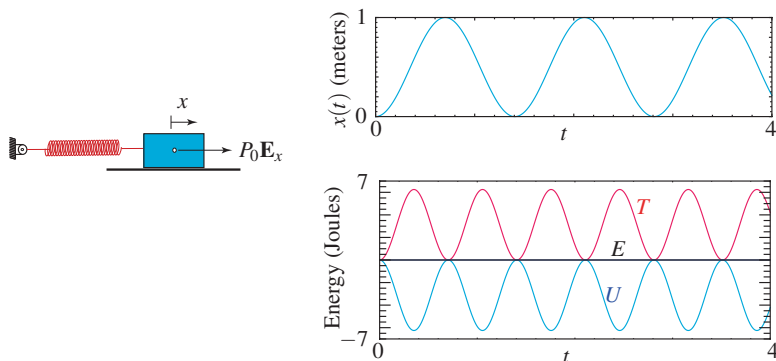


Fig. 5.4 The displacement $x(t)$ of a particle that is released subject to conservative forces. The time traces of the kinetic T , potential U , and total energy E of the particle are also shown. For the numerical results shown in this figure, $P_0 = 25$ Newtons, $K = 50$ Newtons per meter, $m = 10$ kilograms, $\dot{x}(0) = 0$, and $x(0) = 0$.

Alternatively, we can use the work-energy theorem $\dot{E} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ and the observation that $\mathbf{N} \perp \mathbf{v}$ to show that E is conserved:

$$\dot{E} = \mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0.$$

The third, and final, method is to differentiate the expression for E and then appeal to the equation of motion:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dE}{dt} &= \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{m}{2} \dot{x}^2 + \frac{1}{2} Kx^2 - P_0x \right) \\ &= \underbrace{(m\ddot{x} + Kx - P_0)}_{=0} \dot{x}. \end{aligned}$$

Invoking the equation of motion $m\ddot{x} = -Kx + P_0$, we observe that the underbraced term is zero. Thus, we again conclude that energy is conserved.

As shown by a numerical example shown in Fig. 5.4, the motion $x(t)$ of the particle in this system is oscillatory. Indeed, if we start the system from rest in its equilibrium state, then the total energy E in the ensuing motion will be zero. The kinetic energy will oscillate from zero to a positive value and the potential energy will do the opposite to ensure that E remains conserved. Using energy conservation, it can be shown that the maximum amplitude of oscillation is $x_{\max} = 2P_0/K$ and the maximum velocity is $\dot{x}_{\max} = P_0/\sqrt{Km}$. These results can also be confirmed using the analytical solution for $x(t)$ we discussed previously.

5.8 A Particle Moving on a Rough Curve

Consider a particle of mass m that is moving on the rough space curve shown in Fig. 5.5. A gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the particle. In addition, a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 is attached to the particle and a fixed point C .

We wish to determine the work done by the friction force on the particle as it moves from $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t_A) = \mathbf{r}_A$ to $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t_B) = \mathbf{r}_B$. Furthermore, we ask the question, if the curve were smooth, then given $\mathbf{v}(t_A)$, what would $\mathbf{v}(t_B)$ be?

5.8.1 Kinematics

Here, we use the Serret-Frenet triad and we tacitly assume that these vectors can be calculated for the curve at hand. We then have the usual results

$$\mathbf{v} = v\mathbf{e}_t, \quad \mathbf{a} = \dot{v}\mathbf{e}_t + \kappa v^2\mathbf{e}_n, \quad T = \frac{1}{2}mv^2.$$

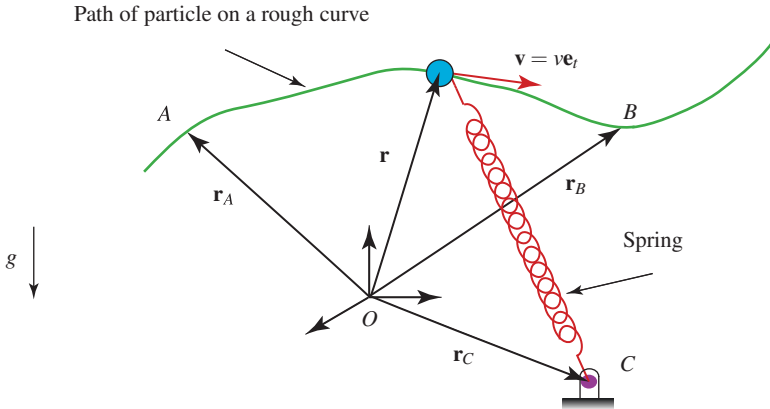


Fig. 5.5 A particle in motion on a fixed space curve. The total potential energy of the particle is the sum of the gravitational and spring potential energies.

5.8.2 Forces

We leave the free-body diagram as an exercise and record that the resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the particle is

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_f + N_n \mathbf{e}_n + N_b \mathbf{e}_b - mg \mathbf{E}_z - K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\|}.$$

If the friction is dynamic Coulomb friction, then

$$\mathbf{F}_f = -\mu_d \|N_n \mathbf{e}_n + N_b \mathbf{e}_b\| \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{v}\|}.$$

On the other hand, if the particle is stationary, then the friction is static Coulomb friction: $\mathbf{F}_f = F_f \mathbf{e}_t$ where F_f is unknown.

5.8.3 Work Done by Friction

We are now in a position to start from the work-energy theorem and establish how the rate of change of total energy is related to the power of the friction force:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dT}{dt} &= \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= \mathbf{F}_f \cdot \mathbf{v} + N_n \mathbf{e}_n \cdot \mathbf{v} + N_b \mathbf{e}_b \cdot \mathbf{v} - mg \mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{v} - K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\|} \cdot \mathbf{v}. \end{aligned}$$

However, the normal forces are perpendicular to the velocity vector, and the spring and gravitational forces are conservative:

$$\begin{aligned} N_n \mathbf{e}_n \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0, \\ N_b \mathbf{e}_b \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0, \\ -mg \mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{v} &= -\frac{d}{dt} (mg \mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{r}), \\ -K (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\|} \cdot \mathbf{v} &= -\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

As a result,

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \mathbf{F}_f \cdot \mathbf{v},$$

where the total energy of the particle E is

$$E = T + \frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 + mg \mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{r}.$$

You could also have arrived at this result by starting with the alternative form of the work-energy theorem, $\dot{E} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}$, and noting that the normal forces are perpendicular to the velocity of the particle and hence are workless.

The work done by the friction force can be found by integrating the above equation for the time rate of change of the total energy E :

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \mathbf{F}_f \cdot \mathbf{v} dt &= E_B - E_A \\ &= \frac{1}{2} m (v_B^2 - v_A^2) + mg \mathbf{E}_z \cdot (\mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_A) \\ &\quad + \frac{K}{2} \left((\|\mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 - (\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

Clearly, if we know \mathbf{r}_A , \mathbf{r}_B , v_A , and v_B , then we do not need to directly integrate $\mathbf{F}_f \cdot \mathbf{v}$ to determine the work done by the friction force. Furthermore, given the above information, we do not need to calculate the Serret-Frenet triads for each point along the curve.

It is interesting to note that if the friction were of the dynamic Coulomb type, then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dE}{dt} &= \mathbf{F}_f \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\mu_d \|N_n \mathbf{e}_n + N_b \mathbf{e}_b\| \frac{\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{v}\|} \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= -\mu_d \|N_n \mathbf{e}_n + N_b \mathbf{e}_b\| \|\mathbf{v}\| \leq 0. \end{aligned}$$

In other words, such a friction force will dissipate energy, as expected.

5.8.4 The Case of a Smooth Curve

For a smooth curve, $\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{0}$ and we have energy conservation: $\dot{E} = 0$. In this case, given \mathbf{r}_A , \mathbf{r}_B , and v_A , one can calculate v_B by equating E_A to E_B :

$$v_B^2 = v_A^2 + 2g\mathbf{E}_z \cdot (\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}_B) + \frac{K}{m} \left((\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 - (\|\mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 \right).$$

This is the main use of energy conservation in the problems discussed in engineering dynamics courses. Notice that because the only forces that do work on the particle are conservative, the velocity at B does not depend on the path between A and B .

A specific example of this case was discussed in Section 3.6. In this example, the spring force was absent, and it was shown there, without using the work-energy theorem directly, that

$$v^2(x) = v^2(x_0) + \int_{x_0}^x 4ugdu = v^2(x_0) + 2g(x^2 - x_0^2).$$

Our earlier comment in Section 3.6.4 of Chapter 3 that this was an energy conservation result should now be obvious to you.

5.9 Additional Examples of Energy Conservation

We can use the previous results for several other examples of particle problems after performing some minor modifications.

5.9.1 A Particle in a Conservative Force Field

Consider a particle moving in space, as opposed to along a fixed curve. The particle is assumed to be under the sole influences of a gravitational force and a spring force:

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_z - K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\|}.$$

By setting $\mathbf{F}_f = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{N} = \mathbf{0}$ in the previous example, one finds that the total energy E of the particle is conserved, where

$$E = T + \frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 + mg\mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{r}.$$

The Serret-Frenet triad for this example pertains to the path of the particle as opposed to the prescribed fixed curve, and it is impossible to explicitly determine this triad without first solving $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ for the motion $\mathbf{r}(t)$ of the particle.

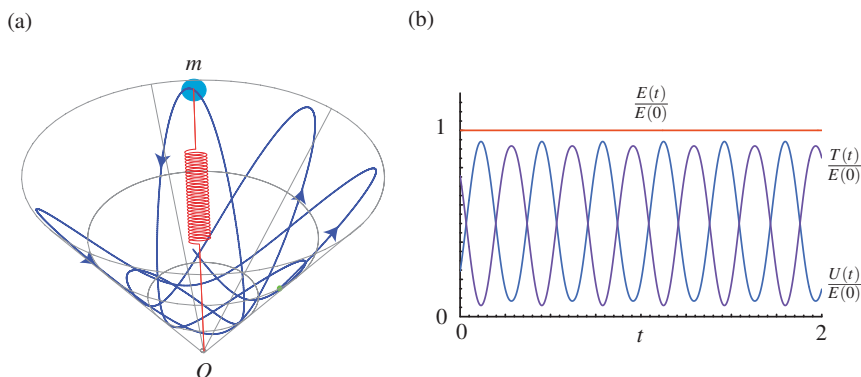


Fig. 5.6 Conservation of energy for a particle moving on a smooth cone under the action of gravity and a linear spring force: (a) a motion of the particle and (b) the corresponding total energy $E(t)$, kinetic energy $T(t)$, and potential energy $U(t)$ for the particle.

5.9.2 A Particle on a Fixed Smooth Surface

If a particle is moving on any fixed smooth surface under conservative gravitational and spring forces, then

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_z - K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\|} + \mathbf{N}.$$

Here, \mathbf{N} is the normal (or reaction) force exerted by the surface on the particle. However, because this force is perpendicular to the velocity vector of the particle, $\mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$. Consequently, the total energy is again conserved, where

$$E = T + U, \quad U = \frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_C\| - \ell_0)^2 + mg\mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{r}.$$

We have already seen two examples of energy conservation: the pair of motions of the particle shown in Fig. 4.16 is such that the total energy E of the particle remains equal to its initial value. Energy conservation for the motion shown in Fig. 4.16(a) is illustrated in Fig. 5.6. You should notice how the potential and kinetic energies of the particle vary in time while the sum of these energies remains constant.

5.9.3 The Planar Pendulum

We described the planar pendulum in Section 2.4. For this example, one can show using the work-energy theorem that the total energy E of the particle is conserved.

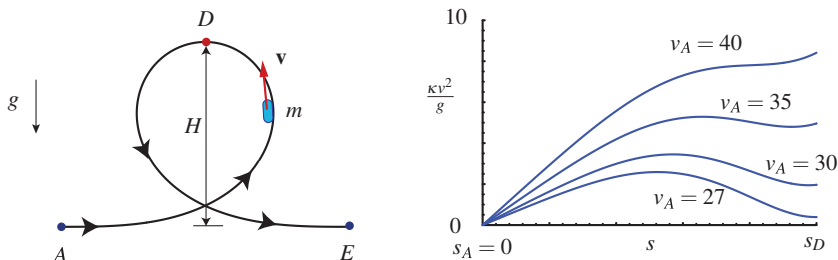


Fig. 5.7 Schematic of a particle of mass m moving on a smooth clothoid loop, and the normalized acceleration $\kappa v^2/g$ experienced by the particle, for a range of initial velocities v_A , as it moves from the bottom A to the top D of the loop.

To begin,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dT}{dt} &= \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= N_r \mathbf{e}_r \cdot \mathbf{v} - mg \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{v} + N \mathbf{E}_z \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= -\frac{d}{dt} (mg \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}), \end{aligned}$$

where we have changed notation and defined $N_r \mathbf{e}_r$ as the tension force in the string/rod. This force and the normal force $N \mathbf{E}_z$ are perpendicular to the velocity vector and, as a result, are workless. It now follows that the total energy E of the particle is conserved:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(E = \frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + mg \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r} \right) = 0.$$

An example of this conservation can be seen in the pendulum motion displayed in Fig. 2.1.

5.9.4 The Roller Coaster

Consider a loop-the-loop design for a section of a roller coaster that is shown in Fig. 5.7. The design features the clothoid loop that was discussed earlier in Chapter 3. We assume that the loop is smooth and model the roller coaster cart as a particle of mass m . Our interest lies in examining the normal acceleration κv^2 of the cart as it moves along the smooth loop.

The problem at hand is a special case of the situation discussed earlier of a particle moving on a smooth curve under the influence of conservative forces (see Sec-

tion 5.8.4). Thus, we have the energy conservation result

$$v^2 = v_A^2 + 2g(y_A - y).$$

We take the point A as shown in Fig. 5.7 and set the arc-length parameter $s_A = 0$ and position vector $\mathbf{r}_A = \mathbf{0}$. It follows readily that the normal acceleration divided by the gravitational acceleration (for a point on the track whose vertical ordinate is y) is given by

$$\frac{\kappa v^2}{g} = \kappa \left(\frac{v_A^2}{g} - 2y \right).$$

Using the results of Exercise 3.11 (see Page 65), we note that $\kappa = s/a^2$ where a is a constant and we also note the expression for y . By picking sufficiently large values of v_A we can determine how $\kappa v^2/g$ changes as the particle moves along the loop.⁷ A range of numerical results is shown in Fig. 5.7. For these results, the height H of the loop is 35 meters, and we consider a range of values of v_A from 27 meters per second to 40 meters per second. From the figure, you might notice the high g -force values experienced by the particle and the fact that the maximum normal acceleration does not always occur when the particle is at the apex D of the loop. For roller coaster designs the duration and magnitude of the normal accelerations are relevant to passenger safety and must be considered in the design.⁸

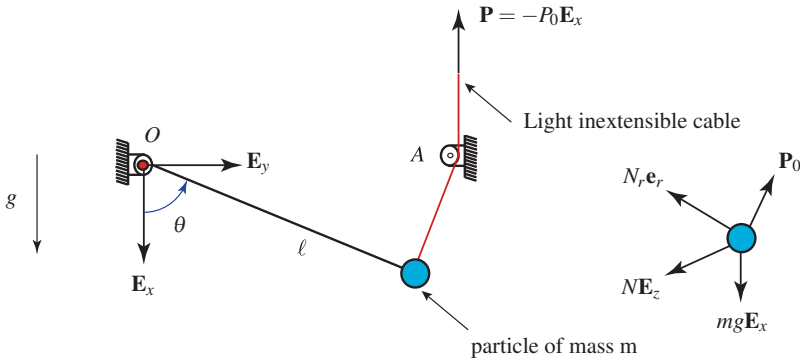


Fig. 5.8 A planar pendulum of mass m and length ℓ . An applied conservative force \mathbf{P}_0 that has constant magnitude $P_0 > 0$ acts on the particle and raises the pendulum from the downwards vertical position. The inset image shows the free-body diagram of the particle where $N_r\mathbf{e}_r$ is the tension force in the rod.

⁷ It can be shown for a loop with $H = 35$ meters that $v_A > \sqrt{2gH} \approx 26.21$ meters per second in order for the particle to reach the top D of the loop. By way of background, 27 meters per second is approximately 60 mph, 35 meters is approximately 115 feet, and a value of $H = 35$ corresponds to a value of the clothoid parameter $a = 27.657$.

⁸ For a discussion on the relationships between brain trauma and g -forces in roller coaster rides, we refer the reader to [89].

5.9.5 Lifting a Pendulum Using a Force Applied by a Cable

As a final example, we consider the problem of a pendulum being pulled upward by a force \mathbf{P}_0 that has a constant magnitude that was discussed previously in Section 2.5. A figure showing the system of interest is reproduced in Figure 5.8.

As discussed earlier, the force \mathbf{P} acting on the cable is transmitted to the pendulum as a force \mathbf{P}_0 . The force \mathbf{P}_0 has the representations

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{P}_0 &= P_0 \frac{\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|} \\ &= \frac{P_0}{\sqrt{2(1 - \sin(\theta))}} (\mathbf{E}_y - \mathbf{e}_r).\end{aligned}$$

If P_0 is constant, then the force \mathbf{P}_0 is conservative. To see this, consider the power expended by \mathbf{P}_0 :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{P}_0 \cdot \mathbf{v} &= P_0 \left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|} \right) \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= -P_0 \left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|} \right) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_A - \mathbf{v}) \\ &= -P_0 \frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\| \\ &= -\frac{d}{dt} (P_0 \|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|).\end{aligned}$$

Observe that we used the fact that $\mathbf{v}_A = \dot{\mathbf{r}}_A = \mathbf{0}$ and the identity $\frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{b}\| = \dot{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \mathbf{b} / \|\mathbf{b}\|$ for any vector \mathbf{b} .⁹ We have just shown that the power of \mathbf{P}_0 is equivalent to the time derivative of a function of \mathbf{r} :

$$\mathbf{P}_0 \cdot \mathbf{v} = -\frac{d}{dt} (P_0 \|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\|).$$

In conclusion, \mathbf{P}_0 is conservative and has a potential energy function U_p :

$$\begin{aligned}U_p &= P_0 \|\mathbf{r}_A - \mathbf{r}\| \\ &= 2P_0 \ell (1 - \sin(\theta)).\end{aligned}$$

This potential energy function can be interpreted as a force times a displacement.

⁹ This identity was established in Section 5.5.2 where the potential energy of spring force was discussed.

With the help of the potential energy function U_p , it is straightforward to show that the total energy E of this system is conserved:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \frac{m}{2} \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} - mg \mathbf{E}_x \cdot \mathbf{r} + U_p \\ &= \frac{m\ell^2}{2} \dot{\theta}^2 - mg\ell \cos(\theta) + 2P_0\ell(1 - \sin(\theta)). \end{aligned}$$

In our earlier analysis of this problem (see Section 2.5.4 on Page 30), we exploited the fact that $\dot{\theta}$ could be expressed as a function of θ along with the identity $\dot{\theta} = \dot{\theta} \frac{d\theta}{d\theta}$ to establish an expression for $\dot{\theta}^2$ in terms of θ . It should now be apparent to you that the expression we established is equivalent to energy conservation.

5.10 Summary

The first concept introduced in this chapter was the mechanical power of a force \mathbf{P} acting on a particle whose absolute velocity vector is \mathbf{v} : $\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v}$. The work done by a force \mathbf{P} in a interval of time $[t_A, t_B]$ is the integral of its power with respect to time:

$$W_{AB} = \int_{t_A}^{t_B} \mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v} dt.$$

Depending on the coordinate system used, there are numerous representations of this integral. You should notice that in order to evaluate the integral it is necessary to know the path of the particle. If, for all possible paths, $W_{AB} = 0$, then the force \mathbf{P} does no work and its power must be zero. In other words, \mathbf{P} must be normal to \mathbf{v} .

An important class of forces was then discussed: conservative forces. A force \mathbf{P} is conservative if one can find a potential energy function $U = U(\mathbf{r})$ such that, for all possible motions,

$$\mathbf{P} = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}},$$

or, equivalently,

$$\dot{U} = -\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Because a conservative force is the gradient of a scalar function $U = U(\mathbf{r})$, the work done by this class of forces is independent of the path of the particle. In Section 5.5 of this chapter, it was shown that a spring force \mathbf{F}_s and a constant force \mathbf{C} are conservative:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_s &= -K(\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D}{\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\|} = -\frac{\partial U_s}{\partial \mathbf{r}}, \\ \mathbf{C} &= -\frac{\partial U_c}{\partial \mathbf{r}}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$U_s = \frac{K}{2} (\|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_D\| - \ell_0)^2, \quad U_c = -\mathbf{C} \cdot \mathbf{r}.$$

An additional example of a conservative force was discussed in Section 5.9.5. Not all forces are conservative. In particular, drag forces, friction forces, tension forces in inextensible cables, and normal forces are nonconservative.

Using the notion of mechanical power, two versions of the work-energy theorem were established:

$$\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}, \quad \dot{E} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}.$$

Here, $T = \frac{m}{2} \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is the kinetic energy of the particle, $E = T + U$ is the total energy of the particle, U is the sum of the potential energies of all the conservative forces acting on the particle, and \mathbf{F}_{nc} is the resultant nonconservative force acting on the particle. You should notice that $\mathbf{F}_{nc} = \mathbf{F} + \partial U / \partial \mathbf{r}$.

The remainder of the chapter was concerned with using the work-energy theorem to examine the work done by friction forces and providing examples of systems where the total energy E was conserved. For all of the examples of energy conservation, the work-energy theorem was used to show that $\mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$ and, consequently, E must be conserved. As illustrated in the examples of energy conservation, when E is conserved then certain information on the speed of the particle as a function of position can be determined without explicitly integrating the differential equations governing the motion of the particle.

5.11 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 5.1: Give examples to illustrate the following statement: “Every constant force is conservative, but not all conservative forces are constant.”

Exercise 5.2: Starting from the definition of the kinetic energy T , establish the work-energy theorem $\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}$. Then, using this result, derive the alternative form of the work-energy theorem: $\dot{E} = \mathbf{F}_{nc} \cdot \mathbf{v}$.

Exercise 5.3: Give three examples of particle problems where the total energy E is conserved.

Exercise 5.4: A particle is moving on a smooth horizontal plane. A gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the particle. If the plane is given a vertical motion, then why does the normal force acting on the particle perform work? Using this example, show that the normal force is not a conservative force.

Exercise 5.5: Give three examples of particle problems where the total energy E is not conserved.

Exercise 5.6: A particle is free to move on a smooth plane $z = 0$. It is attached to a fixed point O by a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . A gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the particle. Starting from the work-energy theorem, prove that

$$E = \frac{m}{2} (\dot{r}^2 + r^2 \dot{\theta}^2) + \frac{K}{2} (r - \ell_0)^2$$

is conserved.

Exercise 5.7: Consider the same system discussed in Exercise 5.6 but in this case assume that the surface is rough. Show that

$$\dot{E} = -\mu_d mg \sqrt{\dot{r}^2 + r^2 \dot{\theta}^2}.$$

Exercise 5.8: For any vector \mathbf{b} show that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{b}\| = \frac{\mathbf{b} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{b}}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|}.$$

Using this result, show that if the magnitude of \mathbf{b} is constant, then any change in \mathbf{b} must be normal to \mathbf{b} or $\dot{\mathbf{b}} = \mathbf{0}$. It is illuminating to apply the identity to the vectors \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{E}_x .

Exercise 5.9: Newton's gravitational force on a particle of mass m due to a body of mass M is

$$\mathbf{F}_N = -\frac{GMm}{\|\mathbf{r}\|^2} \frac{\mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}\|},$$

where G is a constant. With the assistance of the identity established in Exercise 5.8, show that \mathbf{F}_N is conservative with a potential energy

$$U_N = -\frac{GMm}{\|\mathbf{r}\|}.$$

Part II
Dynamics of a System of Particles

Chapter 6

Momenta, Impulses, and Collisions



TOPICS

As a prelude to the discussion of a system of particles, the linear and angular momenta of a single particle are introduced in this chapter. In particular, conditions for the conservation of these kinematical quantities are established. This is followed by a discussion of impact problems where particles are used as models for the impacting bodies.

6.1 Linear Momentum and Its Conservation

Consider a particle of mass m moving in space. As usual, the position vector of the particle relative to a fixed origin is denoted by \mathbf{r} . We recall that the linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the particle is defined to be

$$\mathbf{G} = m\mathbf{v} = m\dot{\mathbf{r}}.$$

6.1.1 Linear Impulse and Linear Momentum

A more primitive form of the balance of linear momentum $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is the integral form

$$\mathbf{G}(t_1) - \mathbf{G}(t_0) = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F} dt.$$

This equation is assumed to hold for all intervals of time and hence for all times t_0 and t_1 . The time integral of a force is known as its *linear impulse*.

The reason the integral form is more primitive than the equation $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is that it does not assume that \mathbf{v} can always be differentiated to determine \mathbf{a} . We use the

integral form of the balance of linear momentum in our forthcoming discussion of impact.

6.1.2 Conservation of Linear Momentum

The conservation of some component of linear momentum of the particle is an important feature of many problems. Suppose that the component of \mathbf{G} in the direction of a *given* vector \mathbf{c} is conserved:

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c}) = 0.$$

To examine the conditions where this arises, we expand the time derivative on the right-hand side of the above equation to find that

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c}) = \dot{\mathbf{G}} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{G} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}}.$$

Consequently, given a vector \mathbf{c} ,

$$\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c} \text{ is conserved if, and only if, } \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{G} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0.$$

A special case of this result arises when \mathbf{c} is constant. In this case, the condition for the conservation of the linear momentum in the direction of \mathbf{c} is none other than $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{c} = 0$. That is, there is no force in this direction.

In general, the most difficult aspect of using the conservation of linear momentum is to find appropriate directions \mathbf{c} . This is an art.

6.1.3 Examples

You have already seen several examples of linear momentum conservation. For instance, consider a particle moving in a gravitational field in the absence of drag. Here, $\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y$. As a result, $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = 0$ and $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x = 0$. The linear momenta of the particle and, as a result, the components of its velocity vector in the directions \mathbf{E}_x and \mathbf{E}_z are conserved. It is perhaps instructive to note that the linear momentum of the particle in the \mathbf{E}_y direction is not conserved.

6.2 Angular Momentum and Its Conservation

As shown in Fig. 6.1, let \mathbf{r} be the position vector of a particle relative to a fixed point O , and let \mathbf{v} be the absolute velocity vector of the particle. Then, the angular

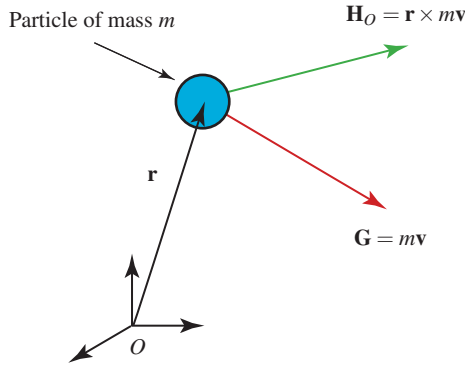


Fig. 6.1 Some kinematical quantities pertaining to a particle of mass m .

momentum of the particle relative to O is denoted by \mathbf{H}_O and defined as

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{G}.$$

In Cartesian coordinates, \mathbf{H}_O has the representation

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_O &= \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v} \\ &= \det \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_x & \mathbf{E}_y & \mathbf{E}_z \\ x & y & z \\ m\dot{x} & m\dot{y} & m\dot{z} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= m(y\dot{z} - z\dot{y})\mathbf{E}_x + m(z\dot{x} - x\dot{z})\mathbf{E}_y + m(xy\dot{z} - y\dot{x})\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

In cylindrical polar coordinates, \mathbf{H}_O has the representation

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_O &= \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v} \\ &= \det \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_r & \mathbf{e}_\theta & \mathbf{E}_z \\ r & 0 & z \\ m\dot{r} & mr\dot{\theta} & m\dot{z} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= -mzr\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_r + m(z\dot{r} - r\dot{z})\mathbf{e}_\theta + mr^2\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

When the motion of the particle is planar,

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{v} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta,$$

and two of the previous representations for \mathbf{H}_O simplify to

$$\mathbf{H}_O = m(xy\dot{z} - y\dot{x})\mathbf{E}_z = mr^2\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

6.2.1 Angular Momentum Theorem

To determine how the angular momentum changes with time, we invoke the balance of linear momentum and compute an expression for $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{H}_O}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v} \times m\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{r} \times m\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}.$$

The final result is known as the angular momentum theorem:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{H}_O}{dt} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}.$$

As opposed to our later developments with rigid bodies, a balance of angular momentum $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ is not an independent postulate. It arises as a consequence of the balance of linear momentum.

6.2.2 Conservation of Angular Momentum

The conservation of some component of angular momentum of the particle is an important feature of many problems. Suppose that the component of \mathbf{H}_O in the direction of a *given* vector \mathbf{c} is conserved:

$$\frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}) = 0.$$

To examine the conditions where this arises, we expand the time derivative on the left-hand side of the above equation and invoke the angular momentum theorem to find that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}) &= \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} \\ &= (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}}. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, for a given vector \mathbf{c} ,

$$\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c} \text{ is conserved if, and only if, } (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0.$$

A special case of this result arises when \mathbf{c} is constant. Then, the condition for the conservation of the angular momentum in the direction of \mathbf{c} is none other than $(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathbf{c} = 0$.

In an undergraduate dynamics course, problems where angular momentum is conserved can usually be set up so that $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{E}_z$. We shortly examine such an example.

6.2.3 Central Force Problems

A central force problem is one where \mathbf{F} is parallel to \mathbf{r} . The angular momentum theorem in this case implies that $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}$. It follows that \mathbf{H}_O is conserved. This conservation implies several interesting results, that we now discuss.

Because \mathbf{H}_O is conserved, $\mathbf{H}_O = h\mathbf{h}$, where h and \mathbf{h} are constant. We can choose \mathbf{h} to be a unit vector. Because $\mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v}$ is constant, the vectors \mathbf{r} and \mathbf{v} form a plane with a constant unit normal vector \mathbf{h} . This plane passes through the origin O and is fixed. Given a set of initial conditions $\mathbf{r}(t_0)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t_0)$, we can choose a cylindrical polar coordinate system such that $\mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{h}$, $\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r$, and $\mathbf{v} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$. To do this, it suffices to choose \mathbf{E}_z so that

$$\mathbf{H}_O = h\mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{r}(t_0) \times m\mathbf{v}(t_0).$$

This simplifies the problem of determining the motion of the particle considerably. Furthermore, $h = mr^2\dot{\theta}$ is constant during the motion of the particle.

6.2.4 Kepler's Problem

The most famous example of a central force problem, and angular momentum conservation, was solved by Newton. In seeking to develop a model for planetary motion that would explain Kepler's laws¹ and astronomical observations, he postulated a model for the resultant force \mathbf{F} exerted on a planet of mass m by a fixed planet of mass M . The force \mathbf{F} that Newton postulated was conservative:

$$\mathbf{F} = -\frac{GmM}{\|\mathbf{r}\|^2} \frac{\mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}\|} = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}}, \quad U = -\frac{GmM}{\|\mathbf{r}\|}.$$

Here, the fixed planet is located at the origin O and G is the universal gravitational constant:

$$G \approx 6.673 \times 10^{-11} \text{ m}^3 \text{ kg}^{-1} \text{ s}^{-2}.$$

By way of additional background, the mass of the Sun is $\approx 2 \times 10^{30}$ kilograms, whereas the mass of the Earth is $\approx 5.98 \times 10^{24}$ kilograms. Clearly, the force that Newton postulated is an example of a central force. Thus, we can use the previous results on central force problems here. That is, we can assume that the motion lies in the horizontal plane by choosing \mathbf{E}_z to be parallel to the conserved \mathbf{H}_O . If $\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{0}$, then we choose \mathbf{E}_z to be perpendicular to the position vector of m relative to O .

Using the balance of linear momentum for the planet of mass m , two ordinary differential equations can be obtained by examining the \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{e}_θ components of

¹ Johannes Kepler (1571–1630) was a German astronomer and physicist who, based on observations of the orbits of certain planets, proposed three laws to explain planetary motion. His three laws are the most famous of his many scientific contributions.

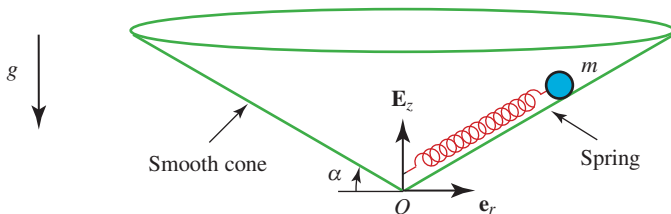


Fig. 6.2 A particle moving on a smooth cone.

$\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$:

$$m\ddot{r} - mr\dot{\theta}^2 = -\frac{GMm}{r^2}, \quad mr\ddot{\theta} + 2m\dot{r}\dot{\theta} = 0.$$

The solution of these equations is facilitated by the use of two conserved quantities, the total energy E and the magnitude of the angular momentum h :

$$E = \frac{1}{2}m\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + U = \frac{1}{2}m(\dot{r}^2 + r^2\dot{\theta}^2) - \frac{GmM}{r},$$

$$h = \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = mr^2\dot{\theta}.$$

However, we do not pursue this matter any further here.²

6.2.5 A Particle on a Smooth Cone

As shown in Fig. 6.2, we return to an example discussed in Section 4.7 of Chapter 4. Here, however, the surface of the cone is assumed to be smooth. We wish to show that $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved for the particle.³

Let us first recall some kinematical results from Section 4.7 of Chapter 4:

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r + r\tan(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z,$$

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{r}(\mathbf{e}_r + \tan(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z) + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

A simple calculation shows that the angular momentum of the particle is

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v} = \frac{mr^2\dot{\theta}}{\cos(\alpha)}(\cos(\alpha)\mathbf{E}_z - \sin(\alpha)\mathbf{e}_r).$$

² For further treatments of these equations, see, for example, Arnol'd [2] and Moulton [65]. Discussions of this central force problem can also be found in every undergraduate dynamics text, for example, in Meriam and Kraige [63, Section 13, Chapter 3] and Riley and Sturges [79, Section 15, Chapter 5]. You should notice that these texts assume that the motion of the particle is planar.

³ We leave it as an exercise to show that the total energy and angular momentum $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ are also conserved when the spring is replaced by an inextensible string.

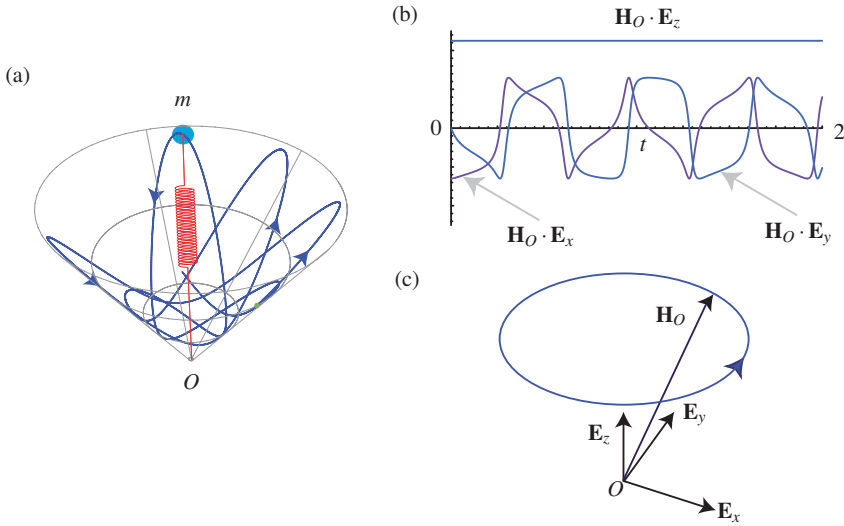


Fig. 6.3 Conservation of $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ for a particle moving on a smooth cone under the action of gravity and a linear spring force: (a) a motion of the particle, (b) the corresponding angular momentum components $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$, $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_y$, and $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ for the particle, and (c) the angular momentum vector \mathbf{H}_O .

We also note that the resultant force acting on the particle is composed of a normal force, a gravitational force, and a spring force:

$$\mathbf{F} = N\mathbf{n} - mg\mathbf{E}_z - K(\|\mathbf{r}\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}\|}.$$

To investigate the possibility of angular momentum conservation, we note that the moment of the resultant force acting on the particle is in the \mathbf{e}_θ direction:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} &= \mathbf{r} \times N\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{r} \times mg\mathbf{E}_z + \mathbf{r} \times \left(-K(\|\mathbf{r}\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}}{\|\mathbf{r}\|} \right) \\ &= \left(mgr - \frac{Nr}{\cos(\alpha)} \right) \mathbf{e}_\theta. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved:

$$mr^2 \dot{\theta} = \text{constant}.$$

You should notice that during the motion of the particle it is impossible for $\dot{\theta}$ to change sign. Indeed, two examples of this phenomenon were shown earlier in Fig. 4.16. To further illustrate the conservation of $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$, we plot this component for a motion of the particle in Fig. 6.3(b). As shown in Fig. 6.3(c), if we construct the

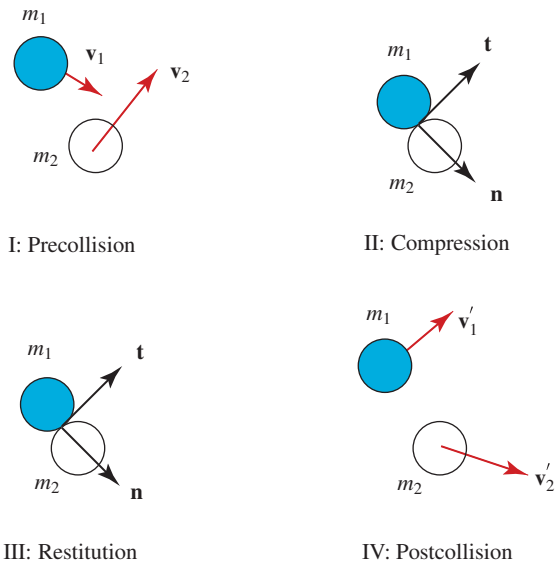


Fig. 6.4 *Four stages of a collision.*

angular momentum vector \mathbf{H}_O for the motion of the particle, we would find that, as it evolves in time, it traces out a cone.

6.3 Collision of Particles

The collision of two bodies involves substantial deformations during the impact and may induce permanent deformations. Ignoring the rotational motion of the bodies, the simplest model to determine the postcollision velocities of the bodies is to use a mass particle to model each individual body. However, mass particles cannot deform, and so one needs to introduce some (seemingly ad hoc) parameter to account for this feature. The parameter commonly used is the coefficient of restitution e .

The theory we present here is often referred to as frictionless, oblique, central impact of two particles. Other theories are available that account for friction and rotational inertias. The reader is referred to Brach [18], Goldsmith [44], Routh [81], Rubin [82], and Stewart [91] for discussions on other theories, applications, and unresolved issues. For a discussion of some of Newton's contributions to this subject, see [68, Problem 12 on Pages 148–151] where Newton discusses the impact of two spheres.

6.3.1 The Model and Impact Stages

In what follows, we model two impacting bodies of masses m_1 and m_2 by two mass particles of masses m_1 and m_2 , respectively. Furthermore, as the bodies are assumed to be in a state of purely translational motion, the velocity vector of any point of one of the bodies is identical to the velocity of the mass particle modeling the body. The position vector of the mass particle is defined to coincide with the center of mass of the body that it is modeling.

As summarized in Fig. 6.4, we have four time periods to examine: I, just prior to impact; II, during the compression phase of the impact; III, during the restitution phase of the impact; and IV, immediately after the impact. This figure also summarizes the notation for the velocities that we use.

When the two bodies are in contact they are assumed to have a common unit normal \mathbf{n} at the single point of contact. This vector is normal to the lateral surfaces of both bodies at the unique point of contact. We also define a set of orthonormal vectors $\{\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{t}_2\}$ by selecting \mathbf{t}_1 and \mathbf{t}_2 to be unit tangent vectors to the lateral surfaces of both bodies at the point of contact. The impact is assumed to be such that these vectors are constant for the duration of the collision.⁴

The impact is assumed to occur at time $t = t_0$. Stage II of the collision occurs during the time interval (t_0, t_1) and stage III occurs during the time interval $[t_1, t_2]$. At $t = t_2$, the bodies have just lost contact. At the end of stage II, the velocities of the bodies in the direction of \mathbf{n} are assumed to be equal ($= v_{II}$).

6.3.2 Linear Impulses During Impact

Pertaining to the forces exerted by the bodies on each other during the impact, let \mathbf{F}_{1_d} and \mathbf{F}_{1_r} be the forces exerted by body 2 on body 1 during stages II and III, respectively. Similarly, we denote by \mathbf{F}_{2_d} and \mathbf{F}_{2_r} the forces exerted by body 1 on body 2 during stages II and III, respectively. All other forces acting on bodies 1 and 2 are assumed to have the resultants \mathbf{R}_1 and \mathbf{R}_2 , respectively. These resultants may include gravitational and spring forces acting on the bodies.

The following three assumptions are made for the aforementioned forces. First, the impact is frictionless:

$$\mathbf{F}_{1_d} = F_{1_d} \mathbf{n}, \quad \mathbf{F}_{1_r} = F_{1_r} \mathbf{n}, \quad \mathbf{F}_{2_d} = F_{2_d} \mathbf{n}, \quad \mathbf{F}_{2_r} = F_{2_r} \mathbf{n}.$$

That is, these forces have no tangential components. Second, it is assumed that the time interval $[t_0, t_2]$ is vanishingly small. As a result, because the time integral of a bounded function will vanish as the time interval of integration shrinks to zero, the

⁴ An example illustrating these three vectors is shown in Fig. 6.8. We also note that for many problems these vectors will coincide with the Cartesian basis vectors.

linear impulses due to \mathbf{R}_1 and \mathbf{R}_2 vanish:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{t_0}^{t_1} (\mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_1(\tau)) d\tau &\approx \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) d\tau, \\ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} (\mathbf{F}_{1r}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_1(\tau)) d\tau &\approx \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{1r}(\tau) d\tau, \\ \int_{t_0}^{t_1} (\mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_2(\tau)) d\tau &\approx \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) d\tau, \\ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} (\mathbf{F}_{2r}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_2(\tau)) d\tau &\approx \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{2r}(\tau) d\tau.\end{aligned}$$

Finally, we assume equal and opposite collisional forces: $\mathbf{F}_{1r} = -\mathbf{F}_{2r}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{1d} = -\mathbf{F}_{2d}$.

We now define the coefficient of restitution e :

$$e = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{1r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}{\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{2r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}{\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}.$$

Here, we used the equal and opposite nature of the interaction forces. You should notice that if $e = 1$, then the linear impulse during the compression stage is equal to the linear impulse during the restitution phase. In this case, the collision is said to be perfectly elastic. If $e = 0$, then the linear impulse during the restitution phase is zero, and the collision is said to be perfectly plastic. In general, $0 \leq e \leq 1$, and e must be determined from an experiment.

To write the coefficient of restitution in a more convenient form using velocities, we first record the following integral forms of the balance of linear momentum for each particle in the direction of \mathbf{n} during stages II and III:

$$\begin{aligned}m_1 v_{II} - m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau, \\ m_2 v_{II} - m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau, \\ m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - m_1 v_{II} &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{1r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau = e \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau, \\ m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - m_2 v_{II} &= \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{2r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau = e \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau.\end{aligned}$$

In these four equations v_{II} is the common velocity in the direction of \mathbf{n} at the end of the compression phase, and the prime distinguishes the postimpact velocity vectors from their preimpact counterparts \mathbf{v}_1 and \mathbf{v}_2 . From these four equations, we can determine the velocity v_{II} :

$$v_{II} = \frac{\mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} + e \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}}{1 + e} = \frac{\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} + e \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}}{1 + e}.$$

We can also manipulate these four equations to find a familiar expression for the coefficient of restitution:

$$e = \frac{\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}}.$$

This equation is used by many authors as the definition of the coefficient of restitution.

6.3.3 Linear Momenta

We now consider the integral forms of the balance of linear momentum for each particle. The time interval of integration is the duration of the impact:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 - m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} (\mathbf{F}_{1_d}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_1(\tau)) d\tau + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} (\mathbf{F}_{1_r}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_1(\tau)) d\tau, \\ m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2 - m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} (\mathbf{F}_{2_d}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_2(\tau)) d\tau + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} (\mathbf{F}_{2_r}(\tau) + \mathbf{R}_2(\tau)) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Using the coefficient of restitution e , the assumptions that $\mathbf{F}_{1_d} = -\mathbf{F}_{2_d}$, $\mathbf{F}_{1_r} = -\mathbf{F}_{2_r}$, and that the linear impulses of these forces dominate those due to \mathbf{R}_1 and \mathbf{R}_2 , we find that

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 - m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 &= (1 + e) \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1_d}(\tau) d\tau, \\ m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2 - m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 &= -(1 + e) \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1_d}(\tau) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

We now take the three components of these equations with respect to the basis vectors $\{\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{t}_2\}$. The components of these equations in the tangential directions imply that the linear momenta of the particles in these directions are conserved:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1 &= \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1, & \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2 &= \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2, \\ \mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1 &= \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1, & \mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2 &= \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2. \end{aligned}$$

In addition, from the two components in the \mathbf{n} direction, we find that the linear momentum of the system in this direction is conserved:

$$\begin{aligned} m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} + m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} &= m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} + m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}, \\ m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} &= -(1 + e) \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1_d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

The previous six equations should be sufficient to determine the six postimpact velocities \mathbf{v}'_1 and \mathbf{v}'_2 provided one knows the preimpact velocities and the linear impulse of \mathbf{F}_{1_d} during the collision. However, this linear impulse is problem-

dependent, and so one generally supplements these equations with the specification of the coefficient of restitution e to determine the postimpact velocity vectors.

6.3.4 The Postimpact Velocities

It is convenient at this point to summarize the equations and show how they are used to solve certain problems. For the problems of interest, one is often given e , \mathbf{v}_1 , \mathbf{v}_2 , m_1 , m_2 , and $\{\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{t}_2\}$ and asked to calculate the postimpact velocity vectors \mathbf{v}'_1 and \mathbf{v}'_2 .

From the previous two sets of equations and the specification of the coefficient of restitution, we see that we have one equation to determine the deformational linear impulse and six equations to determine the postimpact velocity vectors. With some algebra, one obtains

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}'_1 &= (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} ((m_1 - em_2) \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1 + e)m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n}, \\ \mathbf{v}'_2 &= (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} ((m_2 - em_1) \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1 + e)m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n}.\end{aligned}$$

You should notice how the postimpact velocity vectors depend on the mass ratios. We could also calculate the linear impulse of $\mathbf{F}_{1,d}$, but we do not pause to do so here.

It is important to remember that the above expressions for the postimpact velocities are consequences of the following: (i) the linear momenta of each particle in the tangential directions \mathbf{t}_1 and \mathbf{t}_2 are conserved during the impact, (ii) the combined linear momentum of the particles in the normal direction is conserved during the impact, and (iii) the coefficient of restitution e needs to be provided to determine the aforementioned velocity vectors.⁵

6.3.5 Kinetic Energy and the Coefficient of Restitution

Previously, we have used two equivalent definitions of the coefficient of restitution:

$$e = \frac{\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}},$$

⁵ It should be clear that, given the preimpact velocity vectors, the balance laws only provide six equations from which one needs to determine the six postimpact velocities and the linear impulses of $\mathbf{F}_{1,d}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{1,r}$. The introduction of the coefficient of restitution e and the assumption of a common normal velocity v_{II} at time $t = t_1$ gives two more equations that render the system of equations solvable. That is, these two additional equations close the system of equations.

and

$$e = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{1r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}{\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{2r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}{\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}.$$

Often, the change in kinetic energy is used to specify the coefficient of restitution. We now examine why this is possible.

The kinetic energy of the system just prior to impact T and the kinetic energy immediately following the collision T' are, by definition,⁶

$$T = \frac{1}{2}m_1\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + \frac{1}{2}m_2\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2, \quad T' = \frac{1}{2}m_1\mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}'_1 + \frac{1}{2}m_2\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}'_2.$$

We recall that the collision changes only the \mathbf{n} components of the velocity vectors. Hence,

$$T - T' = \frac{1}{2}m_1 \left((\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 - (\mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 \right) + \frac{1}{2}m_2 \left((\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 - (\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 \right).$$

Substituting for the normal components of the postimpact velocity vectors, we obtain the well-known equation

$$T - T' = \frac{m_1 m_2}{2m_1 + 2m_2} (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 (1 - e^2).$$

Hence, if $-1 \leq e \leq 1$, the kinetic energy of the system cannot be increased as a result of the impact.

6.3.6 Negative Values of the Coefficient of Restitution

It follows from the previous equation that assuming e is negative does not preclude energy loss during an impact. Indeed, Brach [18] considers the example of a ball shattering and then passing through a window as an example of a problem where e is negative. In problems where e is negative,

$$e = \frac{\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}} < 0,$$

and hence, $\mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}$ and $\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}$ have the same sign. As a result, the colliding bodies pass through each other during the course of the impact. To eliminate this behavior, it is generally assumed that e is positive.

⁶ The definition of the kinetic energy of a system of particles is discussed in further detail in Section 7.2.4 of Chapter 7.

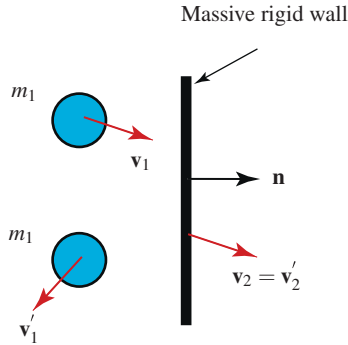


Fig. 6.5 Impact of a particle and a massive object. The ratio of the masses $m_1/(m_1 + m_2) \approx 0$.

6.4 Impact of a Particle and a Massive Object

To illustrate the previous results, consider a particle of mass m_1 that collides with a massive object (see Fig. 6.5). Intuitively, we expect that the velocity of the massive object will not be affected by the collision. The analysis below confirms this.

For the problem at hand, m_2 is assumed to be far greater than m_1 :

$$\frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} \approx 0, \quad \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \approx 1.$$

Substituting these results into the expressions for the postimpact velocities, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}'_1 &= (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + (-e\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1+e)\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n}, \\ \mathbf{v}'_2 &= (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n} \\ &= \mathbf{v}_2. \end{aligned}$$

As expected, \mathbf{v}_2 is unaltered by the collision. You should also notice that if $e = 1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{0}$, then the particle rebounds with the components of its velocity vector in the direction of \mathbf{n} reversed, as expected. Finally, for a plastic collision, $e = 0$ and the velocity of m_1 in the direction of \mathbf{n} attains the velocity of the massive object in this direction. We leave it as an exercise to calculate the energy lost in the collision. This exercise involves using the expression we previously established for $T - T'$.

6.5 A Bouncing Ball

As a further illustration of the general developments, consider the problem of a ball bouncing on a massive stationary surface (see Fig. 6.6). We assume that the ball is

launched with an initial velocity \mathbf{v}_0 . The ball climbs to a height h_1 and then falls through the same distance and collides with the smooth surface. A rebound occurs and the ball then climbs to a height of h_2 , and so on.

It what follows, we model the ball as a particle of mass m_1 . Using the results from Section 6.4, we can consider the massive object as fixed. Furthermore, we assume that the coefficient of restitution e is a constant and less than 1. The model we develop predicts that although the ball will bounce an infinite number of times it will stop bouncing in a finite amount of time.⁷

As the particle is launched with an initial velocity of $\mathbf{v}_0 = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + v_{0y}\mathbf{E}_y$, it is not too difficult to see that the ball rises to a maximum height h_1 and travels a distance L_1 before it impacts the surface. To compute h_1 and L_1 , we ignore drag and use our earlier results from the projectile problem discussed in Section 1.6 in Chapter 1:

$$h_1 = \frac{v_{0y}^2}{2g}, \quad L_1 = \left(\frac{2v_{0y}}{g}\right)v_{0x}.$$

The velocity vector of the particle just prior to impact is $\mathbf{v}_1 = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x - v_{0y}\mathbf{E}_y$. With the help of the results of Section 6.4, we can conclude that the rebound velocity vector \mathbf{v}'_1 is

$$\mathbf{v}'_1 = v_{0x}\mathbf{E}_x + ev_{0y}\mathbf{E}_y.$$

Furthermore, it is easy to infer that the particle rises to a maximum height h_2 and travels a distance L_2 before the next collision:

$$h_2 = \frac{e^2v_{0y}^2}{2g}, \quad L_2 = \left(\frac{2ev_{0y}}{g}\right)v_{0x}.$$

Clearly,

$$h_2 = e^2h_1, \quad L_2 = eL_1.$$

Continuing with this analysis, we find that

$$h_i = e^{2(i-1)}h_1, \quad L_i = e^{(i-1)}L_1 \quad (i = 1, 2, 3, \dots).$$

Notice that as $i \rightarrow \infty$, then $h_i \rightarrow 0$.

To determine how far the ball travels along the surface before it stops bouncing and starts moving at a constant speed v_{0x} , we need to compute the infinite sum L of

⁷ The model we discuss is a prototypical example in control theory for illustrating Zeno behavior (see, e.g., Liberzon [60]). The term Zeno behavior is in reference to the Greek philosopher Zeno of Elea and his famous dichotomy paradox. He is perhaps more famous for his paradox about the tortoise and the hare.

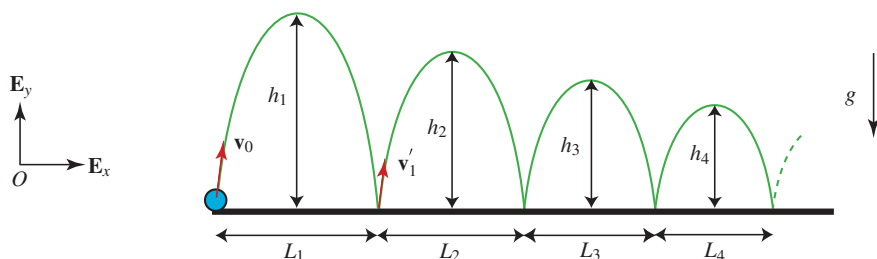


Fig. 6.6 Schematic of a ball bouncing on a smooth horizontal surface.

the distances L_i :

$$\begin{aligned} L &= \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} L_i = \left(1 + e + e^2 + \dots = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} e^{(i-1)} \right) L_1 = \left(\frac{1}{1-e} \right) L_1 \\ &= \left(\frac{2v_{0y}}{g(1-e)} \right) v_{0x}. \end{aligned}$$

It may come as a surprise to note that, although the number of impacts is infinite, the distance L is finite if $e < 1$. Furthermore, the time $T = L/v_{0x}$ taken for the ball to stop bouncing is also finite:

$$T = \frac{2v_{0y}}{g(1-e)}.$$

This is the Zeno behavior we mentioned earlier.

One might ask the question of what would happen if the surface that the ball is bouncing on started to move vertically? Some answers to this question can be found in a 1982 paper by Holmes [51]. These answers are surprisingly complex. Indeed, depending on the motion of the surface and the coefficient of restitution, Holmes showed that the time between impacts could vary in a chaotic manner. His paper has generated considerable interest in, and inspired many published works on, the bouncing ball system.

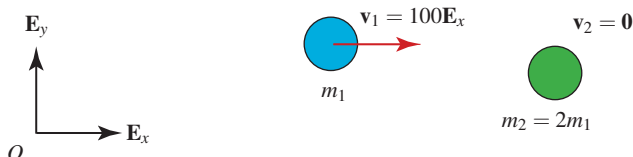


Fig. 6.7 An impact of two spheres.

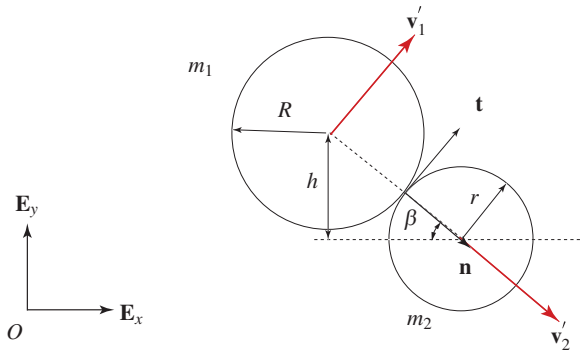


Fig. 6.8 Geometry of the impacting spheres.

6.6 Collision of Two Spheres

Another example of interest is shown in Fig. 6.7. There, a sphere of mass m_1 and radius R that is moving at a constant velocity $\mathbf{v}_1 = 100\mathbf{E}_x$ (meters per second) collides with a stationary sphere of radius r and mass $m_2 = 2m_1$.

At the instant of impact, the position vectors of the centers of mass of the spheres differ in height by an amount h . Given that the coefficient of restitution $e = 0.5$, one seeks to determine the velocity vectors of the spheres immediately following the impact.

It is first necessary to determine the normal and tangent vectors at the contact point of the spheres during the impact. Referring to Fig. 6.8, we see that these vectors are

$$\mathbf{n} = \cos(\beta)\mathbf{E}_x - \sin(\beta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{t}_1 = \cos(\beta)\mathbf{E}_y + \sin(\beta)\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{t}_2 = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Here, the angle β is defined by the relations

$$\sin(\beta) = \frac{h}{R+r}, \quad \cos(\beta) = \frac{\sqrt{(r+R)^2 - h^2}}{r+R}.$$

Notice that this angle depends on h , r , and R .

Without calculating the postimpact velocity vectors, we can calculate the energy lost in the collision by using the formula for $T - T'$ that was established previously:

$$\begin{aligned} T - T' &= \frac{m_1 m_2}{2m_1 + 2m_2} (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 (1 - e^2) \\ &= \frac{m_1}{3} (100 \cos(\beta))^2 (1 - e^2), \end{aligned}$$

where $e = 0.5$.

One method of solving this problem is to use the formulae given previously for the postimpact velocity vectors:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}'_1 &= (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} ((m_1 - em_2) \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1 + e)m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n}, \\ \mathbf{v}'_2 &= (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} ((m_2 - em_1) \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1 + e)m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n}.\end{aligned}$$

Substituting for the values for the problem at hand,

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = 100\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{0}, \quad e = 0.5, \quad m_2 = 2m_1,$$

into these equations, we find that

$$\mathbf{v}'_1 = (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 = 100 \sin(\beta) \mathbf{t}_1, \quad \mathbf{v}'_2 = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n} = 50 \cos(\beta) \mathbf{n}.$$

Notice that the initial velocity of the sphere of radius R in the direction of \mathbf{n} has been annihilated by the collision (cf. Fig. 6.8).

6.7 Summary

The first new concept in this chapter was the definition of the linear momentum $\mathbf{G} = m\mathbf{v}$. In addition, the integral form of the balance of linear momentum was introduced:

$$\mathbf{G}(t_1) - \mathbf{G}(t_0) = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F} dt.$$

This equation is assumed to hold for all intervals of time and hence for all times t_0 and t_1 . Because this balance law does not assume that \mathbf{v} is differentiable, it is more general than $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$.

The angular momentum $\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{G}$ of a particle relative to a fixed point O was introduced in Section 6.2. The time rate of change of this momentum can be determined using the angular momentum theorem:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}.$$

Associated with \mathbf{G} and \mathbf{H}_O are instances where certain components of these vectors are conserved. For a given vector \mathbf{c} , potential conservations of $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ and $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}$ can be established using the equations

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c}) &= \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{G} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0, \\ \frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}) &= (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Several examples of linear and angular momenta conservations were discussed in the present chapter. Specifically, the conservation of a component of \mathbf{G} for impact problems and projectile problems was covered. The more conceptually challenging conservation of a component of \mathbf{H}_O was illustrated using a central force problem, Kepler's problem, and a particle moving on the surface of a smooth cone.

The majority of the chapter was devoted to a discussion of impact problems. Specifically, given two bodies of masses m_1 and m_2 whose respective preimpact velocity vectors are \mathbf{v}_1 and \mathbf{v}_2 , we wished to find the postimpact velocity vectors \mathbf{v}'_1 and \mathbf{v}'_2 . The collisions of interest were restricted to cases where there was a unique point of contact with a well-defined unit normal vector \mathbf{n} . This normal vector was then used to construct a right-handed orthonormal triad $\{\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{t}_2\}$. To solve the problems of interest, it was necessary to introduce a phenomenological constant, the coefficient of restitution e . In Sections 6.3.2 and 6.3.5, three alternative definitions of this constant were presented:

$$e = \frac{\mathbf{v}'_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}}{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}},$$

$$e = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{1r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}{\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{1d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_{2r}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau}{\int_{t_0}^{t_1} \mathbf{F}_{2d}(\tau) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\tau},$$

$$T - T' = \frac{m_1 m_2}{2m_1 + 2m_2} (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 (1 - e^2).$$

We also noted that the restriction $0 \leq e \leq 1$ is normally imposed so as to preclude interpenetrability of the impacting bodies. If $e = 1$, the collision is said to be perfectly elastic and if $e = 0$, then the collision is said to be perfectly plastic.

Using the definition of the coefficient of restitution, conservation of linear momenta of each particle in the \mathbf{t}_1 and \mathbf{t}_2 directions, and conservation of the total linear momentum of the system of particles in the \mathbf{n} direction, expressions were obtained for the postimpact velocity vectors:

$$\mathbf{v}'_1 = (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} ((m_1 - em_2) \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1 + e)m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n},$$

$$\mathbf{v}'_2 = (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_1) \mathbf{t}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{t}_2) \mathbf{t}_2 + \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} ((m_2 - em_1) \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n} + (1 + e)m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n}) \mathbf{n}.$$

The solutions of impact problems using these formulae were presented in Sections 6.4–6.6.

6.8 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 6.1: A particle of mass m is in motion on a smooth horizontal surface. Using $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, show that the resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the particle is zero and hence its linear momentum \mathbf{G} remains constant.

Exercise 6.2: For a particle of mass m that is falling under the influence of a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$, show that $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is not conserved.

Exercise 6.3: A particle of mass m is in motion on a smooth horizontal surface. Here, a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_z$ and an applied force $\mathbf{P} = P(t)\mathbf{E}_x$ acts on the particle. Using $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, show that $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{P}$. Furthermore, show that

$$\mathbf{G}(t) = \mathbf{G}(t_0) + \left(\int_{t_0}^t P(\tau) d\tau \right) \mathbf{E}_x.$$

Exercise 6.4: Starting from $\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v}$, prove the angular momentum theorem: $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$.

Exercise 6.5: For a particle of mass m moving on a horizontal plane $z = 0$, show that $\mathbf{H}_O = mr^2\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$. When this momentum is conserved, show, with the aid of graphs of $\dot{\theta}$ as a function of r for various values of $h = \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$, that the sign of $\dot{\theta}$ cannot change. What does this imply about the motion of the particle?

Exercise 6.6: Consider the example discussed in Section 6.2.5. Show that $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved when the spring is replaced by an inextensible string of length ℓ . In your solution, assume that the string is being fed from an eyelet at O . Consequently, the length of string between O and the particle can change: $\ell = \ell(t)$.

Exercise 6.7: Does the solution to Exercise 6.6 change if the angle $\alpha = 0$? To what physical problem does this case correspond?

Exercise 6.8: Recall Kepler's problem discussed in Section 6.2.4. Show that angular momentum conservation can be used to reduce the equations governing θ and r to a single differential equation:

$$\ddot{r} - \frac{h^2}{m^2 r^3} + \frac{GMm}{r^2} = 0.$$

Show that this equation predicts a circular motion $r = r_0$, where

$$r_0 = \frac{h^2}{GMm^3}, \quad \dot{\theta} = \frac{h}{mr_0^2}.$$

Finally, show that the velocity vector of the particle of mass m must be

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{GMm^2}{h} \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

Using the expression for r_0 , estimate the angular momentum of the Earth orbiting the Sun.

Exercise 6.9: With the help of the following result, that was established in Section 6.3.5,

$$T - T' = \frac{m_1 m_2}{2m_1 + 2m_2} (\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n})^2 (1 - e^2),$$

discuss the circumstances where the kinetic energy loss is maximized or minimized in a collision.

Exercise 6.10: Why is it necessary to know the coefficient of restitution e in order to solve an impact problem?

Exercise 6.11: When two bodies are in contact at a point, there are two possible choices for \mathbf{n} : $\pm \mathbf{n}$. Why do the formulae for e , \mathbf{v}'_1 , and \mathbf{v}'_2 that are presented in Section 6.7 give the same results for either choice of \mathbf{n} ?

Exercise 6.12: Recall the problem discussed in Section 6.4 where a particle of mass m impacts a massive object. If $e = 0$, verify that $\mathbf{v}'_1 \cdot \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{n}$. On physical grounds why are the components of \mathbf{v}_1 in the \mathbf{t}_1 and \mathbf{t}_2 directions unaltered by the collision?

Exercise 6.13: Using the results for the problem discussed in Section 6.4, show that if e is negative, then the particle passes through the massive object. When $e = -1$, show that the particle is unaffected by its collision with the massive object.

Exercise 6.14: Using the results of the example discussed in Section 6.6, determine the postimpact velocity vectors of the spheres for the two cases $h = 0$ and $h = R + r$.

Exercise 6.15: In order to examine aspects of the bouncing ball problem discussed in Section 6.5, I asked my daughter and eldest stepson to drop a ball from a height of 3 feet, and we measured the successive rebound heights. The following three sets of estimates for h_i were recorded:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Expt. 1: } & h_1 = 36, \quad h_2 = 30, \quad h_3 = 22, \\ \text{Expt. 2: } & h_1 = 36, \quad h_2 = 27, \quad h_3 = 22.5, \\ \text{Expt. 3: } & h_1 = 36, \quad h_2 = 25, \quad h_3 = 21. \end{aligned}$$

The dimensions of h_i are in inches. Calculate an estimate of e for the impact of the ball with the ground.

Exercise 6.16: For the bouncing ball problem discussed in Section 6.5, show that the total vertical distance $2H$ traveled by the particle before it stops bouncing is

$$2H = \left(\frac{v_{0y}^2}{g} \right) \frac{1}{1 - e^2}.$$

Give an interpretation of this result when $e = 0$.

Chapter 7

Dynamics of Systems of Particles



TOPICS

In this chapter, we continue the process of extending several results pertaining to a single particle to a system of particles. We start by defining the linear momentum, angular momenta, and kinetic energy for a system of particles. Next, we introduce a new concept, the center of mass C of a system of particles. A discussion of the conservation of kinematical quantities follows. Conservations of energy and momenta along with energy dissipation are illustrated using several detailed examples.

7.1 Preliminaries

We consider a system of n particles, each of mass m_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$). The position vector of the particle of mass m_i relative to a fixed point O is denoted by \mathbf{r}_i . Several quantities pertaining to the kinematics of this system are shown in Fig. 7.1.

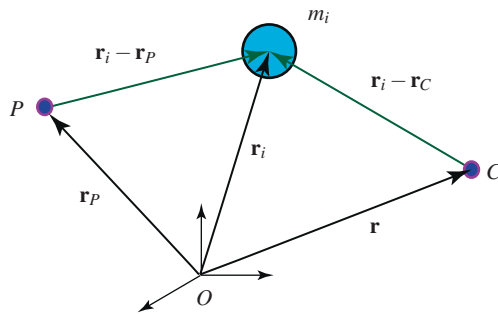


Fig. 7.1 Some kinematical quantities pertaining to a particle of mass m_i .

The velocity vector of the particle of mass m_i is defined as

$$\mathbf{v}_i = \frac{d\mathbf{r}_i}{dt},$$

and the (absolute) acceleration vector \mathbf{a}_i of this particle is

$$\mathbf{a}_i = \frac{d^2\mathbf{r}_i}{dt^2} = \frac{d\mathbf{v}_i}{dt}.$$

We then have that the linear momentum \mathbf{G}_i of the particle of mass m_i is

$$\mathbf{G}_i = m_i\mathbf{v}_i,$$

and the angular momentum \mathbf{H}_{P_i} of the particle of mass m_i relative to a point P is

$$\mathbf{H}_{P_i} = (\mathbf{r}_i - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{G}_i,$$

where \mathbf{r}_P is the position vector of the point P relative to O . Finally, the kinetic energy T_i of the particle of mass m_i is

$$T_i = \frac{1}{2}m_i\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i.$$

7.2 Center of Mass, Momenta, and Kinetic Energy

7.2.1 The Center of Mass

The center of mass C of the system of particles is defined as the point whose position vector \mathbf{r} is defined by

$$\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{r}_k,$$

where

$$m = \sum_{k=1}^n m_k$$

is the total mass of the system of particles.

The velocity \mathbf{v} of the center of mass is obtained from the above equation by differentiating the expression for \mathbf{r} with respect to time:

$$\mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{G}_k.$$

You should notice that the velocity of the center of mass is a weighted sum of the velocities of the particles.

It is convenient to record the identities

$$\sum_{k=1}^n m_k(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_k) = \mathbf{0}, \quad \sum_{k=1}^n m_k(\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_k) = \mathbf{0}.$$

These identities will be used to derive convenient expressions for the linear and angular momenta and kinetic energy of a system of particles.

7.2.2 Linear Momentum

The linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the system of particles is the sum of the linear momenta of the individual particles. It follows from the definition of the center of mass that

$$\mathbf{G} = m \frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \frac{d\mathbf{r}_k}{dt} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{G}_k.$$

In words, the linear momentum of the center of mass is the linear momentum of the system.

7.2.3 Angular Momentum

Similarly, the angular momentum \mathbf{H}_P of the system of particles relative to a point P , whose position vector relative to O is \mathbf{r}_P , is the sum of the individual angular momenta:

$$\mathbf{H}_P = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{H}_{P_k} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}_P) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k.$$

Using the definition of the center of mass, we can write \mathbf{H}_P in a more convenient form:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_P &= \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{H}_{P_k} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{G}_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r} + \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{G}_k \\ &= \left(\sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times \mathbf{G}_k \right) + (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \left(\sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{G}_k \right). \end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$\mathbf{H}_P = \mathbf{H} + (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{G}.$$

In this equation,

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k$$

is the angular momentum of the system of particles relative to its center of mass C .

The angular momentum relative to the center of mass C , \mathbf{H} , has an alternative representation that is often very useful. To establish this representation, we exploit the identity

$$\sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_k) = \mathbf{0}$$

that was mentioned previously. We start with the representation for \mathbf{H} and manipulate to arrive at the final desired expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) + \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{v} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) + \underbrace{\left(\sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \right)}_{=\mathbf{0}} \times \mathbf{v} \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}). \end{aligned}$$

In summary, we find two equivalent representations for the angular momentum of the system of particles relative to the center of mass C :

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}).$$

Depending on the system of particles, the second form is often easier to compute than the first (cf. the example discussed in Section 7.3).

7.2.4 Kinetic Energy

The kinetic energy T of the system of particles is defined to be the sum of their individual kinetic energies:

$$T = \sum_{k=1}^n T_k = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{2} m_k \mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k.$$

In general, the kinetic energy of the system is not equal to the kinetic energy of its center of mass. This fact will shortly become more evident.

Using the center of mass, T can be expressed in another form:

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \sum_{k=1}^n T_k = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v} \cdot \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v})}_{=0}. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that we have added a term to the right-hand side that is equal to zero. Some minor manipulations can then be used to show that

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v} \cdot \sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k - 2\mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}). \end{aligned}$$

Completing the square, we obtain the final desired result:

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}).$$

That is, the kinetic energy of a system of particles is the kinetic energy of its center of mass plus another term that is proportional to the magnitude of the velocity of the particles relative to the center of mass.¹

7.3 A System of Two Particles Connected by a Spring

We now consider the application of the previous definitions of kinematic quantities to a pair of particles of masses m_1 and m_2 , respectively. The pair of particles can be connected by a rigid massless link of length ℓ or a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . The system of particles is assumed to move on a plane. For the purpose of illustration, it is convenient to consider the situation where the particles are connected by a spring as shown in Fig. 7.2.

We use a cylindrical polar coordinate system to define the position vector $\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1$:

$$\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1 = r \mathbf{e}_r,$$

¹ This result is sometimes known as the Koenig decomposition of the kinetic energy of a system of particles. In Section 9.2 of Chapter 9, the corresponding decomposition for a rigid body is discussed.

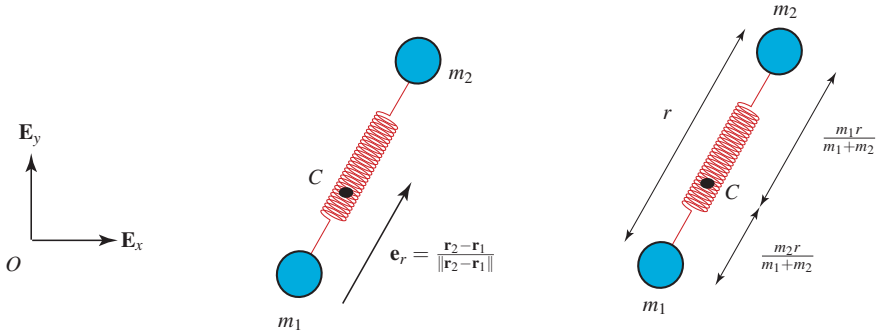


Fig. 7.2 Some kinematical quantities associated with a pair of particles of mass m_1 and m_2 , respectively, are connected by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 .

This unit vector \mathbf{e}_r and its companion \mathbf{e}_θ have the representations

$$\mathbf{e}_r = \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} = \cos(\theta) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta) \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_\theta = \cos(\theta) \mathbf{E}_y - \sin(\theta) \mathbf{E}_x.$$

The position of the center of mass C of the system of particles can be defined using a Cartesian coordinate system:

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y.$$

It is important to note here that x and y are coordinates for the center of mass C and are independent of r and θ . The latter set of coordinates are used to parameterize the position vector of m_2 relative to m_1 .

By definition,

$$(m_1 + m_2)\mathbf{r} = m_1\mathbf{r}_1 + m_2\mathbf{r}_2.$$

Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r}_1 &= \mathbf{r} - \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} (\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1) \\ &= \mathbf{r} - \left(\frac{m_2 r}{m_1 + m_2} \right) \mathbf{e}_r, \\ \mathbf{r}_2 &= \mathbf{r} + \frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} (\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1) \\ &= \mathbf{r} + \left(\frac{m_1 r}{m_1 + m_2} \right) \mathbf{e}_r. \end{aligned}$$

As a check on these expressions, observe that $\mathbf{r}_1 \rightarrow \mathbf{r}$ if m_2 is much smaller than m_1 . For future reference, we note that

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{r}} &= \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{v}_1 &= \dot{\mathbf{r}} - \left(\frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2}\right) (\dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta), \\ \mathbf{v}_2 &= \dot{\mathbf{r}} + \left(\frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2}\right) (\dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta).\end{aligned}$$

The linear momentum of the system is the sum of the linear momenta of the particles: $\mathbf{G} = m_1\dot{\mathbf{r}}_1 + m_2\dot{\mathbf{r}}_2$. This in turn is equal to the linear momentum of the center of mass:

$$\mathbf{G} = (m_1 + m_2)(\dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y).$$

To compute the angular momentum \mathbf{H} and kinetic energy T , it is convenient to use the forms of these expressions that involve the relative velocity vectors:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{H} &= \sum_{k=1}^2 (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} (r^2 \dot{\theta}) \mathbf{E}_z, \\ T &= \frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^2 m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \frac{m_1 + m_2}{2} (\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2) + \frac{m_1 m_2}{2(m_1 + m_2)} (\dot{r}^2 + r^2 \dot{\theta}^2).\end{aligned}$$

We leave the intermediate steps involved in computing the final forms of T and \mathbf{H} as exercises for the reader.

It is useful exercise to calculate the angular momentum of this system relative to O using the equivalent representations:

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{r}_1 \times m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{r}_2 \times m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{H} + \mathbf{r} \times m \mathbf{v}.$$

When the spring is replaced by a rigid rod of length ℓ , then the representation for \mathbf{G} remains the same. However, the representations for T , \mathbf{H} , and \mathbf{H}_O simplify because $r = \ell$ and $\dot{r} = 0$.

7.4 Kinetics of Systems of Particles

For each individual particle, one has Euler's first law (that is equivalent to Newton's second law and the balance of linear momentum):

$$\mathbf{F}_i = m_i \mathbf{a}_i.$$

Adding these n equations and using the definition of the center of mass, we find that

$$\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a},$$

where $\mathbf{a} = \dot{\mathbf{v}}$ and \mathbf{F} is the resultant force acting on the system of particles:

$$\mathbf{F} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_k.$$

The equation $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is very useful and allows us to solve for the motion of the center of mass of the system.

In many problems involving systems of particles, determining the motions of the individual particles, by solving the set of coupled second-order ordinary differential equations for $\mathbf{r}_1(t), \dots, \mathbf{r}_n(t)$, is an extremely difficult task² and one that is well beyond the scope of an undergraduate engineering dynamics course.

7.5 Conservation of Linear Momentum

We first consider conditions for the conservation of the component of the linear momentum \mathbf{G} in the direction of a given vector $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}(t)$. The result parallels the case for a single particle discussed in Section 6.1 of Chapter 6, and so we merely quote it. If $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{G} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0$, then $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ is conserved. A second form of linear momentum conservation arises in the impact problems where the total linear momentum of the system is conserved. Examples of this type were explored in Sections 6.3–6.6 of Chapter 6.

Before turning to a classic system where linear momentum in a direction is conserved, we first consider the motion of the pair of particles connected by a spring that was discussed in Section 7.3. Now suppose that the particles are free to move on a smooth vertical plane as shown in Fig. 7.3. Then, the resultant force on the system is

$$\mathbf{F} = -(m_1 + m_2)g\mathbf{E}_y.$$

From $\mathbf{F} = (m_1 + m_2)\ddot{\mathbf{r}}$, we conclude that the linear momentum of the system in the \mathbf{E}_x direction is conserved and the center of mass travels at constant speed in the horizontal direction. The vertical motion of the center of mass is governed by the differential equation $\ddot{y} = -g$. Consequently, the center of mass behaves as a projectile in a gravitational field—a problem we discussed several times previously. The path of the center of mass C is a parabola as shown in Fig. 7.3. One might ask about the rotation of the system of particles about C or the behavior of the coordinate r . The rotation is governed by the angle $\theta = \theta(t)$. To find the behavior of this angle (and $r(t)$), we can appeal to $\mathbf{F}_1 = m_1\ddot{\mathbf{r}}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2 = m_2\ddot{\mathbf{r}}_2$ to establish the differential equations governing $\theta(t)$ and $r(t)$. Alternatively, as we shall see later, we can appeal

² This can, perhaps, be appreciated by considering the examples discussed in Sections 7.6 and 7.8.

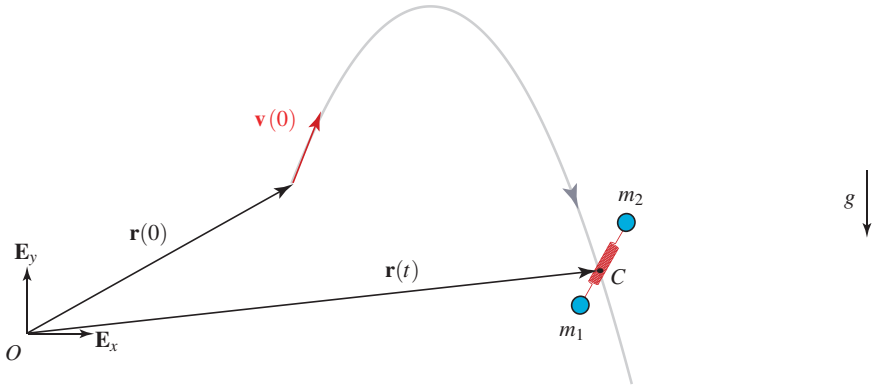


Fig. 7.3 Trajectory $\mathbf{r}(t)$ of the center of mass C of a system of two particles connected by a spring. The particles are launched into the air at time $t = 0$ and the path traced by C is a parabola.

to an angular momentum theorem $\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$ to establish the differential equation for $\theta(t)$. A closely related example involving the tossing of a rigid rod into the air is discussed in Section 9.1.5 on Page 210.

7.6 The Cart and the Pendulum

As a first example of a system where conservation of linear momentum arises, consider the system shown in Fig. 7.4. A particle of mass m_1 is attached by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 to another particle of mass m_2 . A vertical gravitational force also acts on each particle. The mass m_1 is free to move on a smooth horizontal rail, and the second particle is free to move on a vertical plane. We wish to show that the linear momentum of the system in the \mathbf{E}_x direction is conserved and then examine what this means for the motion of the system.

7.6.1 Kinematics

We first give some details on the kinematics of the system by defining the position vectors of both particles:

$$\mathbf{r}_1 = x\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{r}_2 = \mathbf{r}_1 + r\mathbf{e}_r,$$

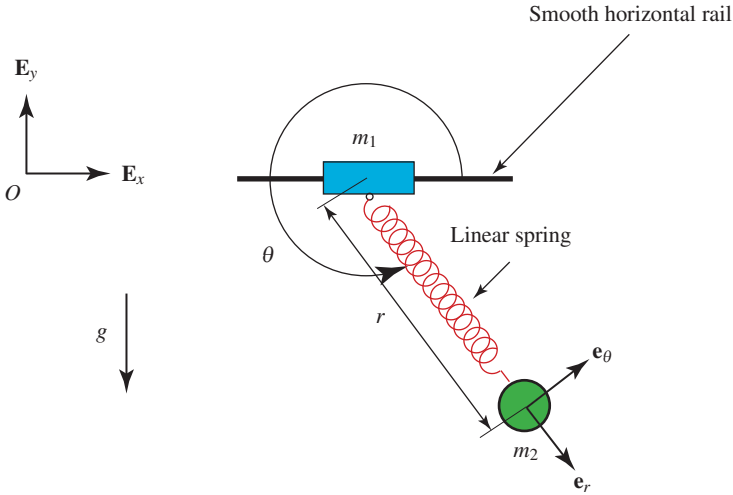


Fig. 7.4 Cart and the pendulum.

where y_0 and z_0 are constants and the position vector of m_2 relative to m_1 is described using a cylindrical polar coordinate system. As expected, the position vector of the center of mass of the system lies at some point along the spring:

$$\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} (m_1 \mathbf{r}_1 + m_2 \mathbf{r}_2) = \mathbf{r}_1 + \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} r \mathbf{e}_r = \mathbf{r}_2 - \frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} r \mathbf{e}_r.$$

We can differentiate position vectors in the usual manner to obtain the velocities and accelerations of the mass particles and the center of mass. Here, we record only the velocity vectors:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_1 &= \dot{x} \mathbf{E}_x, & \mathbf{v}_2 &= \dot{x} \mathbf{E}_x + \dot{r} \mathbf{e}_r + r \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta, \\ \mathbf{v} &= \dot{x} \mathbf{E}_x + \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} (\dot{r} \mathbf{e}_r + r \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta). \end{aligned}$$

The acceleration vectors can be obtained in the usual manner. They are used below.

7.6.2 Forces

We now turn to the free-body diagrams for the individual particles and the system of particles. These are shown in Fig. 7.5. The spring forces are (see Section 4.6 in

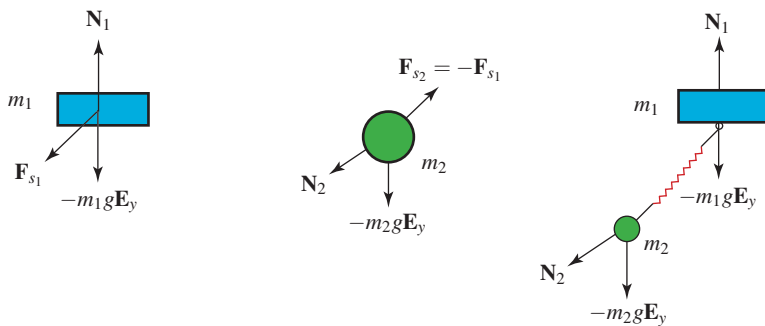


Fig. 7.5 Free-body diagrams for the cart, pendulum, and system.

Chapter 4)

$$\mathbf{F}_{s1} = -K (\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2}{\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\|},$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{s2} = -K (\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|}.$$

Thus, we find that the spring forces are equal and opposite as expected:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_{s1} = -\mathbf{F}_{s2} &= -K (\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\| - \ell_0) \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2}{\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\|} \\ &= K (r - \ell_0) \mathbf{e}_r. \end{aligned}$$

You should note that the spring forces do not appear in the free-body diagram of the system. The normal forces acting on the particles are

$$\mathbf{N}_1 = N_{1y} \mathbf{E}_y + N_{1z} \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{N}_2 = N_{2z} \mathbf{E}_z.$$

7.6.3 Balance Laws

We now consider the balances of linear momentum for the individual particles. For the particle of mass m_1 and the particle of mass m_2 , we have, respectively,

$$-m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y + N_{1y} \mathbf{E}_y + N_{1z} \mathbf{E}_z + K (r - \ell_0) \mathbf{e}_r = m_1 \ddot{x} \mathbf{E}_x,$$

$$-m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y + N_{2z} \mathbf{E}_z - K (r - \ell_0) \mathbf{e}_r = m_2 \ddot{x} \mathbf{E}_x + m_2 (\ddot{r} - r \dot{\theta}^2) \mathbf{e}_r + m_2 (r \ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r} \dot{\theta}) \mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

These are six equations to determine the three unknown components of \mathbf{N}_1 and \mathbf{N}_2 and provide differential equations for r , x , and θ as functions of time.

With very little work, we find that

$$\mathbf{N}_1 = (m_1 g - K(r - \ell_0) \sin(\theta)) \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{N}_2 = \mathbf{0}.$$

Next, we obtain a set of nonlinear second-order ordinary differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 \ddot{x} &= K(r - \ell_0) \cos(\theta), \\ m_2 \ddot{x} \cos(\theta) + m_2(\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2) &= -K(r - \ell_0) - m_2 g \sin(\theta), \\ -m_2 \ddot{x} \sin(\theta) + m_2(r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta}) &= -m_2 g \cos(\theta). \end{aligned}$$

Notice, how the motions of the two particles are coupled. Given a set of six initial conditions, $r(t_0)$, $\theta(t_0)$, $x(t_0)$, $\dot{r}(t_0)$, $\dot{\theta}(t_0)$, and $\dot{x}(t_0)$, the solution $r(t)$, $\theta(t)$, and $x(t)$ of these equations can be used to determine the motions $\mathbf{r}_1(t)$ and $\mathbf{r}_2(t)$ of the particles. Such an analysis is beyond the scope this book.

7.6.4 Analysis

Next, we consider the balance of linear momentum for the system of particles:³

$$-(m_2 + m_1)g\mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{N}_1 + \mathbf{N}_2 = (m_1 + m_2)\ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + m_2(\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2)\mathbf{e}_r + m_2(r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta})\mathbf{e}_\theta.$$

We see immediately that $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x = \mathbf{0}$.⁴ In other words, the linear momentum of the system in the \mathbf{E}_x direction is conserved. This momentum is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x &= (m_1 + m_2)\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ &= (m_1 + m_2)\dot{x} + m_2(\dot{r} \cos(\theta) - r\dot{\theta} \sin(\theta)). \end{aligned}$$

As a result of this conservation, the velocity of the center of mass in the \mathbf{E}_x direction is constant, and the masses m_1 and m_2 move in such a manner as to preserve this constant velocity. If the initial value of $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$ is equal to G_0 , then the motion of the particle of mass m_1 is such that

$$\dot{x} = \frac{1}{m_1 + m_2} (G_0 - m_2(\dot{r} \cos(\theta) - r\dot{\theta} \sin(\theta))).$$

We return to this example later on to show that the total energy of this system is conserved.⁵

³ Due to the equal and opposite nature of the spring forces acting on the particles, this equation is equivalent to the addition of the balances of linear momentum for the individual particles. Because the spring is assumed to be massless, the equal and opposite nature of the spring forces can also be interpreted using Newton's third law.

⁴ That is, $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{E}_x$.

⁵ It is a good exercise to convince yourself that a similar result for linear momentum conservation applies when one replaces the spring with a rigid rod of length ℓ .

7.7 Angular Momentum Theorem

In Section 7.2, we noted that the angular momentum of the system of particles relative to an arbitrary point P is

$$\mathbf{H}_P = \mathbf{H} + (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{G},$$

where

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k$$

is the angular momentum of the system of particles relative to its center of mass C .

We first calculate an expression for its rate of change with respect to time:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_P = \sum_{k=1}^n ((\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k + (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{a}_k) + (\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_P) \times \mathbf{G} + (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \dot{\mathbf{G}},$$

where we have used the product rule. Invoking the balances of linear momentum, $\mathbf{F}_i = m_i \mathbf{a}_i$ and $\mathbf{F} = m \mathbf{a} = \dot{\mathbf{G}}$, the above equation becomes

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_P = \sum_{k=1}^n ((\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k + (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times \mathbf{F}_k) + (\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_P) \times \mathbf{G} + (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \dot{\mathbf{G}}.$$

We next eliminate those terms that are zero on the right-hand side of this equation with the partial assistance of the identities

$$\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{G} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{v} \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{v} \times \left(\sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k \right) = \mathbf{v} \times m \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}.$$

The final result now follows:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_P = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{F}_k - \mathbf{v}_P \times \mathbf{G}.$$

This result is known as the angular momentum theorem for a system of particles. We note that the resultant moment of the system of forces relative to P is

$$\mathbf{M}_P = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}_P) \times \mathbf{F}_k.$$

With this notation, the angular momentum theorem has a more compact form:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_P = \mathbf{M}_P - \mathbf{v}_P \times \mathbf{G}.$$

It is very important to notice that $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_P$ is not necessarily equal to \mathbf{M}_P .

There are two important special cases of the angular momentum theorem. First, when P is a fixed point O , where $\mathbf{r}_O = \mathbf{0}$, then

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{M}_O, \text{ where } \mathbf{M}_O = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{r}_k \times \mathbf{F}_k$$

and \mathbf{M}_O is the resultant moment relative to O . The second case arises when P is the center of mass C . In this case, as $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{G} = \mathbf{0}$, the expression for the rate of change of angular momentum simplifies to

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}} = \mathbf{M}, \text{ where } \mathbf{M} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times \mathbf{F}_k$$

and \mathbf{M} is the resultant moment relative to C . For both of these cases, we have the usual interpretation that the rate of change of angular momentum relative to a point is the resultant moment due to the forces acting on each particle. However, for the arbitrary case where P might be in motion, this interpretation does not hold.

7.7.1 Conservation of Angular Momentum

We next consider the conditions, whereby a component of the angular momentum \mathbf{H}_P in the direction of a given vector $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}(t)$ is conserved. The result parallels that for a single particle. However, here we allow for the possibility that P is in motion. For a given vector \mathbf{c} , that may be a function of time, we wish to determine when

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{H}_P \cdot \mathbf{c}) = 0.$$

Using the previous results, we find that for this conservation it is necessary and sufficient that

$$(\mathbf{M}_P - \mathbf{v}_P \times \mathbf{G}) \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_P \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0.$$

For a given problem and a specific point P , it is very difficult to find \mathbf{c} such that this equation holds. In most posed problems at the undergraduate level, P is either the center of mass C or an origin O and $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{E}_z$.

One of the simplest examples of conservation of angular momentum for a system of particles is the example shown in Fig. 7.3. Referring to Section 7.3, the angular momentum for this system relative to its center of mass is

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} (r^2 \dot{\theta}) \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Computing \mathbf{M} for this system:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M} &= (\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}) \times (-m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{F}_{s_1}) + (\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}) \times (-m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{F}_{s_2}) \\ &= -\frac{m_2 r}{m_1 + m_2} \mathbf{e}_r \times (-m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{F}_{s_1}) + \frac{m_1 r}{m_1 + m_2} \mathbf{e}_r \times (-m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{F}_{s_2}) \\ &= \mathbf{0}.\end{aligned}$$

Here, we used the facts that \mathbf{F}_{s_2} and \mathbf{F}_{s_1} are both parallel to \mathbf{e}_r and the moments due to the gravitational forces cancel out. In conclusion, $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{0}$ and \mathbf{H} is conserved. For the system of particles, this implies that the product $r^2 \dot{\theta}$ is constant throughout the motion. If we were to replace the spring with a rigid rod of length ℓ , then we would find that $\dot{\theta}$ would be constant.⁶

7.8 A System of Four Particles

The main class of problems where angular momentum conservation is useful is the mechanism shown in Fig. 7.6. Here, four particles are attached to a vertical axle, by springs of stiffness K_i and unstretched length ℓ_{0_i} ($i = 1, 2, 3,$ or 4). The particles are free to move on smooth horizontal rails. The rails and axle are free to rotate about the vertical with an angular speed ω . We now examine why $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved in this problem.

7.8.1 Kinematics

For each of the four particles, one defines a cylindrical polar coordinate system $\{r_i, \theta_i, z_i\}$. In particular, $d\theta_i/dt = \omega$, $\theta_2 - \theta_1 = \pi/2$, $\theta_3 - \theta_2 = \pi/2$, $\theta_4 - \theta_3 = \pi/2$, and $\theta_1 - \theta_4 = \pi/2$. We then have some familiar results:

$$\mathbf{r}_i = r_i \mathbf{e}_{r_i} + z_0 \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{v}_i = \dot{r}_i \mathbf{e}_{r_i} + r_i \omega \mathbf{e}_{\theta_i},$$

where $z_0 = 0$. The angular momentum of the system relative to the fixed point O is easily calculated using the definition of this angular momentum to be

$$\mathbf{H}_O = (m_1 r_1^2 + m_2 r_2^2 + m_3 r_3^2 + m_4 r_4^2) \omega \mathbf{E}_z.$$

⁶ A closely related example involving the tossing of a rigid rod into the air is discussed in Section 9.1.5 on Page 210.

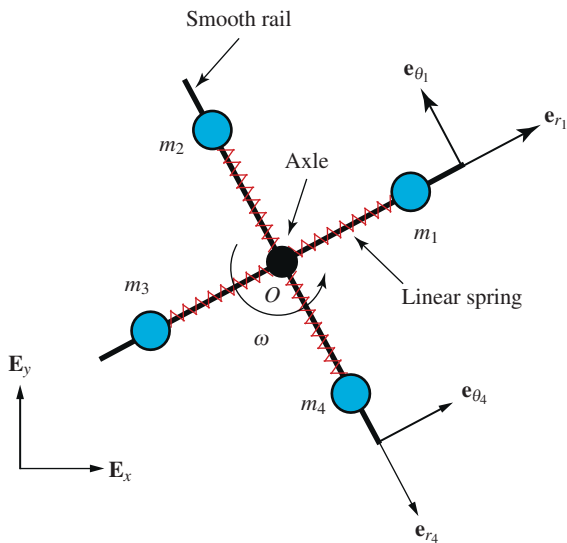


Fig. 7.6 A system of four particles.

7.8.2 Forces and Balance Laws

Leaving the free-body diagrams as an exercise, the resultant force on each particle is

$$\mathbf{F}_i = -K_i(r_i - \ell_{0i})\mathbf{e}_{r_i} + (N_{\theta_i})\mathbf{e}_{\theta_i} + (N_{i_z} - m_i g)\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where $i = 1, 2, 3, \text{ or } 4$.

From $\mathbf{F}_i = m_i \mathbf{a}_i$, one finds that $N_{i_z} = m_i g$, as expected. Performing a balance of angular momentum relative to O of the rails and axle in the \mathbf{E}_z direction, we find, on ignoring the inertias of the rails and axle, that if there is no applied moment in the \mathbf{E}_z direction, then⁷

$$r_1 N_{\theta_1} + r_2 N_{\theta_2} + r_3 N_{\theta_3} + r_4 N_{\theta_4} = 0.$$

⁷ Strictly speaking, the axle and rails constitute a rigid body, so this result becomes clearer when we deal with kinematics of rigid bodies later on.

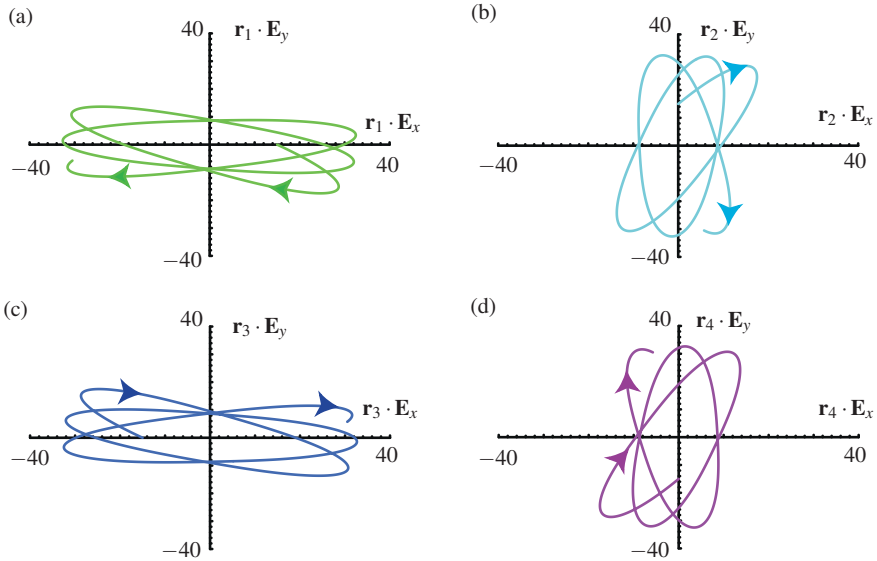


Fig. 7.7 An example of the motions of the four particles for the system shown in Fig. 7.6: (a) motion of m_1 , (b) motion of m_2 , (c) motion of m_3 , and (d) motion of m_4 .

7.8.3 Analysis

We are now in a position to show that $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z) &= \sum_{k=1}^4 (\mathbf{r}_k \times \mathbf{F}_k) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^4 (\mathbf{r}_k \times (-K_k(r_k - \ell_{0k})\mathbf{e}_{r_k} + N_{\theta_k}\mathbf{e}_{\theta_k})) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \\ &= r_1 N_{\theta_1} + r_2 N_{\theta_2} + r_3 N_{\theta_3} + r_4 N_{\theta_4} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = (m_1 r_1^2 + m_2 r_2^2 + m_3 r_3^2 + m_4 r_4^2) \omega$$

is constant. Here, if one knows the locations of the particles and the speed ω at one instant, then, for example, given the locations of the particles at a later time one can determine ω .

An example of the motion of the system of four particles where \mathbf{H}_O is conserved is shown in Fig. 7.7. This figure was obtained by numerically integrating the \mathbf{e}_{r_i} components of the balances of linear momenta for each of the four particles, and using the conservation of \mathbf{H}_O to determine ω . Integrating ω with respect to time then provides $\theta_{1,2,3,4}(t)$.

7.9 Work, Energy, and Conservative Forces

We first recall that for each particle in a system of n particles, we have the work-energy theorem: $\dot{T}_k = \mathbf{F}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k$. Recalling that the kinetic energy T of the system of particles is the sum of the individual kinetic energies, one immediately has the work-energy theorem for the system of particles:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k.$$

We can start here and, paralleling the developments of Chapter 5, develop a theorem for the conservation of the total energy of the system of particles. To do this, it is convenient to decompose each \mathbf{F}_k into the sum of conservative and nonconservative parts:

$$\mathbf{F}_k = \mathbf{F}_{nc_k} + \mathbf{F}_{c_k}, \quad \mathbf{F}_{c_k} = -\frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}_k},$$

where $U = U(\mathbf{r}_1, \dots, \mathbf{r}_n)$ is the total potential energy of the system. For future reference, we note that

$$\dot{U} = \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}_1} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}_n} \cdot \mathbf{v}_n.$$

Substituting for the forces in the work-energy theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dT}{dt} &= \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{F}_{c_k} + \mathbf{F}_{nc_k}) \cdot \mathbf{v}_k \\ &= - \left(\underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\partial U}{\partial \mathbf{r}_k} \cdot \mathbf{v}_k}_{= \dot{U}} \right) + \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_{nc_k} \cdot \mathbf{v}_k. \end{aligned}$$

Taking \dot{U} to the left-hand side and defining the total energy $E = T + U$, we conclude that

$$\dot{E} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_{nc_k} \cdot \mathbf{v}_k.$$

This alternative form of the work-energy theorem is very useful in applications. We now turn to these applications.

7.9.1 Two Blocks with a Rough Interface

The first example we consider has friction forces that serve to dissipate energy. Consider the blocks shown in Fig. 7.8. Here, a block of mass m_2 moves on the rough upper surface of the block of mass m_1 . The latter is free to move on a smooth hori-

zontal surface. An external force $P\mathbf{E}_x$ acts on the block of mass m_1 . We model both blocks as particles of mass m_1 and m_2 , respectively, and assume they are in relative motion. With the help of a Cartesian coordinate system, we find the following representations:

$$\mathbf{r}_1 = x_1\mathbf{E}_x + y_{10}\mathbf{E}_y + z_1\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{r}_2 = x_2\mathbf{E}_x + y_{20}\mathbf{E}_y + z_2\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where y_{10} and y_{20} are constants.

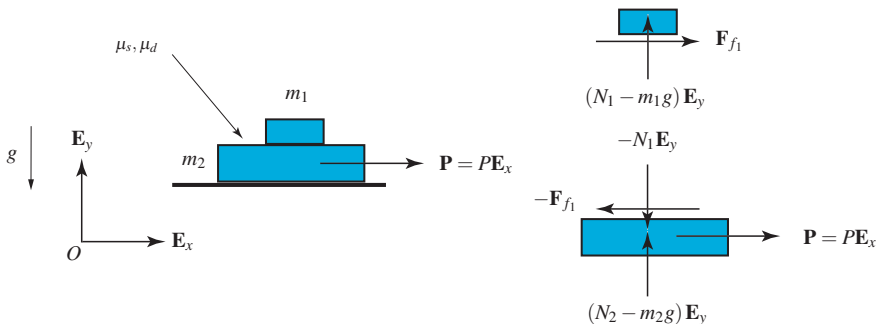


Fig. 7.8 A block of mass m_2 is free to move on a smooth horizontal surface and is acted upon by an applied force $P\mathbf{E}_x$. On top of this block, a block of mass m_1 is free to move on the rough upper surface of the block m_2 . The free-body diagrams for the mass particles modeling the blocks are also shown in this figure.

The friction force \mathbf{F}_{f_1} acting on m_1 seeks to diminish the motion of m_1 relative to m_2 :

$$\mathbf{F}_{f_1} = -\mu_d |N_1| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_1}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_1}\|}, \quad \mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_1} = \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 = (\dot{x}_1 - \dot{x}_2)\mathbf{E}_x + (\dot{z}_1 - \dot{z}_2)\mathbf{E}_z.$$

On the other hand, the friction force \mathbf{F}_{f_2} acting on m_2 seeks to diminish the motion of m_2 relative to m_1 :

$$\mathbf{F}_{f_2} = -\mu_d |N_1| \frac{\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_2}}{\|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_2}\|}, \quad \mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_2} = \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1 = -\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}_1}.$$

Observe that \mathbf{F}_{f_2} and \mathbf{F}_{f_1} are equal and opposite: $\mathbf{F}_{f_1} = -\mathbf{F}_{f_2}$.

If $\mathbf{P} = P\mathbf{E}_x$ is a constant, then it is a conservative force with a potential energy $-\mathbf{P} \cdot \mathbf{r}_2$. In this case, the total energy of the system is

$$E = \frac{m_1}{2} (\dot{x}_1^2 + \dot{z}_1^2) + \frac{m_2}{2} (\dot{x}_2^2 + \dot{z}_2^2) - Px_2.$$

The friction forces act to dissipate energy as they attempt to reduce the motion of m_1 relative to m_2 . To see this result, we use the work-energy theorem:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{E} &= \mathbf{F}_{f_1} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{F}_{f_2} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 + N_1 \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + (N_2 - N_1) \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 \\ &= \mathbf{F}_{f_1} \cdot (\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}1} = \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= -\mu_d |N_1| \|\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}1}\| \\ &\leq 0.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, $\dot{E} \leq 0$. This fact proves our earlier statement.

7.9.2 Two Particles Connected by a Telescoping Rod

As our second example, consider the system of two particles shown in Fig. 7.9(a). The particles are connected by a rigid massless rod whose length $\ell = \ell(t)$. We focus attention on the combined mechanical power of the nonconservative tension forces \mathbf{F}_{t_1} and \mathbf{F}_{t_2} connecting these two particles. The tension forces are parallel to the rod:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{F}_{t_1} &= S \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|}, \\ \mathbf{F}_{t_2} &= S \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2}{\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\|} = -\mathbf{F}_{t_1}.\end{aligned}$$

It is prudent to note the identities⁸

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 &= \frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{x}), & \|\mathbf{x}\| \frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{x}\| &= \mathbf{x} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}, \\ \frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{x}\| &= \frac{\mathbf{x} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|}.\end{aligned}$$

Applying the last of these identities to $\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1$ where $\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\| = \ell(t)$, we find that

$$\frac{(\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1)}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} = \frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\| = \dot{\ell}.$$

⁸ These identities were discussed earlier in Section 5.5.2.

We now compute the combined mechanical power of the tension forces and appeal to the previous result:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_{t_1} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{F}_{t_2} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 &= S \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + S \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2}{\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\|} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 \\ &= -S \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1) \\ &= -S\dot{\ell}. \end{aligned}$$

In conclusion, if $\dot{\ell} \neq 0$, then the combined power of the tension forces is nonzero. This result is expected: $-S\dot{\ell}$ is the power that must be supplied by the mechanism used to telescope the rod. The exact tension $S(t)$ for a given motion of the system can only be determined from $\mathbf{F}_1 = m_1 \ddot{\mathbf{r}}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2 = m_2 \ddot{\mathbf{r}}_2$.

If ℓ is constant, which it is in a number of pendulum problems, then the combined power is zero and the tension force in the rod does not effect energy conservation in the system. In this case, the tension force in the rod is perpendicular to the relative velocity vector $\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1$ and so the combined power of the tension forces vanishes. We shall see an equivalent calculation of the power where we use the representation $\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1 = \ell \mathbf{e}_r$ in our forthcoming discussion of energy conservation in a cart pendulum system on Page 165.

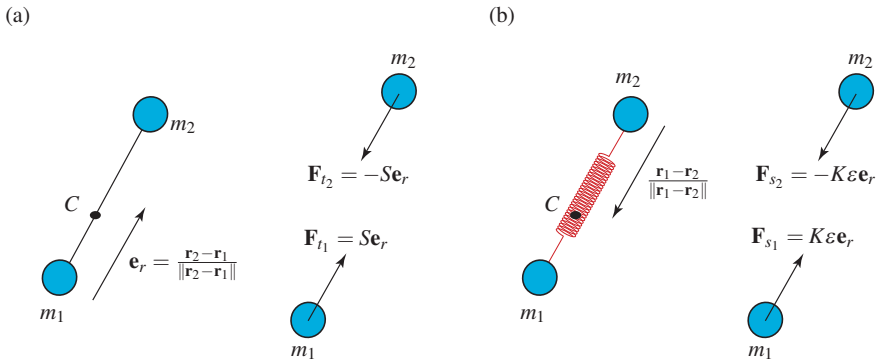


Fig. 7.9 (a) A pair of particles connected by a massless rigid rod of length $\ell = \ell(t)$. (b) A pair of particles connected by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . The tension forces exerted by the rod on the particles and the spring forces exerted on the particles are also shown. Here, the extension of the spring is $\epsilon = \|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\| - \ell_0$.

7.9.3 Two Particles Connected by a Linear Spring

Our next example is the system of two particles shown in Fig. 7.9(b). The particles are connected by a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . We focus attention on the combined mechanical power of the conservative forces \mathbf{F}_{s_1} and \mathbf{F}_{s_2} connecting these two particles. The spring forces have the representations

$$\mathbf{F}_{s_1} = -K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2}{\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\|}, \quad \mathbf{F}_{s_2} = -K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} = -\mathbf{F}_{s_1},$$

where the extension of the spring is

$$\varepsilon = \|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\| - \ell_0 = \|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\| - \ell_0.$$

We will apply the following identity to compute $\dot{\varepsilon}$:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{x}\| = \frac{\mathbf{x} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}}{\|\mathbf{x}\|}$$

by first applying it to $\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1$:

$$\frac{(\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1)}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} = \frac{d}{dt} \|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|.$$

As ℓ_0 is constant,

$$\dot{\varepsilon} = \frac{d}{dt} (\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\| - \ell_0) = \frac{(\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1)}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|}.$$

We now compute the combined mechanical power of the spring forces and appeal to the previous result:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_{s_1} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{F}_{s_2} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 &= -K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2}{\|\mathbf{r}_1 - \mathbf{r}_2\|} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 - K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 \\ &= -K\varepsilon \underbrace{\frac{\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1}{\|\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1\|} \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1)}_{=d\varepsilon/dt} \\ &= -\frac{d}{dt} \left(U_s = \frac{K}{2} \varepsilon^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

In conclusion, the combined power of the spring forces is $-\dot{U}_s$ where $U_s = K\varepsilon^2/2$ is the potential energy of the spring. This expected result implies that the combined action of the spring forces provides a potential energy to the system of particles and contributes to energy conservation. An alternative proof of this conservation where we use the representation $\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1 = r\mathbf{e}_r$ will be presented in the next example.

7.9.4 The Cart and the Pendulum

We first consider the system of two particles discussed in Section 7.6. For this system, the work-energy theorem gives

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = (\mathbf{F}_{s_1} - m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{N}_1) \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + (\mathbf{F}_{s_2} - m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{N}_2) \cdot \mathbf{v}_2.$$

Now, the normal forces are perpendicular to the velocities: $\mathbf{N}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{N}_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 = 0$. Furthermore, as $\mathbf{F}_{s_2} = -\mathbf{F}_{s_1} = -K(r - \ell_0) \mathbf{e}_r$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_{s_1} \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{F}_{s_2} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 &= K(r - \ell_0) \mathbf{e}_r \cdot (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= -K(r - \ell_0) \mathbf{e}_r \cdot (\dot{r} \mathbf{e}_r + r \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta) \\ &= -K(r - \ell_0) \dot{r} \\ &= -\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{K}{2} (r - \ell_0)^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

In summary,

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = -\frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{K}{2} (r - \ell_0)^2 + m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}_1 + m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}_2 \right).$$

It follows that the total energy of the system of particles is conserved:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(E = T + \frac{K}{2} (r - \ell_0)^2 + m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}_1 + m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}_2 \right) = 0.$$

We can modify the cart–pendulum system by replacing the spring with a rigid massless rod of constant length ℓ . The total energy of the modified system will again be conserved. We now show this. For the modified system, one has the kinematical results

$$\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1 = \ell \mathbf{e}_r, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1 = \ell \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta, \quad (\mathbf{r}_2 - \mathbf{r}_1) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1) = 0.$$

Starting from the work-energy theorem:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = (\mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r - m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{N}_1) \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + (-\mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r - m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{N}_2) \cdot \mathbf{v}_2.$$

Here, $\mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r$ is the tension force in the rod: $\mathbf{F}_{t_1} = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r$ and $\mathbf{F}_{t_2} = -\mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r$. Again, the normal forces are perpendicular to the velocity vectors and, with the help of the kinematical results above, we can easily conclude energy conservation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dE}{dt} &= \frac{d}{dt} (T + m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}_1 + m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \mathbf{r}_2) = \mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r \cdot (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= -\mathbf{S} \mathbf{e}_r \cdot (\ell \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_\theta) \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the tension force does work on each of the particles. However, its combined power is zero. Geometrically, $\mathbf{S}\mathbf{e}_r \perp \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}_1 = \ell\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$.

7.9.5 A System of Four Particles

Our final example is the system discussed in Section 7.8. Here, the work-energy theorem is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dT}{dt} &= \sum_{i=1}^4 \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^4 \left(-K_i(r_i - \ell_{0_i}) \mathbf{e}_{r_i} + (N_{\theta_i}) \mathbf{e}_{\theta_i} + (N_{i_z} - m_i g) \mathbf{E}_z \right) \cdot \mathbf{v}_i.\end{aligned}$$

Simplifying the right-hand side of this equation, we obtain the result

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \sum_{i=1}^4 \left(-K_i(r_i - \ell_{0_i}) \dot{r}_i + (r_i N_{\theta_i}) \omega \right).$$

We note that

$$K_i(r_i - \ell_{0_i}) \dot{r}_i = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{K_i}{2} (r_i - \ell_{0_i})^2 \right).$$

Furthermore, after recalling the result that

$$r_1 N_{\theta_1} + r_2 N_{\theta_2} + r_3 N_{\theta_3} + r_4 N_{\theta_4} = 0,$$

we conclude that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(E = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^4 m_i \mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i + K_i (\|\mathbf{r}_i\| - \ell_{0_i})^2 \right) = 0.$$

In other words, the total energy of the system is conserved.

7.9.6 Comment

In problems involving systems of particles, one uses energy conservation in an identical manner as in dealing with a single particle. A subtle feature of systems of particles is that the energy of the individual particles may not be conserved, but the sum of their energies is. This feature is present in the examples discussed above. It is a good exercise to repeat the analyses of energy conservation for the examples we have just considered using the alternative form of the work-energy theorem: $\dot{E} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_{nc_k} \cdot \mathbf{v}_k$.

7.10 Summary

This chapter was devoted to the kinematics and kinetics of a system of n particles. The first new concept that was introduced was the center of mass C of the system of particles:

$$\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{r}_k,$$

where $m = \sum_{k=1}^n m_k$ is the total mass of the system of particles. We then described how the linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the system of particles was equal to the sum of their linear momenta:

$$\mathbf{G} = m\mathbf{v} = m\dot{\mathbf{r}} = \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k.$$

Following this, the angular momentum \mathbf{H}_P of the system of particles was shown to be the angular momentum of the center of mass plus the angular momentum \mathbf{H} of the system of particles relative to their center of mass:

$$\mathbf{H}_P = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}_P) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k = (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times m\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{H},$$

where the angular momentum \mathbf{H} has two equivalent representations:

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k \mathbf{v}_k = \sum_{k=1}^n (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) \times m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}).$$

Finally, the kinetic energy T of the system of particles was defined to be the sum of the kinetic energies of the individual particles:

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k \mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k = \frac{1}{2} m \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}).$$

In the expressions for T given above, we have also recorded the expression for the kinetic energy in terms of the kinetic energy of the center of mass and the “relative” kinetic energy of the particles relative to the center of mass.

Once the kinematical quantities for a system of particles were defined, their kinetics was discussed. By combining the balances of linear momentum for each particle, it was shown that

$$\mathbf{F} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_k = \dot{\mathbf{G}} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}.$$

This equation was used in Section 7.5 to establish a linear momentum conservation result. The following angular momentum theorems were established in Section 7.7:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{M}_O, \quad \dot{\mathbf{H}} = \mathbf{M},$$

where O is a fixed point. These results were then used to show when a component of an angular momentum was conserved.

In Section 7.9, the work-energy theorem for a system of particles was discussed:

$$\dot{T} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_k.$$

This theorem was the starting point for proving energy conservation for systems of particles. From this theorem, it was shown that

$$\dot{E} = \sum_{k=1}^n \mathbf{F}_{nc_k} \cdot \mathbf{v}_k,$$

where \mathbf{F}_{nc_k} is the nonconservative force acting on the k th particle and E is the total energy of the system of particles.

7.11 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 7.1: Starting from the definition of the position vector of the center of mass, show that

$$\sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{r}_k - \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{0}, \quad \sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}.$$

Where were these identities used in this chapter?

Exercise 7.2: Starting from the definition of the angular momentum of a system of particles relative to a point P , prove that

$$\mathbf{H}_P = (\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_P) \times m\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{H}.$$

Exercise 7.3: Starting from the definition of the kinetic energy T of a system of particles, show that

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^n m_k (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{v}_k - \mathbf{v}).$$

Using this result, show that the kinetic energy of a system of particles is not, in general, equal to the kinetic energy of the center of mass.

Exercise 7.4: Consider two particles that are free to move on a horizontal surface $z = 0$. Vertical gravitational forces $-m_1 g \mathbf{E}_z$ and $-m_2 g \mathbf{E}_z$ act on the respective par-

ticles. The position vectors of the particles are

$$\mathbf{r}_1 = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{r}_2 = \mathbf{r}_1 + r\mathbf{e}_r.$$

Derive an expression for the position vector \mathbf{r} of the center of mass C of this system of particles. Verify your answer by examining the limiting cases that m_1 is much larger than m_2 and vice versa.

Exercise 7.5: Consider the system of particles discussed in Exercise 7.4. Suppose the particles are connected by a linear spring of stiffness K and unstretched length ℓ_0 . Show that the linear momenta $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$ and $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y$ are conserved. What do these results imply about the motion of the center of mass C of this system of particles?

Exercise 7.6: For the system of particles discussed in Exercise 7.5, prove that $\mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved. What does this result imply about $\dot{\theta}$?

Exercise 7.7: Consider the system of particles discussed in Exercise 7.5. Starting from the work-energy theorem, prove that the total energy E of the system of particles is conserved. Here,

$$E = \frac{1}{2}(m_1\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_1 + m_2\mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2) + \frac{K}{2}(r - \ell_0)^2.$$

Exercise 7.8: For the cart and pendulum system discussed in Section 7.6, show that $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$ and the total energy E are still conserved if the spring is replaced by an inextensible string of length ℓ .

Exercise 7.9: Consider the system of four particles discussed in Section 7.8. If one had the ability to measure r_1, r_2, r_3, r_4 , and ω for this system, how would one verify that $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ was conserved?

Exercise 7.10: Referring to the system of four particles discussed in Section 7.8, what are the \mathbf{e}_{r_i} and \mathbf{e}_{θ_i} components of the balances of linear momenta for each of the four particles? How could the resulting differential equations and conservation of \mathbf{H}_O be used to compute the motions of the four particles (cf. Fig. 7.7)?

Part III
Dynamics of a Single Rigid Body

Chapter 8

Planar Kinematics of Rigid Bodies



TOPICS

Background material on the planar kinematics of rigid bodies is presented in this chapter. In particular, we show how to establish certain useful representations for the velocity and acceleration vectors of any material point of a rigid body. We also discuss the angular velocity vector $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ of a rigid body. These concepts are illustrated using three important applications: mechanisms, rolling rigid bodies, and sliding rigid bodies. Finally, we discuss the linear \mathbf{G} and angular ($\mathbf{H}, \mathbf{H}_O, \mathbf{H}_A$) momenta of rigid bodies and the inertias that are used to relate the angular momentum \mathbf{H} and the angular velocity vector $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ of the rigid body.¹

8.1 The Motion of a Rigid Body

8.1.1 General Considerations

A body \mathcal{B} is a collection of material points (mass particles or particles). We denote a material point by X . The position of the material point X , relative to a fixed origin, at time t is denoted by \mathbf{x} (see Fig. 8.1). The present (or current) configuration κ_t of the body is a smooth, one-to-one, onto function that has a continuous inverse. It maps material points X of \mathcal{B} to points in three-dimensional Euclidean space: $\mathbf{x} = \kappa_t(X)$. As the location \mathbf{x} of the particle X changes with time, this function depends on time, hence the subscript t .

¹ The details presented here are far more advanced than those in most undergraduate texts. This is partially because the presentation is influenced by the recent renaissance in continuum mechanics. We mention in particular the influential works by Beatty [6] and Casey [19–22], who used the fruits of this era to present enlightening treatments of rigid body mechanics. This chapter is based on the aforementioned works and Gurtin [46, Chapter 4].

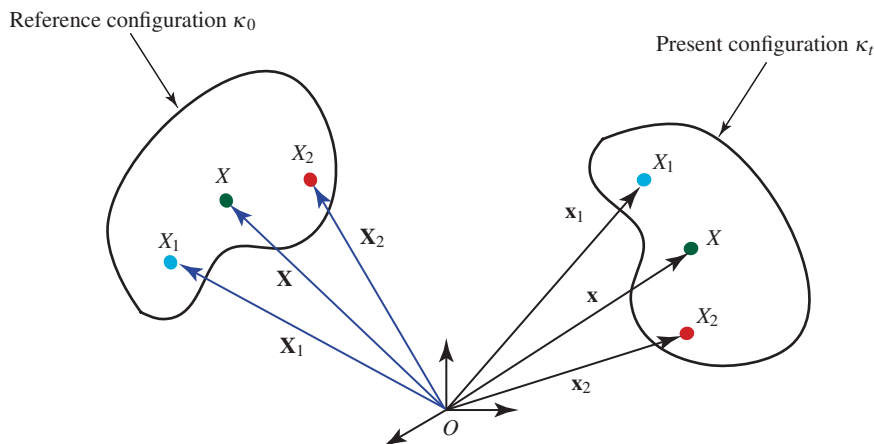


Fig. 8.1 Configurations of a body \mathcal{B} .

It is convenient to define a fixed reference configuration κ_0 of the body. This configuration is defined by the function $\mathbf{X} = \kappa_0(X)$. Because this function is invertible, we can use the position vector \mathbf{X} of a material point X in the reference configuration to uniquely define the material point of interest and define the motion of the body as a function of \mathbf{X} and t :

$$\mathbf{x} = \chi(\mathbf{X}, t).$$

Notice that the motion of a material point of \mathcal{B} depends on time and the material point of interest. To see this, consider a compact disk spinning in a CD player. The motion of a particle on the outer rim of the disk is clearly different from the motion of a particle on the inner rim of the disk. Furthermore, the place in space that each of these particles occupies depends on the time t of interest.

The previous developments are general and are used in continuum mechanics, a field that encompasses the mechanics of solids and fluids.

8.1.2 Rigidity

For rigid bodies, the nature of the function $\chi(\mathbf{X}, t)$ can be simplified dramatically. We refer to the rigid motion as $\mathbf{x} = \chi_R(\mathbf{X}, t)$. First, for rigid bodies the distance between *any* two mass particles, say X_1 and X_2 , remains constant for all motions. Mathematically, this is equivalent to saying that

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| = \|\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2\|.$$

Secondly, the motion of the rigid body preserves orientations. Using a classic result,² it can be proven that the motion of a rigid body has the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{12}(t) & Q_{13}(t) \\ Q_{21}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{23}(t) \\ Q_{31}(t) & Q_{32}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

Here, the matrix whose components are Q_{11}, \dots, Q_{33} is a proper orthogonal or rotation matrix.

To abbreviate the subsequent developments, we introduce notations for a matrix, its transpose, and the identity matrix:

$$\mathbf{Q} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{12}(t) & Q_{13}(t) \\ Q_{21}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{23}(t) \\ Q_{31}(t) & Q_{32}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{Q}^T = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{21}(t) & Q_{31}(t) \\ Q_{12}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{32}(t) \\ Q_{13}(t) & Q_{23}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{I} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The relations satisfied by any rotation (or proper orthogonal) matrix \mathbf{Q} can be expressed compactly as

$$\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^T = \mathbf{I}, \quad \det(\mathbf{Q}) = 1.$$

In words, the inverse of a rotation (or proper orthogonal) matrix is its transpose, and the determinant of a rotation matrix is one. The relations $\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^T = \mathbf{I}$ can be interpreted as six conditions on the nine components of \mathbf{Q} . It follows that only three of the nine components Q_{ik} are independent. One then has the problem of parametrizing \mathbf{Q} in terms of three independent parameters. There are several methods of doing this, Euler angles being the most popular.³ Later, we will consider a particular family of rotation matrices parameterized by a single angle of rotation θ . Finally, we note that $\det(\mathbf{Q}) = 1$ implies that \mathbf{Q} preserves orientations.

Because \mathbf{Q} is a rotation matrix, we note that⁴

$$0 = \frac{d\mathbf{I}}{dt} = \frac{d(\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^T)}{dt} = \frac{d\mathbf{Q}}{dt}\mathbf{Q}^T + \mathbf{Q}\frac{d\mathbf{Q}^T}{dt}.$$

That is,

$$\frac{d\mathbf{Q}}{dt}\mathbf{Q}^T = -\mathbf{Q}\frac{d\mathbf{Q}^T}{dt} = -\left(\frac{d\mathbf{Q}}{dt}\mathbf{Q}^T\right)^T.$$

² The proof of this result is beyond the scope of this course. One proof may be found in Gurtin [46, Pages 49–50]. A good discussion on the relationship between this result with Euler's theorem on the motion of a rigid body and Chasles' theorem can be found in Beatty [6] (see also Beatty [5]). Euler's representation of rigid body motion can be seen in Euler [33, Pages 30–32].

³ Details on these parametrizations can be found, for example, in Beatty [6], Greenwood [45], O'Reilly [70], Shuster [88], Symeand Griffith [95], and Whittaker [100].

⁴ Recall that the transpose of a product of two matrices \mathbf{A} and \mathbf{B} is $(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{B})^T = \mathbf{B}^T\mathbf{A}^T$. Furthermore, a matrix \mathbf{C} is symmetric if $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{C}^T$ and is skew-symmetric if $\mathbf{C} = -\mathbf{C}^T$.

Hence, $\dot{Q}Q^T$ is a skew-symmetric matrix:

$$\dot{Q}Q^T = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\Omega_{21} & \Omega_{13} \\ \Omega_{21} & 0 & -\Omega_{32} \\ -\Omega_{13} & \Omega_{32} & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The three components Ω_{21} , Ω_{13} , and Ω_{32} can be expressed in terms of the components of Q and its time derivatives, but we leave this as an exercise.

8.1.3 Angular Velocity and Acceleration Vectors

Returning to the discussion of a rigid body, we recall that

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{12}(t) & Q_{13}(t) \\ Q_{21}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{23}(t) \\ Q_{31}(t) & Q_{32}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

Because the matrix Q is a rotation matrix, we can easily invert this relationship by multiplying both sides of it by the transpose of Q :

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{21}(t) & Q_{31}(t) \\ Q_{12}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{32}(t) \\ Q_{13}(t) & Q_{23}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

Now let us examine the relationship between the velocity and acceleration vectors of two material points of the body. A simple differentiation, where we note that \mathbf{X}_1 and \mathbf{X}_2 are constant, gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{Q}_{11}(t) & \dot{Q}_{12}(t) & \dot{Q}_{13}(t) \\ \dot{Q}_{21}(t) & \dot{Q}_{22}(t) & \dot{Q}_{23}(t) \\ \dot{Q}_{31}(t) & \dot{Q}_{32}(t) & \dot{Q}_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

Here, $\mathbf{v}_1 = \dot{\mathbf{x}}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \dot{\mathbf{x}}_2$. We next substitute for \mathbf{X}_1 and \mathbf{X}_2 and use the earlier observation about $\dot{Q}Q^T$ to find that

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\Omega_{21} & \Omega_{13} \\ \Omega_{21} & 0 & -\Omega_{32} \\ -\Omega_{13} & \Omega_{32} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

We can write this important result in vector notation:

$$\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2),$$

where $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is known as the *angular velocity vector* of the rigid body:

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \Omega_{32}\mathbf{E}_x + \Omega_{13}\mathbf{E}_y + \Omega_{21}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

You should notice that this vector depends on time and not on the particle of the body: it has the same value for each X . This is because $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is obtained by differentiating \mathbf{Q} and the matrix \mathbf{Q} is a function of t only.

We can easily find the relationships between the accelerations \mathbf{a}_1 and \mathbf{a}_2 of the material points X_1 and X_2 by differentiating the relationship between their velocities:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a}_1 - \mathbf{a}_2 &= \dot{\mathbf{v}}_1 - \dot{\mathbf{v}}_2 \\ &= \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2)).\end{aligned}$$

Here, $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ is the *angular acceleration vector* of the rigid body:

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}.$$

8.1.4 Fixed Axis Rotation

All of the aforementioned developments are general. In an introductory undergraduate engineering dynamics course one considers a special case. In this special case, the axis of rotation is fixed and is normally taken to coincide with \mathbf{E}_z .

For this special case, the rotation matrix \mathbf{Q} can be parameterized by a single angle θ :

$$\mathbf{Q} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The angle θ represents a counterclockwise rotation of the rigid body about \mathbf{E}_z .

Let us now establish the angular velocity and acceleration vectors associated with this rotation matrix:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{Q}}\mathbf{Q}^T &= \dot{\theta} \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(\theta) & -\cos(\theta) & 0 \\ \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) & 0 \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \dot{\theta} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

Hence, examining the components of the above matrix, we conclude that

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

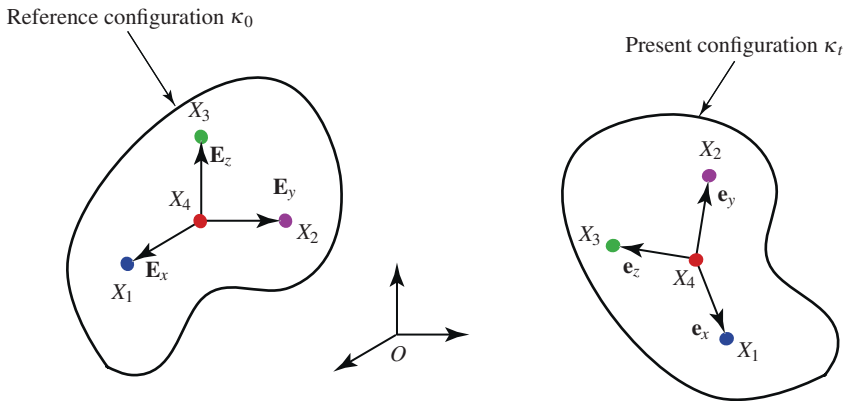


Fig. 8.2 The corotational basis $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ and the fixed Cartesian basis $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$.

8.2 Kinematical Relations and a Corotational Basis

In our previous developments we used a fixed (right-handed) Cartesian basis. It is convenient, when discussing the dynamics of rigid bodies, to introduce another basis. This basis is known as a *corotational* basis.⁵

8.2.1 The Corotational Basis

Here, we define a basis $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ that rotates with the body. As a result, it is known as a corotational basis. Our discussion of this basis follows Casey [19, 22].

Referring to Fig. 8.2, we start by picking four material points $X_1, X_2, X_3,$ and X_4 of the body. These points are chosen such that the three vectors

$$\mathbf{E}_x = \mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_4, \quad \mathbf{E}_y = \mathbf{X}_2 - \mathbf{X}_4, \quad \mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{X}_3 - \mathbf{X}_4$$

form a fixed, right-handed, Cartesian basis. We next consider the present relative locations of the four material points. Because Q preserves lengths and orientations, the three vectors $\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_4, \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_4,$ and $\mathbf{x}_3 - \mathbf{x}_4$ will also form a right-handed orthonormal basis.⁶ As a result, we define the corotational basis to be

$$\mathbf{e}_x = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_4, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_4, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{x}_3 - \mathbf{x}_4.$$

⁵ This basis is often referred to as a body-fixed frame or an embedded frame.

⁶ The proof of this result is beyond our scope here. A proof may be found in Casey [19]. For the special case of a fixed-axis rotation, we give an explicit demonstration of this result in Section 8.2.2.

Inasmuch as the corotational basis moves with the body, we can use our previous results for relative velocities in Section 8.1.3 to show that⁷

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_y, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_z.$$

Furthermore, we can differentiate these results to find that

$$\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times \mathbf{e}_x + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_x).$$

Related results hold for $\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_y$ and $\ddot{\mathbf{e}}_z$. The aforementioned relations prove useful when we establish certain kinematical results later on.

Because the set $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ is a basis, given any vector \mathbf{b} , one has the representations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} &= b_x \mathbf{e}_x + b_y \mathbf{e}_y + b_z \mathbf{e}_z \\ &= B_x \mathbf{E}_x + B_y \mathbf{E}_y + B_z \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

If \mathbf{b} is a constant vector, $\dot{\mathbf{b}} = \mathbf{0}$, then B_x , B_y , and B_z are constant. However, because the corotational basis changes with time, the constancy of \mathbf{b} does not imply that b_x , b_y , and b_z are constant. In particular,

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_x \\ \mathbf{e}_y \\ \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix} &= \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{21}(t) & Q_{31}(t) \\ Q_{12}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{32}(t) \\ Q_{13}(t) & Q_{23}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}^T} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_x \\ \mathbf{E}_y \\ \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}, \\ \begin{bmatrix} b_x \\ b_y \\ b_z \end{bmatrix} &= \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{21}(t) & Q_{31}(t) \\ Q_{12}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{32}(t) \\ Q_{13}(t) & Q_{23}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Q}^T} \begin{bmatrix} B_x \\ B_y \\ B_z \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

To establish these results, we used the relations discussed on Page 176 between the components of $\mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_1$ and $\mathbf{X}_2 - \mathbf{X}_1$.

8.2.2 The Corotational Basis for the Fixed Axis Case

As mentioned previously, for the fixed axis case, the rotation matrix \mathbf{Q} has a particularly simple form:

$$\mathbf{Q} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The angle θ represents a counterclockwise rotation of the rigid body about \mathbf{E}_z .

⁷ For example, $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_4 = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_4) = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_x$.

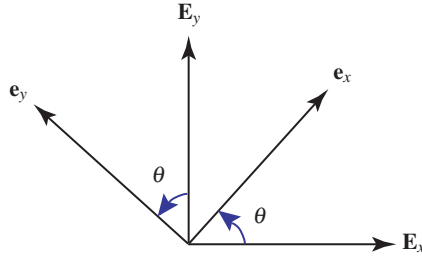


Fig. 8.3 The corotational basis vectors \mathbf{e}_x and \mathbf{e}_y for the case where the rotational motion of the rigid body is a fixed-axis rotation about \mathbf{E}_z .

Taking the aforementioned four points, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{e}_x = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{e}_x = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{e}_x = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{E}_x = \mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{E}_x = \mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{E}_x = \mathbf{X}_1 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) \\ \sin(\theta) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \\ \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{e}_y = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{e}_y = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{e}_y = \mathbf{x}_2 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{E}_y = \mathbf{X}_2 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{E}_y = \mathbf{X}_2 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{E}_y = \mathbf{X}_2 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(\theta) \\ \cos(\theta) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \\ \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{x}_3 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{x}_3 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{x}_3 - \mathbf{x}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & -\sin(\theta) & 0 \\ \sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{X}_3 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{X}_3 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{X}_3 - \mathbf{X}_4) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

In summary, we obtain the results shown graphically in Fig. 8.3:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_x \\ \mathbf{e}_y \\ \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) & 0 \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_x \\ \mathbf{E}_y \\ \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

These relations have a familiar form. It is a useful exercise to verify that the corotational basis is right handed: $\mathbf{e}_z \cdot (\mathbf{e}_x \times \mathbf{e}_y) = 1$. We also note that the components of a vector \mathbf{b} with respect to the fixed and corotational bases are related by \mathbf{Q}^T :

$$\begin{bmatrix} b_x = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x \\ b_y = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y \\ b_z = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & \sin(\theta) & 0 \\ -\sin(\theta) & \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} B_x = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ B_y = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ B_z = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

These results can be easily verified by examining $\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x$, $\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y$, and $\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{e}_z$.

For the case of a fixed axis rotation about \mathbf{E}_z , we showed previously that

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z.$$

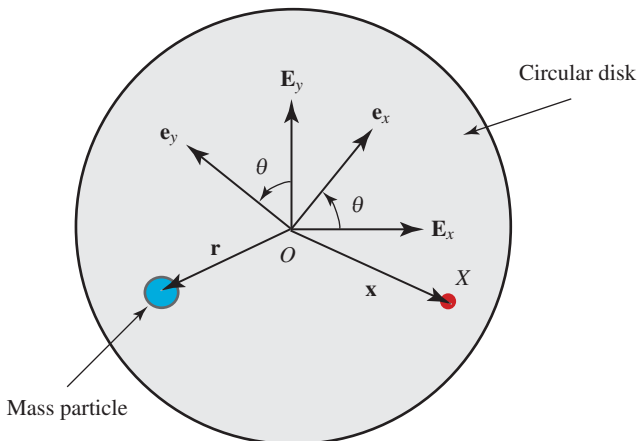


Fig. 8.4 A particle moving on a rotating disk.

We can use these results to conclude that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{e}}_x &= \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_x = \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_y, \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y &= \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_y = -\dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_x, \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z &= \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{0}. \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, we can work directly with the representations for \mathbf{e}_x , \mathbf{e}_y , and \mathbf{e}_z in terms of \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z to arrive at the same results.

8.2.3 A Particle Moving on a Rigid Body

It is convenient at this stage to consider an example. As shown in Fig. 8.4, a particle moves on the surface of a circular disk. The disk is rotating about the \mathbf{E}_z axis with an angular speed $\dot{\theta} = \omega$ and an angular acceleration $\ddot{\theta} = \alpha$. The center of the disk O is fixed. We seek to determine the velocity vector of the particle and the velocity vector of a point X of the disk.

For the example of interest, suppose that the position vector of the particle is given by the function

$$\mathbf{r} = 10t^2 \mathbf{e}_x + 20t \mathbf{e}_y.$$

Furthermore, let the position vector of X be

$$\mathbf{x} = x \mathbf{e}_x + y \mathbf{e}_y,$$

where x and y are constants.

To calculate the velocity vectors, we simply differentiate the position vectors and use our previous results on the derivatives of \mathbf{e}_x and \mathbf{e}_y :

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{r}} &= 20t\mathbf{e}_x + 10t^2\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x + 20\mathbf{e}_y + 20t\dot{\mathbf{e}}_y \\ &= 20t\mathbf{e}_x + 10t^2\omega\mathbf{e}_y + 20\mathbf{e}_y - 20t\omega\mathbf{e}_x, \\ \dot{\mathbf{x}} &= x\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x + y\dot{\mathbf{e}}_y \\ &= x\omega\mathbf{e}_y - y\omega\mathbf{e}_x.\end{aligned}$$

You should notice that

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{x}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{r}} \neq \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}.$$

The reason for these results lies in the fact that \mathbf{x} is the position vector of a point of the disk and \mathbf{r} is the position vector of a particle that moves relative to the disk.

We leave it as an exercise to determine the acceleration vectors of the particle and X .

8.3 Mechanisms

One of the main applications of the theory of rigid bodies is an analysis of the kinematics of mechanisms. Two of the most important mechanisms are the slider-crank and the four-bar linkage. In general, elements of mechanisms are deformable bodies, but a primitive analysis assumes that these elements are rigid. Here, we also assume that the motions of these elements are coplanar, but it is not very difficult to consider the more general case.⁸

As an example, consider the four-bar linkage shown in Fig. 8.5. Here, the bar AD is fixed:

$$\mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{v}_D = \mathbf{0}.$$

The motion of the bar AB is assumed to be known. In other words, θ_1 , $\dot{\theta}_1$, and $\ddot{\theta}_1$ are prescribed. The bars AD , DC , AB , and BC are interconnected by pin joints. One seeks to determine the motion of the two bars DC and BC . That is, one seeks θ_2 , $\dot{\theta}_2$, $\ddot{\theta}_2$, θ_3 , $\dot{\theta}_3$, and $\ddot{\theta}_3$ as functions of time. You should note that the angular velocity vectors of the bars AB , BC , and DC are, respectively,

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{AB} = \dot{\theta}_1\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega}_{BC} = \dot{\theta}_2\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega}_{DC} = \dot{\theta}_3\mathbf{E}_z.$$

First, the linkages are connected together:

$$\mathbf{r}_{DA} = \mathbf{r}_{BA} + \mathbf{r}_{CB} + \mathbf{r}_{DC},$$

⁸ The study of mechanisms is an important area of mechanical engineering. Our discussion here touches but a small part of it. The interested reader is referred to the textbooks of Bottema and Roth [17], Mabie and Ocvirk [62], and Paul [74] for further treatments and issues.

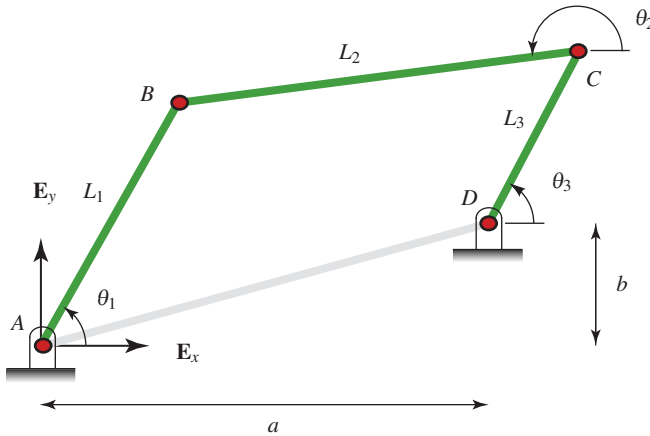


Fig. 8.5 A four-bar linkage.

where $\mathbf{r}_{DA} = \mathbf{r}_D - \mathbf{r}_A$ and so on. Introducing the angles shown in Fig. 8.5, we find that this relationship can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r}_{DA} = a\mathbf{E}_x + b\mathbf{E}_y &= L_1(\cos(\theta_1)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta_1)\mathbf{E}_y) \\ &\quad - L_2(\cos(\theta_2)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta_2)\mathbf{E}_y) - L_3(\cos(\theta_3)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta_3)\mathbf{E}_y). \end{aligned}$$

This constitutes two scalar equations for the unknown angles θ_2 and θ_3 :

$$\begin{aligned} a &= L_1 \cos(\theta_1) - L_2 \cos(\theta_2) - L_3 \cos(\theta_3), \\ b &= L_1 \sin(\theta_1) - L_2 \sin(\theta_2) - L_3 \sin(\theta_3). \end{aligned}$$

These equations are nonlinear and, in general, have multiple solutions (θ_2, θ_3) . To see this, one merely has to draw different possible configurations of the mechanism.

To obtain a second set of equations, we differentiate the position vector relationship above:

$$\mathbf{v}_{DA} = \mathbf{v}_{BA} + \mathbf{v}_{CB} + \mathbf{v}_{DC}.$$

Writing out the two scalar equations, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= -L_1 \dot{\theta}_1 \sin(\theta_1) + L_2 \dot{\theta}_2 \sin(\theta_2) + L_3 \dot{\theta}_3 \sin(\theta_3), \\ 0 &= L_1 \dot{\theta}_1 \cos(\theta_1) - L_2 \dot{\theta}_2 \cos(\theta_2) - L_3 \dot{\theta}_3 \cos(\theta_3). \end{aligned}$$

To solve these equations for the unknown velocities $\dot{\theta}_2$ and $\dot{\theta}_3$, it is convenient to write them in matrix form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} L_1 \dot{\theta}_1 \sin(\theta_1) \\ L_1 \dot{\theta}_1 \cos(\theta_1) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \sin(\theta_2) & \sin(\theta_3) \\ \cos(\theta_2) & \cos(\theta_3) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} L_2 \dot{\theta}_2 \\ L_3 \dot{\theta}_3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Inverting the matrix and using a trigonometric identity,⁹ the desired results are obtained:

$$\dot{\theta}_2 = \left(\frac{L_1 \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_3)}{L_2 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)} \right) \dot{\theta}_1, \quad \dot{\theta}_3 = \left(\frac{L_1 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}{L_3 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)} \right) \dot{\theta}_1.$$

This solution is valid provided that $\sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)$ is not equal to zero. This occurs when the bars BC and DC are parallel, and then it is not possible to determine the angular velocities of the bars DC and BC .

To establish equations to determine the angular accelerations of the bars DC and BC , we could differentiate the previous velocity vector equation to obtain

$$\mathbf{a}_{DA} = \mathbf{a}_{BA} + \mathbf{a}_{CB} + \mathbf{a}_{DC}.$$

The resulting two scalar equations, when supplemented by the two scalar position equations and two scalar velocity equations, could be used to obtain expressions for $\ddot{\theta}_2$ and $\ddot{\theta}_3$. An easier method of obtaining the desired accelerations is to differentiate the previous expressions for $\dot{\theta}_2$ and $\dot{\theta}_3$:

$$\begin{aligned} \ddot{\theta}_2 &= \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{L_1 \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_3)}{L_2 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)} \right) \dot{\theta}_1 + \left(\frac{L_1 \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_3)}{L_2 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)} \right) \ddot{\theta}_1, \\ \ddot{\theta}_3 &= \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{L_1 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}{L_3 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)} \right) \dot{\theta}_1 + \left(\frac{L_1 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}{L_3 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)} \right) \ddot{\theta}_1. \end{aligned}$$

In conclusion, given the motion of the link AB , it is possible to solve for the angular displacements, angular speeds, and angular accelerations of the bars DC and BC . To illustrate these developments, we consider a specific mechanism and use the results established in this section to determine θ_2 and θ_3 for a given $\theta_1(t) = \pi/2 + 0.5 \sin(0.5t)$. The results are shown in Fig. 8.6 and can be used to infer the angular velocities and accelerations of the links.

We note that the analysis of a slider-crank mechanism is similar to that presented here for a four-bar linkage. For the slider-crank, the six unknowns are the displacement of the slider and the angular displacement of the link connecting the slider to the crank, along with the first and second time derivatives of these quantities.

⁹ The identity that we use is $\sin(\alpha - \beta) = \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - \sin(\beta) \cos(\alpha)$. We also recall the expression for the inverse of a matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad - cb} \begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}.$$

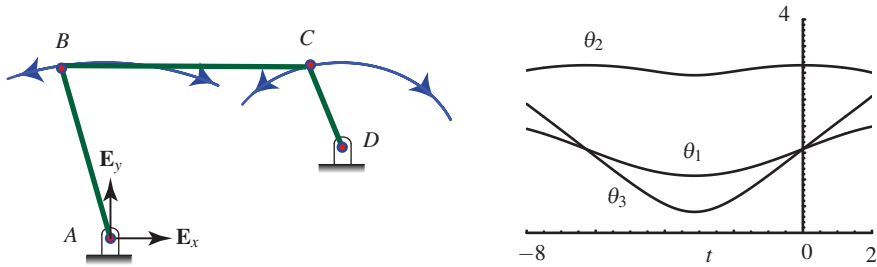


Fig. 8.6 An example of the motions of a four-bar linkage where $a = L_1 = L_2 = 10, L_3 = b = 5$. The image on the left shows the motions of the linkages, and the image on the right displays the evolution of the angles $\theta_1(t), \theta_2(t),$ and $\theta_3(t)$.

8.4 Center of Mass and Linear Momentum

In all of the previous developments, we defined the motion of one material point relative to another material point of the same body. It is convenient for later purposes to now define a particular point: the center of mass C .

We first dispense with some preliminaries. Let \mathcal{R}_0 and \mathcal{R} denote the regions of Euclidean three-space occupied by the body in its reference and present configurations, respectively. Furthermore, let \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{x} be the position vectors of a material point X of the body in its reference and present configurations, respectively (see Fig. 8.1).

8.4.1 The Center of Mass

The position vectors of the center of mass of the body in its reference and present configurations are defined by

$$\bar{\mathbf{X}} = \frac{\int_{\mathcal{R}_0} \mathbf{X} \rho_0 dV}{\int_{\mathcal{R}_0} \rho_0 dV}, \quad \bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{x} \rho dv}{\int_{\mathcal{R}} \rho dv},$$

where $\rho_0 = \rho_0(\mathbf{X})$ and $\rho = \rho(\mathbf{x}, t)$ are the mass densities per unit volume of the body in the reference and present configurations.¹⁰

We assume that the mass of the body is conserved:

$$dm = \rho_0 dV = \rho dv,$$

¹⁰ If a body is homogeneous, then ρ_0 is a constant that is independent of \mathbf{X} . Our use of the symbol ρ here should not be confused with our use of the same symbol for the radius of curvature of a space curve in Chapter 3.

$$m = \int_{\mathcal{B}_0} \rho_0 dV = \int_{\mathcal{B}} \rho dv.$$

This is the principle of mass conservation. Hence,

$$m\bar{\mathbf{X}} = \int_{\mathcal{B}_0} \mathbf{X}\rho_0 dV, \quad m\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \int_{\mathcal{B}} \mathbf{x}\rho dv.$$

In addition, one has the useful identities

$$\mathbf{0} = \int_{\mathcal{B}_0} (\mathbf{X} - \bar{\mathbf{X}})\rho_0 dV, \quad \mathbf{0} = \int_{\mathcal{B}} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}})\rho dv.$$

You should compare these expressions to those we obtained in Chapter 7 for a system of particles.

A special feature of rigid bodies is that the center of mass behaves as if it were a material point. We denote this point by C . For many bodies, such as a rigid homogeneous sphere, the center of mass corresponds to the geometric center of the sphere, whereas for others, such as a rigid circular ring, it does not correspond to a material point. It can be proven that for any material point Y of a rigid body, one has¹¹

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{12}(t) & Q_{13}(t) \\ Q_{21}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{23}(t) \\ Q_{31}(t) & Q_{32}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\bar{\mathbf{X}} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\bar{\mathbf{X}} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\bar{\mathbf{X}} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

That is, $\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \chi_R(\bar{\mathbf{X}}, t)$. Differentiating these results as in Section 8.1.3, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\mathbf{v}} - \dot{\mathbf{y}} &= \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}), \\ \bar{\mathbf{a}} - \ddot{\mathbf{y}} &= \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y})). \end{aligned}$$

Here, $\bar{\mathbf{v}}$ and $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ are the velocity and acceleration vectors of the center of mass C .

8.4.2 The Linear Momentum

We next turn to the linear momentum \mathbf{G} of a rigid body. By definition, this momentum is

$$\mathbf{G} = \int_{\mathcal{B}} \mathbf{v}\rho dv.$$

That is, the linear momentum of a rigid body is the sum of the linear momenta of its constituents. We can establish an alternative expression for \mathbf{G} using the center of

¹¹ The proof is beyond the scope of an undergraduate engineering dynamics course. For completeness, however, one proof is presented in Section 8.10.

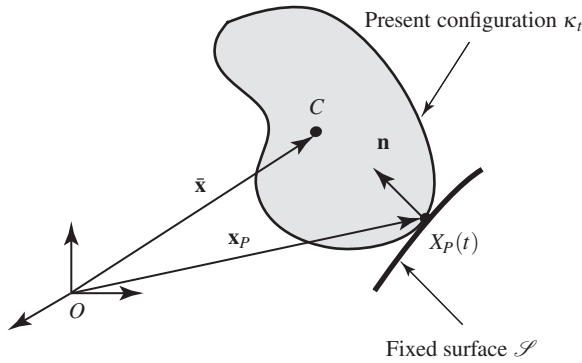


Fig. 8.7 The geometry of contact.

mass:¹²

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{G} &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{v} \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}} \frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} \rho dv \\
 &= \frac{d}{dt} \left(\int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{x} \rho dv \right) \\
 &= \frac{d}{dt} (m\bar{\mathbf{x}}).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\mathbf{G} = m\bar{\mathbf{v}}.$$

You may recall that a related result holds for a system of particles.

8.5 Kinematics of Rolling and Sliding

Many mechanical systems consist of a body in motion that is in contact with one point of another body. The resulting contact conditions are known as kinematical constraints. The discussion and description of these constraints are complicated by the fact that the particular material point of the body that is in contact changes with time.

There are two types of contact that are of interest here: rolling and sliding. The study of rolling and sliding contact is a classic area of dynamics. In particular, some

¹² Some may notice that we take the time derivative to the outside of an integral whose region of integration \mathcal{R} depends on time. This is generally not possible. However, for the integral of interest it is shown in Section 8.10 that such a manipulation is justified.

rolling rigid bodies such as the wobblestone (also known as a celt or rattleback) exhibit interesting counterintuitive dynamics.¹³

To proceed, we consider a rigid body \mathcal{B} that is in contact with a fixed surface \mathcal{S} (see Fig. 8.7). As the body moves on this fixed surface, the material point of the body that is in contact with the surface may change. We denote the material point of the body that is in contact at time t by $P = X_P(t)$. We denote the position vector of P by \mathbf{x}_P and its velocity vector by \mathbf{v}_P . Finally, the unit normal to \mathcal{S} at P is denoted by \mathbf{n} .

For any material point X of \mathcal{B} , recall that the velocity and acceleration vectors are

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v} &= \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}), \\ \mathbf{a} &= \bar{\mathbf{a}} + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}})).\end{aligned}$$

Consequently, for P , one has the relations

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}_P &= \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}), \\ \mathbf{a}_P &= \bar{\mathbf{a}} + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}})).\end{aligned}$$

For a rigid body that is sliding on the fixed surface \mathcal{S} , the component of \mathbf{v}_P in the direction of \mathbf{n} is zero:

$$\mathbf{v}_P \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0.$$

This implies the *sliding condition*:

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{n} = -(\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}})) \cdot \mathbf{n}.$$

For a rigid body that is rolling on the fixed surface \mathcal{S} , the velocity of the instantaneous point of contact P is zero:

$$\mathbf{v}_P = \mathbf{0}.$$

This implies the *rolling condition*:

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = -\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}).$$

We also note for a rolling rigid body that

$$\mathbf{a}_P = \bar{\mathbf{a}} + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}})),$$

and this acceleration vector is not necessarily $\mathbf{0}$.

¹³ The standard modern reference to this area was written by two Soviet mechanics: Neimark and Fufaev [66]. One of the prime contributors to this area was Routh [80, 81]. Indeed, the problem of determining the motion of a sphere rolling on a surface of revolution is known as Routh's problem. We also mention the interesting classic work on billiards (pool) by Coriolis [23] from 1835.

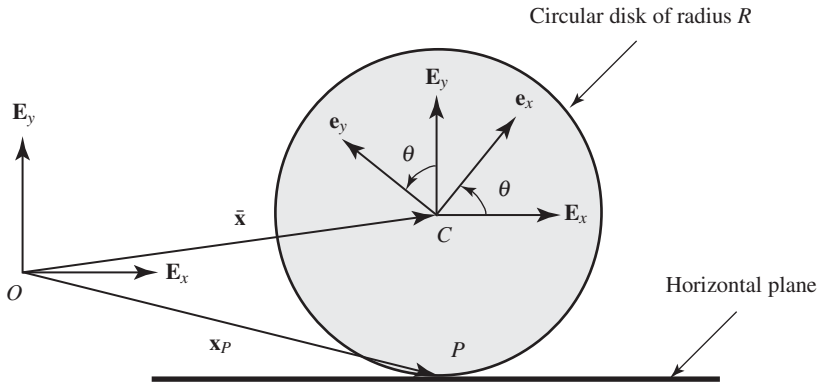


Fig. 8.8 A circular disk rolling on a horizontal plane.

8.6 Kinematics of a Rolling Circular Disk

The main examples of rolling rigid bodies are upright rolling disks and cylinders. These examples are often used as simple models for wheel–road interactions in vehicle dynamics as well as numerous examples of bearing surfaces and mechanism driving devices. Here, we focus on a circular disk. The developments for a cylinder, circular hoop, and sphere are easily inferred.¹⁴

As shown in Fig. 8.8, we consider an upright homogeneous disk of radius R that is rolling on a plane. To start, we define a corotational basis for the disk:

$$\mathbf{e}_x = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y - \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Because the motion is a fixed axis rotation,

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Furthermore, because the center of mass C of the disk is at its geometric center,

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z\mathbf{E}_z.$$

The position vector of the instantaneous point of contact P of the disk with the plane is

$$\mathbf{x}_P = \bar{\mathbf{x}} - R\mathbf{E}_y.$$

The unit normal \mathbf{n} mentioned earlier is \mathbf{E}_y for this problem.

¹⁴ For further references to, and discussions of, rolling disks and sliding disks see Borisov and Mamaev [16], Cushman et al. [26], Hermans [48], and O’Reilly [69]. References [16, 69] contain discussion of the important works on these systems by Chaplygin in 1897, Appell and Korteweg in 1900, and Vierkandt in 1892.

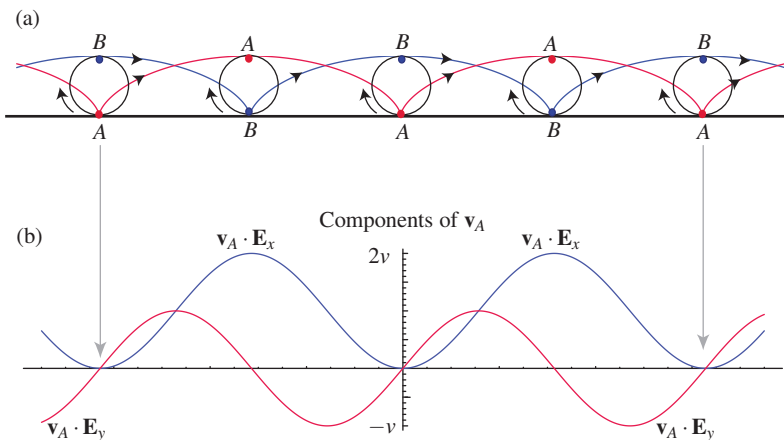


Fig. 8.9 (a) The loci of two points A and B on a disk that is rolling with a constant angular velocity $\dot{\theta} < 0$ on a horizontal surface: $\bar{\mathbf{v}} = v\mathbf{E}_x = -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x$. The \mathbf{E}_x and \mathbf{E}_y components of the velocity vector \mathbf{v}_A of the point A on the disk are shown in (b). When A coincides with the instantaneous point of contact P , then $\mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{0}$, $\mathbf{a}_A = R\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{E}_y$, and the path traced by A has a cusp.

Because the disk is rolling, $\mathbf{v}_P = \mathbf{0}$, we find that

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\mathbf{v}} &= -\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (-R\mathbf{E}_y) \\ &= -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x.\end{aligned}$$

This vector equation is equivalent to three scalar equations:

$$\dot{x} = -R\dot{\theta}, \quad \dot{y} = 0, \quad \dot{z} = 0.$$

The last two of these equations imply that the velocity of C is only in the \mathbf{E}_x direction, as expected. It follows from these equations that the motion of the center of mass is completely determined by the rotational motion of the disk:

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x = -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \bar{\mathbf{a}} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x = -R\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x.$$

Let us now examine the acceleration of the instantaneous point of contact $P = X_P(t)$. We know that the velocity vector of this point is $\mathbf{0}$. However,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a}_P &= \bar{\mathbf{a}} + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}})) \\ &= \ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (-R\mathbf{E}_y) + \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times -R\mathbf{E}_y) \\ &= R\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{E}_y.\end{aligned}$$

This acceleration is not zero because the material point X_P that is in contact with the surface changes with time.

To determine the velocity and acceleration vectors of any material point X of the rolling rigid disk, we note that

$$\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = x_1 \mathbf{e}_x + y_1 \mathbf{e}_y,$$

where x_1 and y_1 are constants. Next, we use the previous results

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}), \\ \mathbf{a} &= \bar{\mathbf{a}} + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}})). \end{aligned}$$

Because,

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \bar{\mathbf{a}} = -R\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z,$$

we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (x_1 \mathbf{e}_x + y_1 \mathbf{e}_y) \\ &= -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{\theta}(x_1 \mathbf{e}_y - y_1 \mathbf{e}_x), \\ \mathbf{a} &= -R\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (x_1 \mathbf{e}_x + y_1 \mathbf{e}_y) + \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (x_1 \mathbf{e}_x + y_1 \mathbf{e}_y)) \\ &= -R\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x + \ddot{\theta}(x_1 \mathbf{e}_y - y_1 \mathbf{e}_x) - \dot{\theta}^2(x_1 \mathbf{e}_x + y_1 \mathbf{e}_y). \end{aligned}$$

It is a good exercise to choose various values of x_1 and y_1 and examine the corresponding velocity and acceleration vectors.

As an example of the previous exercise, we consider a disk rolling on a horizontal surface at constant speed. The case $x_1 = 0$ and $y_1 = R$ corresponds to the point B in Fig. 8.9(a) and the case $x_1 = 0$ and $y_1 = -R$ corresponds to the point A in Fig. 8.9(a). In Fig. 8.9(b), the components of the velocity vector of the point A are shown. You should notice how $\mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{a}_A = R\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{E}_y$ when A corresponds to the instantaneous point P of contact. The curves traced by the points A and B are well-known examples of a plane curve known as the cycloid.

8.6.1 A Common Error

It is a common error to start with the equation $\mathbf{x}_P = \bar{\mathbf{x}} - R\mathbf{E}_y$, and then differentiate this equation to try to get \mathbf{v}_P and \mathbf{a}_P . This leads to the incorrect answers $\mathbf{v}_P = \bar{\mathbf{v}}$ and $\mathbf{a}_P = \bar{\mathbf{a}}$. The reason for these errors lies in the fact that the position vector of $X_P(t)$ relative to the center of mass C is $-R\mathbf{E}_y$ *only* at the instant t . At other times, its relative position vector does not have this value. When one differentiates $\mathbf{x}_P = \bar{\mathbf{x}} - R\mathbf{E}_y$, the derivative of $R\mathbf{E}_y$ is equal to $\mathbf{0}$. Hence, one is falsely assuming that the same material point is the instantaneous point of contact for the entire duration of the motion.

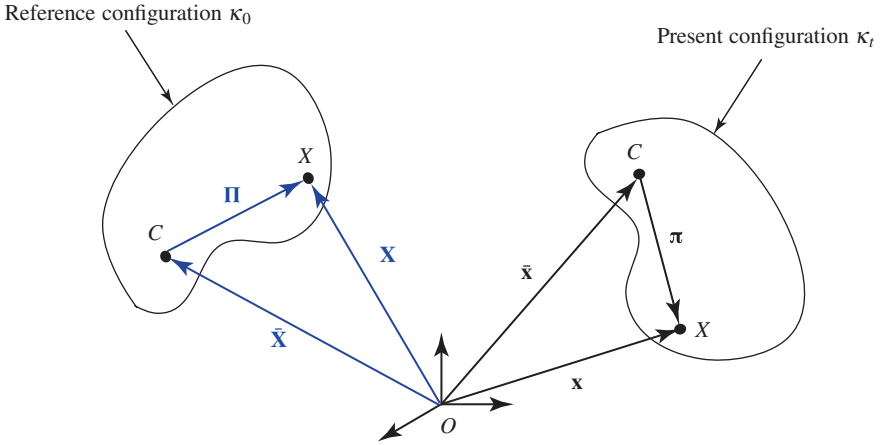


Fig. 8.10 Relative position vectors Π and π of a material point X of a body.

8.7 The Sliding Disk

It is interesting to pause briefly to consider the sliding disk. For such a disk, the sliding condition yields

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y = -(\dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z \times (-R \mathbf{E}_y)) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y.$$

This implies that

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y = \dot{y} = 0.$$

Hence, the rotational and translational motions of the disk are independent: knowledge of \dot{x} doesn't imply knowledge of $\dot{\theta}$ and vice versa.

One of the most important kinematical variables for the sliding disk is the slip velocity v_P :

$$\mathbf{v}_P = v_P \mathbf{E}_x = (\dot{x} + R \dot{\theta}) \mathbf{E}_x.$$

If there is a dynamic friction force acting at P , then it will attempt to reduce v_P to 0. In other words, the goal of the friction force is to get the rigid body to roll.

8.8 Angular Momenta

Preparatory to a discussion of the balance laws for a rigid body, we now address the angular momenta of a rigid body. The momentum relative to two points, the center of mass C and a fixed point O , are of considerable importance in the next two chapters. For convenience, we assume that the fixed point O is also the origin (see Fig. 8.10).

By definition, the angular momenta of a rigid body relative to its center of mass C , \mathbf{H} , and a fixed point O , \mathbf{H}_O , are

$$\mathbf{H} = \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv, \quad \mathbf{H}_O = \int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv.$$

These momenta are related by a simple and important formula. To find this formula, we perform some manipulations on \mathbf{H}_O :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_O &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv \\ &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} + \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv \\ &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv + \int_{\mathcal{R}} \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv \\ &= \mathbf{H} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{v} \rho dv. \end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{H} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{G}.$$

In words, the angular momentum of a rigid body relative to a fixed point O is the sum of the angular momentum of the rigid body about its center of mass and the angular momentum of its center of mass relative to O .

As an extension of the previous result, it is a good exercise to show that the angular momentum of a rigid body relative to an arbitrary point A satisfies the identity

$$\mathbf{H}_A = \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_A) \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv = \mathbf{H} + (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{x}_A) \times \mathbf{G}.$$

Here, \mathbf{x}_A is the position vector of the point A . You might recall that we had a similar identity for a system of particles.

In the forthcoming balance laws, we need to measure \mathbf{H} and \mathbf{H}_O at various instants of time. Using the formulae above, this is a tedious task. It is simplified tremendously by the introduction of inertia tensors.

8.9 Inertia Tensors

In this section we first establish the inertia tensor for a rigid body relative to its center of mass C . Some comments on the parallel axis theorem are presented at the end of this section.

To start, we recall that for any material point X of a rigid body, one has the relation

$$\mathbf{v} = \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}).$$

As shown in Fig. 8.10, we also define the relative position vectors

$$\boldsymbol{\pi} = \mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}, \quad \mathbf{\Pi} = \mathbf{X} - \bar{\mathbf{X}}.$$

Because the motion of the body is rigid, these vectors have interesting representations:

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\pi} &= \mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = \Pi_x \mathbf{e}_x + \Pi_y \mathbf{e}_y + \Pi_z \mathbf{e}_z, \\ \mathbf{\Pi} &= \mathbf{X} - \bar{\mathbf{X}} = \Pi_x \mathbf{E}_x + \Pi_y \mathbf{E}_y + \Pi_z \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the components of $\mathbf{\Pi}$ relative to the fixed Cartesian basis are identical to those of $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ relative to the corotational basis. This implies that the latter components can be measured using the fixed reference configuration.

8.9.1 Where the Inertia Tensor Comes From

Consider the angular momentum \mathbf{H} :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv \\ &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv \\ &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times (\bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv \\ &= \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times \bar{\mathbf{v}} \rho dv + \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv. \end{aligned}$$

However, inasmuch as C is the center of mass and the velocity vector of C is independent of the region of integration,

$$\int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times \bar{\mathbf{v}} \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \rho dv \times \bar{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{0} \times \bar{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Hence,

$$\mathbf{H} = \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}} ((\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\pi}) \boldsymbol{\omega} - (\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}) \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv.$$

In writing this equation, we used the identity $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}) \mathbf{b} - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \mathbf{c}$.

Substituting the representations¹⁵

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\pi} &= \mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = \Pi_x \mathbf{e}_x + \Pi_y \mathbf{e}_y + \Pi_z \mathbf{e}_z, \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} &= \omega_x \mathbf{e}_x + \omega_y \mathbf{e}_y + \omega_z \mathbf{e}_z, \end{aligned}$$

¹⁵ Earlier, in Section 8.1.3, we expressed $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ in terms of the fixed basis: $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \Omega_{32} \mathbf{E}_x + \Omega_{13} \mathbf{E}_y + \Omega_{21} \mathbf{E}_z$. Here, it is more convenient to express $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ in terms of the corotational basis.

into the last equation and expanding, we find that

$$\mathbf{H} = (I_{xx}\boldsymbol{\omega}_x + I_{xy}\boldsymbol{\omega}_y + I_{xz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_z)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{xy}\boldsymbol{\omega}_x + I_{yy}\boldsymbol{\omega}_y + I_{yz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_z)\mathbf{e}_y \\ + (I_{xz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_x + I_{yz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_y + I_{zz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_z)\mathbf{e}_z.$$

In this expression, the inertias I_{xx}, \dots, I_{zz} are the six independent components of the inertia tensor of the body relative to its center of mass:

$$I_{xx} = \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\Pi_y^2 + \Pi_z^2) \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} (\Pi_y^2 + \Pi_z^2) \rho_0 dV, \\ I_{yy} = \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\Pi_x^2 + \Pi_z^2) \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} (\Pi_x^2 + \Pi_z^2) \rho_0 dV, \\ I_{zz} = \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\Pi_x^2 + \Pi_y^2) \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} (\Pi_x^2 + \Pi_y^2) \rho_0 dV,$$

and

$$I_{xy} = - \int_{\mathcal{R}} \Pi_x \Pi_y \rho dv = - \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} \Pi_x \Pi_y \rho_0 dV, \\ I_{xz} = - \int_{\mathcal{R}} \Pi_x \Pi_z \rho dv = - \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} \Pi_x \Pi_z \rho_0 dV, \\ I_{yz} = - \int_{\mathcal{R}} \Pi_y \Pi_z \rho dv = - \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} \Pi_y \Pi_z \rho_0 dV.$$

You should notice that all of the inertias can be evaluated in the fixed reference configuration of the rigid body.¹⁶

The integrals in the expressions for I_{xx}, \dots, I_{zz} are standard volume integrals. For many bodies they are tabulated in texts, for example, Meriam and Kraige [63, Table D/4]. In most texts, I_{xx} , I_{yy} , and I_{zz} are known as the moments of inertia, whereas $-I_{xy}$, $-I_{xz}$, and $-I_{yz}$, are known as the products of inertia.

8.9.2 Angular Momentum and the Inertia Tensor

Recall that we have just shown that

$$\mathbf{H} = (I_{xx}\boldsymbol{\omega}_x + I_{xy}\boldsymbol{\omega}_y + I_{xz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_z)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{xy}\boldsymbol{\omega}_x + I_{yy}\boldsymbol{\omega}_y + I_{yz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_z)\mathbf{e}_y \\ + (I_{xz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_x + I_{yz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_y + I_{zz}\boldsymbol{\omega}_z)\mathbf{e}_z.$$

¹⁶ These results are discussed in Casey [19, 22] and in Gurtin [46, Section 13, Chapter 4]. For further details on the transformation of the integrals, see Section 8.10 below.

We can write the representation for \mathbf{H} in a more transparent form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x \\ \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y \\ \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} I_{xx} & I_{xy} & I_{xz} \\ I_{xy} & I_{yy} & I_{yz} \\ I_{xz} & I_{yz} & I_{zz} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

The matrix in this equation is known as the inertia matrix. Its components are the components of the inertia tensor.

We notice that the inertia matrix is symmetric. It may also be shown that it is positive definite. As a result, its eigenvalues (or principal values) are real positive numbers.¹⁷ You should also notice that the components of this matrix depend on the corotational basis chosen and, as a result, the fixed Cartesian basis also. If the vectors \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z are chosen to coincide with the eigenvectors of this matrix, then the sets of vectors $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ and $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ are said to be the principal axes of the body in its reference and present configurations, respectively. In this case, the above expression for \mathbf{H} simplifies considerably:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x \\ \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y \\ \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} I_{xx} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & I_{yy} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & I_{zz} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \mathbf{e}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

If possible, one chooses $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ and $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ to be the sets of principal axes. As we shall see in the examples of rigid disks, rigid spheres, and rigid cylinders to follow, the principal axes of a homogeneous rigid body coincide with the geometric axes of symmetry.

8.9.3 A Circular Cylinder

As an example, we consider a rigid homogeneous circular cylinder of mass m , radius R , and length ℓ shown in Fig. 8.11. For this body, we choose $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ to be the principal axes of the body: $I_{xy} = I_{xz} = 0$. The center of mass C of the cylinder is at its geometric center.

Evaluating the volume integrals discussed previously, one obtains

$$\begin{bmatrix} I_{xx} & I_{xy} & I_{xz} \\ I_{xy} & I_{yy} & I_{yz} \\ I_{xz} & I_{yz} & I_{zz} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4}mR^2 + \frac{1}{12}m\ell^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4}mR^2 + \frac{1}{12}m\ell^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}mR^2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Notice that by setting $R = 0$ one can use these results to determine the inertias of a slender rod. Similarly, by setting $\ell = 0$, the inertias for a thin circular disk can be obtained.

¹⁷ These results can be easily found in texts on linear algebra; see, e.g., Bellman [9] or Strang [92]. One also uses these results for the (Cauchy) stress tensor when constructing Mohr's circle in solid mechanics courses.

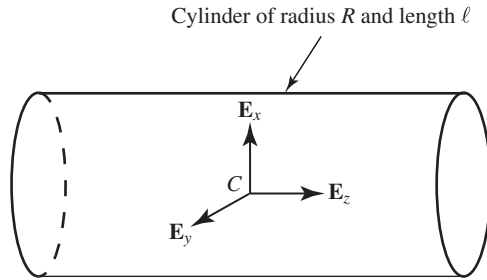


Fig. 8.11 A circular cylinder of mass m , radius R , and length ℓ .

8.9.4 The Parallel Axis Theorem

In many problems, it is convenient to consider the inertia matrix relative to a point A that is fixed to the body but is not the center of mass. The relevant inertias $I_{A_{xx}}, \dots, I_{A_{zz}}$ can be determined from the components of the inertia matrix for the body relative to its center of mass using the parallel axis theorem (see, for instance, Meriam and Kraige [63, Appendix B]).

For instance, suppose A is a point of the rigid body and the center of mass C has a position vector relative to the A with the following representation:

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{x}_A = A_x \mathbf{e}_x + A_y \mathbf{e}_y + A_z \mathbf{e}_z.$$

Then, the inertias $I_{A_{xx}}, \dots, I_{A_{zz}}$ can be computed using formulae of the following type:

$$I_{A_{xz}} = I_{xz} - mA_x A_z, \quad I_{A_{yz}} = I_{yz} - mA_y A_z, \quad I_{A_{zz}} = I_{zz} + m(A_x^2 + A_y^2).$$

These inertias can then be used to establish an expression for \mathbf{H}_A . For instance, if $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega \mathbf{E}_z$, then

$$\mathbf{H}_A = I_{A_{xz}} \omega \mathbf{e}_x + I_{A_{yz}} \omega \mathbf{e}_y + I_{A_{zz}} \omega \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Hopefully, the more general case where $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega_x \mathbf{e}_x + \omega_y \mathbf{e}_y + \omega_z \mathbf{e}_z$ can be easily inferred.

As an alternative to the use of the parallel axis theorem, we can also use the following identity:

$$\mathbf{H}_A = \int_{\mathcal{B}} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_A) \times \mathbf{v} \rho dv = \mathbf{H} + (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{x}_A) \times \mathbf{G}.$$

Here, \mathbf{x}_A is the position vector of the point A . This very useful equation holds even if A is not a material point of the rigid body. Moreover, it subsumes using the parallel axis theorem to help compute \mathbf{H}_A . A specific example is discussed in Section 9.4 of Chapter 9.

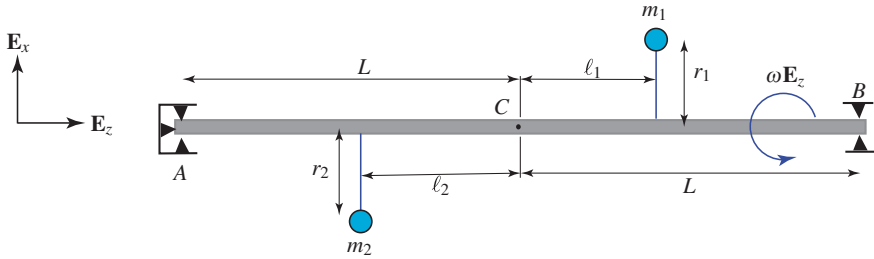


Fig. 8.12 An imbalanced shaft.

8.9.5 An Imbalanced Shaft

To explore the meaning behind the products of inertia, consider the shaft and its attached masses shown in Figure 8.12. We seek to determine the angular momentum \mathbf{H} of the rigid body when the circular shaft of length $2L$ and mass M is rotating about the \mathbf{E}_z axis. The shaft is imbalanced by the two mass particles that are rigidly attached to the shaft. The respective position vectors of the particles relative to C are

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{r}_1 - \bar{\mathbf{x}} &= \ell_1 \mathbf{E}_z + r_1 \mathbf{e}_x, \\ \mathbf{r}_2 - \bar{\mathbf{x}} &= -\ell_2 \mathbf{E}_z - r_2 \mathbf{e}_x.\end{aligned}$$

While the particles have the same mass and the dimensions $\ell_1 = \ell_2$ and $r_1 = r_2$, we label them separately to facilitate our discussion.

The angular momentum of the rigid body is

$$\mathbf{H} = I_{xz} \omega \mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz} \omega \mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz} \omega \mathbf{E}_z.$$

We note that \mathbf{E}_z is a principal axis of the circular shaft so its products of inertia are zero. The inertias of interest for the composite rigid body consisting of the cylindrical shaft and the pair of mass particles are

$$\begin{aligned}I_{xz} &= 0 - m_1(\ell_1 r_1) - m_2(\ell_2 r_2) \\ &= -m_1 \ell_1 r_1 - m_2 \ell_2 r_2, \\ I_{yz} &= 0 - m_1(0 \ell_1) - m_2(0 \ell_2) \\ &= 0, \\ I_{zz} &= \frac{4M\ell^2}{12} + m_1(r_1^2 + 0^2) + m_2(r_2^2 + 0^2) \\ &= \frac{M\ell^2}{3} + m_1 r_1^2 + m_2 r_2^2.\end{aligned}$$

Observe that $I_{xz} \neq 0$, as a result,

$$\mathbf{H} = I_{zz} \omega \mathbf{E}_z + I_{xz} \omega \mathbf{e}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{H}} = I_{zz} \dot{\omega} \mathbf{E}_z + I_{xz} \dot{\omega} \mathbf{e}_x + I_{xz} \omega^2 \mathbf{e}_y.$$

As we shall see in an example in Section 9.7, even when the rigid body is rotating at a constant speed, $\dot{\mathbf{H}} \neq \mathbf{0}$ and the bearing forces at A and B will need to supply a moment in the \mathbf{e}_y direction to balance $I_{xz} \omega^2 \mathbf{e}_y$.

8.10 Some Comments on Integrals and Derivatives

In several of the developments in Sections 8.4, 8.8, and 8.9 some identities were used that are beyond the scope of an undergraduate engineering dynamics course. Here, we present some further details on these identities for the interested reader.

A difficulty with evaluating the expressions for $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ and \mathbf{H} is that the region of integration \mathcal{R} depends on time. We have similar issues in the next chapter when evaluating the derivatives of certain integrals. We now record some results pertaining to these integrals when the motion of the body is rigid: $\mathbf{x} = \chi_R(\mathbf{X}, t)$. Proofs of these results can be found in the literature on continuum mechanics.¹⁸

First, we have the local conservation of mass result

$$\rho_0(\mathbf{X}) = \rho(\mathbf{x} = \chi_R(\mathbf{X}, t), t).$$

In words, this implies that the mass density at a material point X of the rigid body is the same in its reference and present configurations.

The second result is a change of variables theorem for any sufficiently smooth function f :

$$\int_{\mathcal{R}} f(\mathbf{x}, t) dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}_0} f(\chi_R(\mathbf{X}, t), t) dV.$$

We used this result and mass conservation to establish expressions for the inertias in Section 8.9.

The last result is a version of Reynolds' transport theorem for a sufficiently smooth function g :

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{\mathcal{R}} g(\mathbf{x}, t) \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{R}} \frac{d}{dt} (g(\mathbf{x}, t)) \rho dv.$$

We used this result in Section 8.4 when we took the time derivative outside the integral to establish the result that $\mathbf{G} = m\bar{\mathbf{v}}$.

In Section 8.4 we used the result that the center of mass of a rigid body behaves as if it were a material point. This result is accepted without comment by most texts. The first proof of it, to our knowledge, is by Casey [19]. Our outline here is far

¹⁸ These results follow from the local forms of mass conservation, changes of variables theorem, and Reynolds' transport theorem in continuum mechanics because a rigid body's motion is isochoric (see, e.g., Casey [19], Gurtin [46], and Truesdell and Toupin [98]).

longer than his proof. The reason for this is that he uses a compact tensor notation. We first recall from Section 8.1 that for any two material points X and Y of a rigid body,

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{12}(t) & Q_{13}(t) \\ Q_{21}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{23}(t) \\ Q_{31}(t) & Q_{32}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{X} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\mathbf{X} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\mathbf{X} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

One now substitutes these results into the right-hand side of the identity

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y} = \frac{1}{m} \int_{\mathcal{B}} \mathbf{x} \rho dv - \mathbf{y} = \frac{1}{m} \int_{\mathcal{B}} \mathbf{x} \rho dv - \frac{\int_{\mathcal{B}} \rho dv}{m} \mathbf{y} = \frac{1}{m} \int_{\mathcal{B}} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \rho dv.$$

Next, one uses the change of variables result recorded above and the definition of $\bar{\mathbf{X}}$ to conclude that

$$\begin{bmatrix} (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Q_{11}(t) & Q_{12}(t) & Q_{13}(t) \\ Q_{21}(t) & Q_{22}(t) & Q_{23}(t) \\ Q_{31}(t) & Q_{32}(t) & Q_{33}(t) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} (\bar{\mathbf{X}} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_x \\ (\bar{\mathbf{X}} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y \\ (\bar{\mathbf{X}} - \mathbf{Y}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

This result implies that the center of mass C of the rigid body behaves as if it were a material point of the body. For deformable bodies, this is not true.¹⁹

8.11 Summary

The first part of this chapter was devoted to examining the kinematical relationships among the position vectors, velocity vectors, and acceleration vectors of two material points X_1 and X_2 of a rigid body. Then expressions for the linear momentum \mathbf{G} and angular momenta \mathbf{H} , \mathbf{H}_O , and \mathbf{H}_A were presented. Expressions for the angular momenta were simplified using the inertia tensor. For pedagogical reasons, we found it convenient to present many of the results for arbitrary rotations and then simplify them for the case of a fixed axis of rotation.

Denoting the position vectors of the material points X_1 and X_2 by \mathbf{x}_1 and \mathbf{x}_2 , respectively, it was shown that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 &= \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2), \\ \mathbf{a}_1 - \mathbf{a}_2 &= \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2)), \end{aligned}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is the angular velocity vector of the rigid body and $\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$ is the angular acceleration vector of the rigid body. To facilitate working with several problems, a corotational basis $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ was also introduced. This basis rotates with the body. We also showed that $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_x$, $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_y$, and $\dot{\mathbf{e}}_z = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{e}_z$. In Section 8.4, the

¹⁹ For example, take a flexible ruler. Initially, suppose that it is straight. One can approximately locate its center of mass; suppose that it is at the geometric center. Now, bend the ruler into a circle. The center of mass no longer coincides with the same material point of the ruler.

center of mass C of the rigid body was introduced. For a rigid body, C behaves as a material point of the rigid body. In addition, the linear momentum of the rigid body is

$$\mathbf{G} = m\bar{\mathbf{v}},$$

where $\bar{\mathbf{v}}$ is the velocity vector of the center of mass and m is the mass of the rigid body. The angular momentum of a rigid body relative to its center of mass has the representation

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} = & (I_{xx}\omega_x + I_{xy}\omega_y + I_{xz}\omega_z)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{xy}\omega_x + I_{yy}\omega_y + I_{yz}\omega_z)\mathbf{e}_y \\ & + (I_{xz}\omega_x + I_{yz}\omega_y + I_{zz}\omega_z)\mathbf{e}_z. \end{aligned}$$

The inertias I_{xx}, \dots, I_{zz} are constants associated with the rigid body which depend on the mass and geometry of the rigid body and the choice of the basis vectors $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$. If possible $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ are chosen to be principal axes of the body and then $I_{xy} = I_{yz} = I_{xz} = 0$. It was also shown that

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{H} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{G}, \quad \mathbf{H}_A = \mathbf{H} + (\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{x}_A) \times \mathbf{G}.$$

Most of the results in this chapter were specialized to the case of a fixed axis of rotation. This axis was chosen to be \mathbf{E}_z , and the angle of rotation of the rigid body was denoted by θ . All of the aforementioned kinematical results simplify for this case. For instance,

$$\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z,$$

and

$$\mathbf{e}_x = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y - \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

The most substantial simplification occurs in the expression for \mathbf{H} :

$$\mathbf{H} = I_{xz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

The kinematical results presented in the chapter were used to examine the kinematics of mechanisms and rolling and sliding rigid bodies. In the mechanism problem discussed in Section 8.3, it was shown how to determine the angular velocities and angular accelerations of two of the linkages in a four-bar mechanism as functions of the angular velocity and acceleration of a third linkage. For rolling and sliding rigid bodies, the important conditions $\mathbf{v}_P = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{v}_P \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0$ were discussed.

8.12 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter. In the exercises, we restrict attention to the fixed axis of rotation case: $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$.

Exercise 8.1: Show that

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z = \mathbf{0}.$$

Exercise 8.2: The position vector of a material point of a rigid body relative to a fixed point O of the rigid body is

$$\mathbf{x} = x\mathbf{e}_x + y\mathbf{e}_y + z\mathbf{e}_z.$$

By differentiating this result, show that the expressions for \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{a} are identical to those you would have obtained had you used the formulae

$$\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{a} = \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times \mathbf{x} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{x}).$$

Exercise 8.3: A particle of mass m is free to move in a groove that is machined on a rigid body. The center of mass C of the rigid body is fixed. If the position vector of the particle relative to C is

$$\mathbf{r} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = 5\mathbf{e}_x + y\mathbf{e}_y,$$

calculate $\dot{\mathbf{r}}$ and $\ddot{\mathbf{r}}$. Here, y is not a constant.

Exercise 8.4: How do the results of Exercise 8.3 change if the center of mass C is undergoing a motion $\bar{\mathbf{x}} = 10t\mathbf{E}_x + t^2\mathbf{E}_y$?

Exercise 8.5: For the mechanism discussed in Section 8.3, determine the angular velocities and accelerations of the links DC and BC at the instant where

$$\theta_1 = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ radians}, \quad \dot{\theta}_1 = 1.0 \text{ RPM}, \quad \ddot{\theta}_1 = 0.1 \text{ radians/sec}^2.$$

The dimensions of the linkages are

$$L_1 = 10 \text{ meters}, \quad L_2 = 5 \text{ meters}, \quad L_3 = 10 \text{ meters}.$$

Exercise 8.6: For the rolling disk discussed in Section 8.6, determine the velocity and acceleration vectors of the material point X whose position vector relative to the center of mass is

$$\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = R\mathbf{e}_x.$$

At an instant during each revolution of the disk, why does X have a velocity vector $\mathbf{0}$?

Exercise 8.7: For the sliding disk discussed in Section 8.6, determine the velocity and acceleration vectors of the material point X whose position vector relative to the center of mass is

$$\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = R\mathbf{e}_x.$$

When is it possible for X to have the same acceleration and velocity as the center of mass?

Exercise 8.8: For the rolling conditions on a circular disk discussed in Section 8.6, many people, in haste, write $\dot{x} = R\dot{\theta}$. Show that this result does not imply that $\mathbf{v}_P \cdot \mathbf{E}_x = 0$. What does it imply?

Exercise 8.9: For the rolling circular disk discussed in Section 8.6, derive expressions for \mathbf{H} and \mathbf{H}_P .

Exercise 8.10: Calculate the time derivative of

$$\mathbf{H} = I_{xz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

The answer is displayed in Section 9.1.3 of Chapter 9.

Chapter 9

Kinetics of a Rigid Body



TOPICS

We start by discussing Euler's laws for a rigid body. These laws are known as the balances of linear and angular momenta. An alternative form of these laws is also presented that is useful for solving many classes of problems. We then discuss the kinetic energy of a rigid body and establish the Koenig decomposition. This decomposition, combined with the balance laws, can be used to prove a work-energy theorem for a rigid body. As illustrations of the theory, we consider four classes of problems: purely translational motion of a rigid body, rigid bodies that are free to rotate about one of their fixed material points, rolling rigid bodies and sliding rigid bodies, and an imbalanced rotor problem. These applications are far from exhaustive, but we believe they are the chief representatives of problems in an undergraduate engineering dynamics course.

9.1 Balance Laws for a Rigid Body

Euler's laws for a rigid body can be viewed as extensions to Newton's second law for a particle. There are two laws (postulates): the balance of linear momentum and the balance of angular momentum.¹

¹ For a single particle or system of particles, the balance of angular momentum is not an independent postulate: as shown in Chapter 7, it follows from the balance of linear momentum. You should also notice that we do not attempt, as many texts do, to derive the balances of linear and angular momenta from the balance of linear momentum for each of the material points of a rigid body. Such a derivation entails placing restrictions on the nature of the internal forces acting on the particles. Here, we follow the approach in continuum mechanics and postulate two independent balance laws (see Truesdell [97, Essay V] for further discussions on this matter).

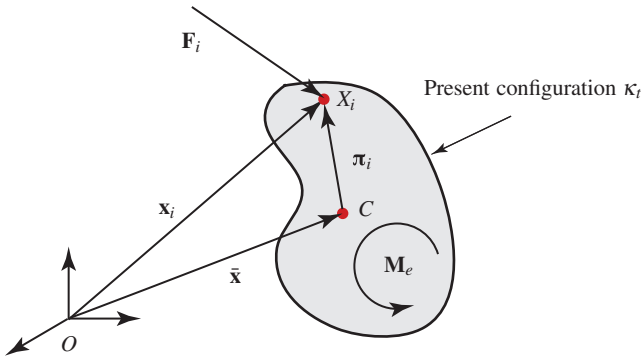


Fig. 9.1 A force \mathbf{F}_i acting at the point X_i and a moment \mathbf{M}_e acting on a rigid body.

9.1.1 Resultant Forces and Resultant Moments

Before discussing the balance laws, we dispense with some preliminaries. The resultant force \mathbf{F} acting on the rigid body is the sum of all the forces acting on the rigid body. Similarly, the resultant moment relative to a fixed point O , \mathbf{M}_O , is the resultant external moment relative to O of all of the moments acting on the rigid body. We also denote the resultant moment relative to the center of mass C by \mathbf{M} . These moments may be decomposed into two additive parts: the moment due to the individual external forces acting on the rigid body and applied external moments that are not due to external forces.

As an example, consider a system of forces and moments acting on a rigid body. Here, a set of K forces \mathbf{F}_i ($i = 1, \dots, K$) act on the rigid body. The force \mathbf{F}_i acts at the material point X_i , that has a position vector \mathbf{x}_i . In addition, a moment \mathbf{M}_e , that is not due to the moment of an applied force, acts on the rigid body (see Fig. 9.1). For this system of applied forces and moments, the resultants are

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{F} &= \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i, \\ \mathbf{M}_O &= \mathbf{M}_e + \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{x}_i \times \mathbf{F}_i, \\ \mathbf{M} &= \mathbf{M}_e + \sum_{i=1}^K (\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{F}_i.\end{aligned}$$

Notice how \mathbf{M}_e features in these expressions. The main examples of pure moments that we shall see are reaction moments \mathbf{M}_R at joints and moments $-K_T(\theta - \theta_0)\mathbf{E}_z$ supplied by torsional springs.

9.1.2 Euler's Laws

The balance laws for a rigid body are often known as Euler's laws.² The first of these laws is the balance of linear momentum:

$$\mathbf{F} = \dot{\mathbf{G}} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}.$$

The second law is the balance of angular momentum for a rigid body:

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O.$$

The pair of balance laws represent six scalar equations.

In many cases, it is convenient to give an alternative description of the balance of angular momentum. To do this, we start with the identity

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{H} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{G}.$$

Differentiating and invoking the balance of linear momentum, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O &= \dot{\mathbf{H}} + \bar{\mathbf{v}} \times \mathbf{G} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \dot{\mathbf{G}} \\ &= \dot{\mathbf{H}} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{F}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, invoking the balance of angular momentum,

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{F}.$$

However, the resultant moment relative to a fixed point O , \mathbf{M}_O , and the resultant moment relative to the center of mass C , \mathbf{M} , are related by³

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{M} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{F}.$$

It follows that

$$\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}},$$

This balance law is known as the balance of angular momentum relative to the center of mass C . This form of the balance law is used in many problems where the rigid body has no fixed point O .

We now recall the developments of Section 8.9 of Chapter 8, where we introduced the inertia tensor:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= (I_{xx}\omega_x + I_{xy}\omega_y + I_{xz}\omega_z) \mathbf{e}_x + (I_{xy}\omega_x + I_{yy}\omega_y + I_{yz}\omega_z) \mathbf{e}_y \\ &\quad + (I_{xz}\omega_x + I_{yz}\omega_y + I_{zz}\omega_z) \mathbf{e}_z. \end{aligned}$$

² See Truesdell [97]. For a rigid body, they may be seen on the pages of another seminal paper [33, Pages 224–225] by Euler published in 1776.

³ This may be seen from our previous discussion of a system of forces and moments acting on a rigid body.

Here, I_{xx}, \dots, I_{zz} are the components of the inertia tensor of the rigid body relative to the center of mass and the angular velocity vector of the rigid body is $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega_x \mathbf{e}_x + \omega_y \mathbf{e}_y + \omega_z \mathbf{e}_z$. In the balance laws, the derivative of \mathbf{H} is required. This is obtained by differentiating the expression for \mathbf{H} above. The resulting expression is conveniently written in the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}} = \overset{o}{\dot{\mathbf{H}}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{H},$$

where $\overset{o}{\dot{\mathbf{H}}}$ is the corotational rate of \mathbf{H} . This is the time derivative of \mathbf{H} that is obtained while keeping \mathbf{e}_x , \mathbf{e}_y , and \mathbf{e}_z fixed:

$$\begin{aligned} \overset{o}{\dot{\mathbf{H}}} = & (I_{xx}\dot{\omega}_x + I_{xy}\dot{\omega}_y + I_{xz}\dot{\omega}_z) \mathbf{e}_x + (I_{xy}\dot{\omega}_x + I_{yy}\dot{\omega}_y + I_{yz}\dot{\omega}_z) \mathbf{e}_y \\ & + (I_{xz}\dot{\omega}_x + I_{yz}\dot{\omega}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\omega}_z) \mathbf{e}_z. \end{aligned}$$

Clearly, the resulting balance of angular momentum $\dot{\mathbf{M}} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$ gives rise to a complex set of equations in this case.

When we establish the component form of the balance of angular momentum, it is often convenient to use the following identity:

$$(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = (\mathbf{E}_z \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b},$$

where \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are any two vectors. For example, the identity simplifies computing the \mathbf{E}_z component of the moment of a gravitational force vector:

$$(\ell \mathbf{e}_x \times -mg \mathbf{E}_y) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = (\mathbf{E}_z \times \ell \mathbf{e}_x) \cdot -mg \mathbf{E}_y = (\ell \mathbf{e}_y) \cdot -mg \mathbf{E}_y = -mg \ell \cos(\theta).$$

The identity can also be used with the \mathbf{e}_x and \mathbf{e}_y components of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$.

9.1.3 The Fixed Axis of Rotation Case

Simplifying the aforementioned results to the fixed axis of rotation case:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_x = \cos(\theta) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta) \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = \cos(\theta) \mathbf{E}_y - \sin(\theta) \mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z, \\ \dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_y, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = -\dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_x, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z = \omega \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} = I_{xx} \omega \mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz} \omega \mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz} \omega \mathbf{E}_z, \\ \dot{\mathbf{H}} = (I_{xz} \dot{\omega} - I_{yz} \omega^2) \mathbf{e}_x + (I_{yz} \dot{\omega} + I_{xz} \omega^2) \mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz} \dot{\omega} \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

The balance laws for the fixed axis of rotation case can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} = m \dot{\mathbf{v}}, \\ \mathbf{M} = (I_{xz} \dot{\omega} - I_{yz} \omega^2) \mathbf{e}_x + (I_{yz} \dot{\omega} + I_{xz} \omega^2) \mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz} \dot{\omega} \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

The first three of these equations, $\mathbf{F} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}$, give the motion of the center of mass and any reaction forces acting on the body. The fourth and fifth equations ($\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x = \dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \mathbf{e}_x$ and $\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y = \dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \mathbf{e}_y$) are used to determine the reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R that ensures the rotation of the rigid body is only about the \mathbf{E}_z -axis. Last, but not least, the sixth equation ($\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = \dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$) gives a differential equation for $\theta(t)$.

9.1.4 The Four Steps

In solving problems, we follow the four steps used earlier for particles. There are some modifications:

- (a) Pick an origin, a coordinate system, and a corotational basis, and then establish expressions for \mathbf{H} (or \mathbf{H}_O), $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$, $\bar{\mathbf{v}}$, and $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$.
- (b) Draw a free-body diagram showing the external forces \mathbf{F}_i and moments \mathbf{M}_e .
- (c) Write out the six equations $\mathbf{F} = m\bar{\mathbf{a}}$ and $\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$ (or $\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$).
- (d) Perform the analysis.

These steps will guide you through most problems. We emphasize once more that the free-body diagram is only used as an aid to checking one's solution.

It is a common beginner's mistake to use the balance of angular momentum about a point, say A , that is neither the center of mass C nor fixed ($\mathbf{v}_A \neq \mathbf{0}$). If one does this, then it is important to note that $\mathbf{M}_A \neq \dot{\mathbf{H}}_A$, rather $\mathbf{M}_A = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_A + \mathbf{v}_A \times \mathbf{G}$.

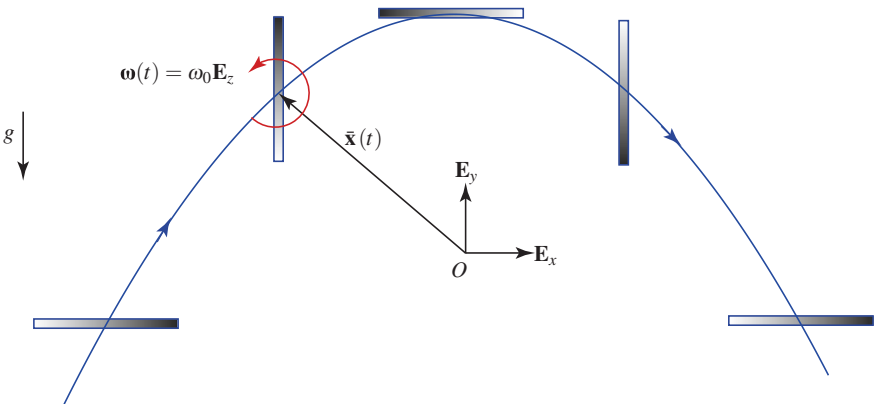


Fig. 9.2 The trajectory $\bar{\mathbf{x}}(t)$ of the center of mass C of a rod that is tossed into the air. Snapshots of the orientation of the rod at various instants in time are also shown.

9.1.5 Tossing a Rod into the Air

The simplest problem that we can find to illustrate using the balance laws to solve for the motion of a rigid body is to consider a long slender rod of mass m , length ℓ , and moment of inertia I_{zz} . The rod is launched at time t_0 . At this instant, the initial angular velocity of the rod is $\boldsymbol{\omega}(t = t_0) = \omega_0 \mathbf{E}_z$ and the initial orientation of the body is $\theta(t = t_0) = \theta_0$. The initial location of the center of mass is $\bar{\mathbf{x}}(t = t_0) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}_0$, and the center of mass has an initial velocity $\bar{\mathbf{v}}_0$.

As the rod moves through the air, it is subject to a vertical gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$. Thus, $\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y$ and $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{0}$. The balance of linear momentum implies that the center of mass moves in a parabolic trajectory (just like a particle). The balance of angular momentum can be used to show that $\boldsymbol{\omega}(t)$ is a constant. So the rod simply rotates at a constant rate ω_0 . In summary,

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}_0 + \bar{\mathbf{v}}_0(t - t_0) - \frac{g}{2}(t - t_0)^2 \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \theta(t) = \theta_0 + \omega_0(t - t_0).$$

A sample trajectory of the center of mass is shown in Fig. 9.2. Sample orientations of the rod (when $\omega_0 > 0$) are also shown.

The analysis we have presented can be used to provide estimates for the time of flight of arrows, cabers, darts, and javelins. For arrows, drag and the effects of the wind can be important, but these effects can be incorporated into a more realistic model than the very simple model we have just presented.

9.1.6 Reaction Moments

Suppose a rigid body is free to rotate about a pin (or revolute) joint that is attached to the body at a point X_A . In this case, the axis of rotation of the body is constrained to be in a certain direction (say \mathbf{E}_z) and the motion of the point X_A is also constrained. To impose these constraints, the pin joint supplies a reaction force \mathbf{R}_A and a reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R :

$$\mathbf{R}_A = R_{Ax} \mathbf{E}_x + R_{Ay} \mathbf{E}_y + R_{Az} \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{M}_R = M_{Rx} \mathbf{E}_x + M_{Ry} \mathbf{E}_y.$$

Several instances of this situation will be seen in Section 9.4 when we consider a body in motion about a fixed point. In the example above and those considered later on, we assume that the pin joint is frictionless; otherwise, the moment \mathbf{M}_R would also have a (frictional) component in the \mathbf{E}_z direction.

To provide an additional example of a reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R , consider the situations shown in Fig. 9.3 where a rigid body of mass m is at rest and is supported by a force and moment supplied at a point X_B . When X_B is directly under the center of mass, then the stationary body can be supported by a reaction force $\mathbf{R}_B = mg\mathbf{E}_y$. However, when X_B is located a distance h away from C , then, in addition to a reac-

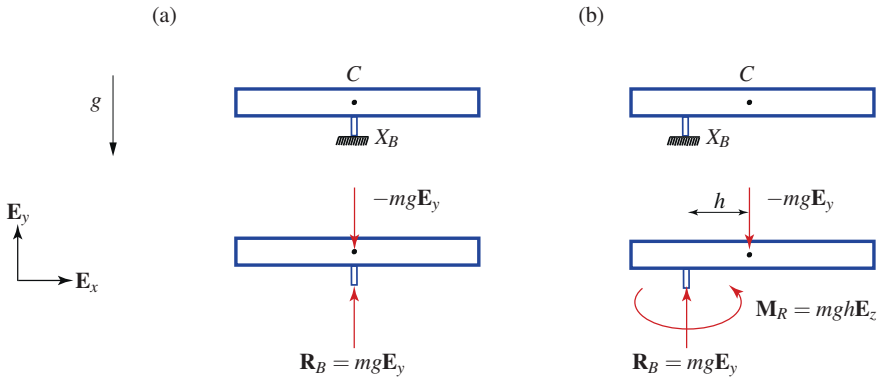


Fig. 9.3 A rigid body of mass m that is at rest and supported at (a) a point X_B directly under the center of mass C and (b) a point X_B that has a horizontal offset from the center of mass C . In the latter case, the presence of a reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R is required to maintain equilibrium.

tion force $\mathbf{R}_B = mg\mathbf{E}_y$, a reaction moment $\mathbf{M}_R = mgh\mathbf{E}_z$ also needs to be supplied. If the moment cannot be supplied, then the body will rotate.

The example we have presented in Fig. 9.3 is easy to reproduce. Take a book and balance it on the tip of one of your fingers. For this to happen, the tip of your finger will be directly under the center of mass of the book and the tip of your finger supplies a reaction force that balances the weight of the book. Now try and support the book with the tip of your finger at a point which is not directly beneath the center of gravity. While the tip of your finger can supply a force that will balance gravity, it cannot supply a reaction moment that will counteract the moment due to gravity and the book will start to rotate about the tip of your finger.

9.2 Work-Energy Theorem and Energy Conservation

Here, we first show the Koenig decomposition for the kinetic energy of a rigid body:

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

This is then followed by a development of the work-energy theorem for a rigid body:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i + \mathbf{M}_e \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

As in particles and systems of particles, this theorem can be used to establish conservation of the total energy of a rigid body during a motion.

9.2.1 Koenig's Decomposition

We begin with Koenig's⁴ decomposition of the kinetic energy of a rigid body.⁵ By definition, the kinetic energy T of a rigid body is

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{R}} \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \rho dv.$$

We next recall that the velocity vector of any material point X of the rigid body has the representation

$$\mathbf{v} = \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi},$$

where the relative position vector $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ and the angular velocity vector $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ are

$$\boldsymbol{\pi} = \mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega_x \mathbf{e}_x + \omega_y \mathbf{e}_y + \omega_z \mathbf{e}_z.$$

Substituting for \mathbf{v} in the expression for T and expanding, we find that

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + 2\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) + (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \cdot (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi})) \rho dv.$$

However,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{R}} \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} \rho dv &= \frac{\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}}{2} \int_{\mathcal{R}} \rho dv = \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}, \\ \int_{\mathcal{R}} \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv &= \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \left(\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \int_{\mathcal{R}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \rho dv \right) = \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{0}) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently,

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{R}} (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \cdot (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv.$$

We can simplify the second expression of the right-hand side of this equation using a vector identity:

$$(\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \cdot (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) = ((\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\pi}) \boldsymbol{\omega} - (\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}) \boldsymbol{\pi}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

Substituting this result into the expression for T and rearranging, we find that

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2} \left(\int_{\mathcal{R}} ((\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\pi}) \boldsymbol{\omega} - (\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}) \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv \right) \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

⁴ Johann Samuel Koenig (1712–1757) was a German mathematician and philosopher. He was also a contemporary of Euler.

⁵ Our proof of Koenig's decomposition follows Casey [19, 22].

Recall from Section 8.9 of Chapter 8 that the angular momentum relative to the center of mass C of the rigid body is

$$\mathbf{H} = \int_{\mathcal{B}} \boldsymbol{\pi} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv = \int_{\mathcal{B}} ((\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\pi})\boldsymbol{\omega} - (\boldsymbol{\pi} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega})\boldsymbol{\pi}) \rho dv.$$

Hence, we obtain the Koenig decomposition:

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

In words, the kinetic energy of a rigid body can be decomposed into the sum of the rotational kinetic energy and the translational kinetic energy of the center of mass.

9.2.2 The Work-Energy Theorem

To establish a work-energy theorem for a rigid body, we start by differentiating T :

$$\dot{T} = \frac{1}{2} m \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}} + \frac{1}{2} \dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H} \cdot \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}.$$

To proceed further, we need to show that $\dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = \mathbf{H} \cdot \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$. In the preceding pages all of these terms except for one are recorded. The only missing term is

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}} &= \frac{d}{dt} (\omega_x \mathbf{e}_x + \omega_y \mathbf{e}_y + \omega_z \mathbf{e}_z) \\ &= \dot{\omega}_x \mathbf{e}_x + \dot{\omega}_y \mathbf{e}_y + \dot{\omega}_z \mathbf{e}_z + \omega_x \dot{\mathbf{e}}_x + \omega_y \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y + \omega_z \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z \\ &= \dot{\omega}_x \mathbf{e}_x + \dot{\omega}_y \mathbf{e}_y + \dot{\omega}_z \mathbf{e}_z + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\omega_x \mathbf{e}_x + \omega_y \mathbf{e}_y + \omega_z \mathbf{e}_z) \\ &= \dot{\omega}_x \mathbf{e}_x + \dot{\omega}_y \mathbf{e}_y + \dot{\omega}_z \mathbf{e}_z. \end{aligned}$$

Another direct calculation using this expression for $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ shows that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} \cdot \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}} &= (I_{xx} \omega_x + I_{xy} \omega_y + I_{xz} \omega_z) \dot{\omega}_x + (I_{xy} \omega_x + I_{yy} \omega_y + I_{yz} \omega_z) \dot{\omega}_y \\ &\quad + (I_{xz} \omega_x + I_{yz} \omega_y + I_{zz} \omega_z) \dot{\omega}_z. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing this to the corresponding expression for $\dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}$, we find that they are equal. Consequently,

$$\dot{T} = \frac{1}{2} m \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2} m \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}} + \frac{1}{2} \dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H} \cdot \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}.$$

This result implies that

$$\dot{T} = m \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \dot{\mathbf{H}} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

Invoking the balance of linear momentum and the balance of angular momentum, we obtain the work-energy theorem:

$$\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

You should notice how this is a natural extension of the work-energy theorem for a single particle.

9.2.3 An Alternative Form of the Work-Energy Theorem

In applications, it is convenient to use an equivalent form of the work-energy theorem. This can be obtained by substituting for the moments and forces discussed at the beginning of Section 9.1:

$$\mathbf{F} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i, \quad \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_e + \sum_{i=1}^K (\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{F}_i.$$

Hence, the mechanical power of the resultant forces and moments can be written as

$$\mathbf{F} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = \left(\sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \right) \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M}_e \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} + \left(\sum_{i=1}^K (\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{F}_i \right) \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

With some minor manipulations involving the identity $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$ and noting that $\mathbf{v}_i = \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}})$, we find that

$$\mathbf{F} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i + \mathbf{M}_e \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

In conclusion, we have an alternative form of the work-energy theorem that proves to be far easier to use in applications:

$$\dot{T} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i + \mathbf{M}_e \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

We present examples shortly involving this theorem to illustrate how it is used to establish conservation of energy results.

It is crucial to note from the work-energy theorem that the mechanical powers of a force \mathbf{P} acting at a material point X whose position vector is \mathbf{x} and a moment \mathbf{L} are

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mechanical power of a force } \mathbf{P} \text{ acting at } \mathbf{x} : & \mathbf{P} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}, \\ \text{Mechanical power of a moment } \mathbf{L} : & \mathbf{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}. \end{aligned}$$

These expressions can be easily used to determine whether a force or moment is workless and thus does not contribute to the change of kinetic energy of the rigid body during a motion.

9.3 Purely Translational Motion of a Rigid Body

A rigid body performing a purely translational motion is arguably the simplest class of problems associated with these bodies. For these problems, the angular velocity $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ and acceleration $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ vectors are $\mathbf{0}$. The velocity and acceleration of any material point of the rigid body are none other than those for the center of mass C . Recalling the expression for the angular momentum \mathbf{H} ,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{H} = & (I_{xx}\omega_x + I_{xy}\omega_y + I_{xz}\omega_z)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{xy}\omega_x + I_{yy}\omega_y + I_{yz}\omega_z)\mathbf{e}_y \\ & + (I_{xz}\omega_x + I_{yz}\omega_y + I_{zz}\omega_z)\mathbf{e}_z,\end{aligned}$$

one also finds that, for these problems, \mathbf{H} and $\dot{\mathbf{H}}$ are $\mathbf{0}$.

For purely translational problems, the balance laws are simply

$$\mathbf{F} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}, \quad \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{0}.$$

These give six equations that are used to solve for the constraint forces and moments and the motion of the center of mass of the rigid body. In addition, the work-energy theorem is simply

$$\dot{T} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}.$$

9.3.1 The Overturning Cart

We now consider an example. As shown in Fig. 9.4, a cart of mass m , height $2a$, width $2b$, and depth $2c$ is being pushed by a constant force $\mathbf{P} = P\mathbf{E}_x$. This force is applied to a point on one of its sides. The cart is free to move on a smooth horizontal track. We wish to determine the restrictions on P such that the cart will not topple. In addition, we prove that the total energy of the cart is conserved.

You should notice how the solution of this problem follows the four steps we discussed earlier.

9.3.1.1 Kinematics

We start with the kinematics and choose a Cartesian coordinate system to describe $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$:

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where y_0 and z_0 are constant because we only consider the case where all four wheels of the cart remain in contact with the track. Differentiating this expression gives the velocity and acceleration vectors of the center of mass. For the present problem, one does not need to establish an expression for \mathbf{H} . Furthermore, we find no need to explicitly mention the existence of a corotational basis $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ because we can choose $\mathbf{e}_x = \mathbf{E}_x$, $\mathbf{e}_y = \mathbf{E}_y$, and $\mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z$.

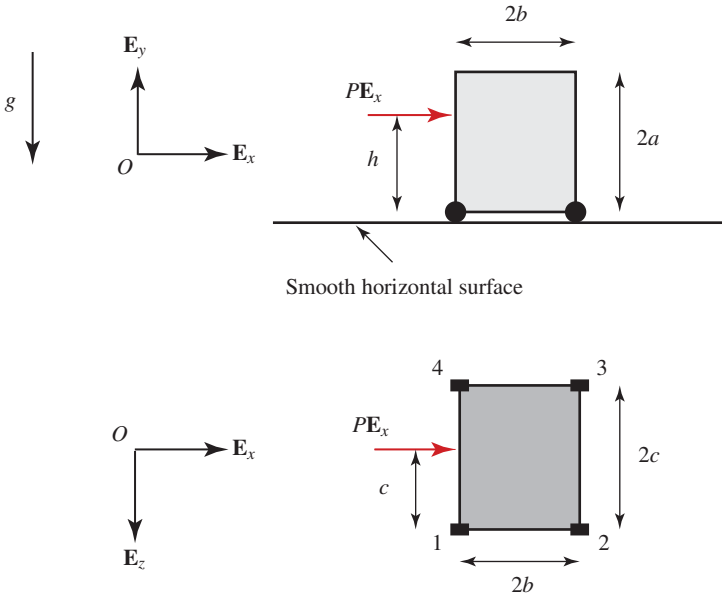


Fig. 9.4 A side view and a plan view of a cart moving on a smooth horizontal track.

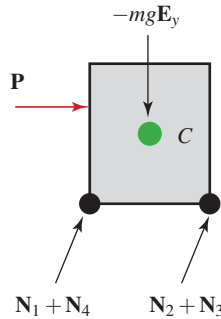


Fig. 9.5 Free-body diagram of the cart.

9.3.1.2 Forces and Moments

We next consider the free-body diagram (shown in Fig. 9.5). Notice that there are four reaction forces, one on each of the four wheels: N_i acts on the wheel numbered i in Fig. 9.4, where $i = 1, 2, 3,$ or 4 . These forces have components in the E_y and E_z directions.⁶

⁶ The components of the normal forces in the E_z direction ensure that the cart will not start to rotate about the E_y -axis.

The resultant force acting on the system is

$$\mathbf{F} = P\mathbf{E}_x - mg\mathbf{E}_y + (N_{1y} + N_{2y} + N_{3y} + N_{4y})\mathbf{E}_y + (N_{1z} + N_{2z} + N_{3z} + N_{4z})\mathbf{E}_z.$$

The resultant moment can be calculated by taking the moments of these forces about the center of mass:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M} &= ((h-a)\mathbf{E}_y - b\mathbf{E}_x) \times P\mathbf{E}_x + \mathbf{0} \times -mg\mathbf{E}_y \\ &\quad + (-a\mathbf{E}_y - b\mathbf{E}_x + c\mathbf{E}_z) \times (N_{1y}\mathbf{E}_y + N_{1z}\mathbf{E}_z) \\ &\quad + (-a\mathbf{E}_y + b\mathbf{E}_x + c\mathbf{E}_z) \times (N_{2y}\mathbf{E}_y + N_{2z}\mathbf{E}_z) \\ &\quad + (-a\mathbf{E}_y + b\mathbf{E}_x - c\mathbf{E}_z) \times (N_{3y}\mathbf{E}_y + N_{3z}\mathbf{E}_z) \\ &\quad + (-a\mathbf{E}_y - b\mathbf{E}_x - c\mathbf{E}_z) \times (N_{4y}\mathbf{E}_y + N_{4z}\mathbf{E}_z).\end{aligned}$$

With some work, the expression for \mathbf{M} can be simplified:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M} &= (a-h)P\mathbf{E}_z + c(-N_{1y} - N_{2y} + N_{3y} + N_{4y})\mathbf{E}_x \\ &\quad - a(N_{1z} + N_{2z} + N_{3z} + N_{4z})\mathbf{E}_x + b(N_{1z} - N_{2z} - N_{3z} + N_{4z})\mathbf{E}_y \\ &\quad + b(-N_{1y} + N_{2y} + N_{3y} - N_{4y})\mathbf{E}_z.\end{aligned}$$

9.3.1.3 Balance Laws

We now invoke the balance laws and take their components with respect to \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z to obtain the six equations

$$\begin{aligned}P &= m\ddot{x}, \\ -mg + N_{1y} + N_{2y} + N_{3y} + N_{4y} &= 0, \\ N_{1z} + N_{2z} + N_{3z} + N_{4z} &= 0, \\ -c(N_{1y} + N_{2y} - N_{3y} - N_{4y}) &= a(N_{1z} + N_{2z} + N_{3z} + N_{4z}), \\ N_{1z} - N_{2z} - N_{3z} + N_{4z} &= 0, \\ (h-a)P &= b(-N_{1y} + N_{2y} + N_{3y} - N_{4y}).\end{aligned}$$

There are nine unknowns: $x(t)$, N_{1y} , N_{2y} , N_{3y} , N_{4y} , N_{1z} , N_{2z} , N_{3z} , and N_{4z} . It follows that the system of equations is indeterminate and additional assumptions may be required to solve the problem.

9.3.1.4 Analysis

First, let's determine the motion of the system. From the six equations given above, we see that

$$\ddot{x} = \frac{P}{m}.$$

Subject to the initial conditions at $t = 0$ that $\bar{\mathbf{x}}(0) = y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z$ and $\bar{\mathbf{v}}(0) = v_0\mathbf{E}_x$, we can integrate this equation to find that the motion of the center of mass is

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \left(v_0 t + \frac{Pt^2}{2m} \right) \mathbf{E}_x + y_0 \mathbf{E}_y + z_0 \mathbf{E}_z.$$

In words, the cart's center of mass is accelerated in the direction of the applied force $P\mathbf{E}_x$, a result that shouldn't surprise you.

Next, we seek to determine the toppling force. From the six equations above, we obtain five equations for the eight unknown reaction forces. As mentioned earlier, this is an indeterminate system of equations. In the sequel, we can ignore the horizontal forces N_{1z}, N_{2z}, N_{3z} , and N_{4z} . To proceed to solve for the other unknown forces (N_{1y}, N_{2y}, N_{3y} , and N_{4y}) we need to make two additional assumptions.⁷ These assumptions relate the forces on the individual wheels:

$$N_{1y} = N_{4y}, \quad N_{2y} = N_{3y}.$$

That is, the vertical forces on the rear wheels are identical and the vertical forces on the front wheels are identical. Solving for the reaction forces we find that

$$\begin{aligned} N_{1y} = N_{4y} &= \frac{1}{4} \left(mg - \frac{P}{b} (h - a) \right), \\ N_{2y} = N_{3y} &= \frac{1}{4} \left(mg + \frac{P}{b} (h - a) \right). \end{aligned}$$

To determine the allowable range of P , we set the \mathbf{E}_y components of the reaction forces to zero. Consequently, the front wheels will lose contact, provided that $N_{2y} = N_{3y} < 0$:

$$P < -\frac{mgb}{h - a}.$$

Similarly, the rear wheels lose contact when

$$P > \frac{mgb}{h - a}.$$

Observe that if $h = a$, then the reaction forces never vanish and overturning in this case never occurs. For a given cart and $h \neq a$, one can now easily determine the allowable range of P . We leave this as an exercise. In the course of this exercise, notice that if a cart is tall (i.e., $a \gg b$), then the toppling force P is smaller than if the cart were stout (i.e., $a \ll b$).

⁷ Of course, the correct approach here would be to model each of the four wheels attached to the cart as individual rigid bodies. Then, instead of modeling this system as a single rigid body, one has a system of five rigid bodies. Unfortunately, one has a similar indeterminacy in this model also. In vehicle system dynamics, an area that is primarily concerned with modeling automobiles using interconnected rigid bodies, this issue is usually not seen because one incorporates suspension models (see Gillespie [42]).

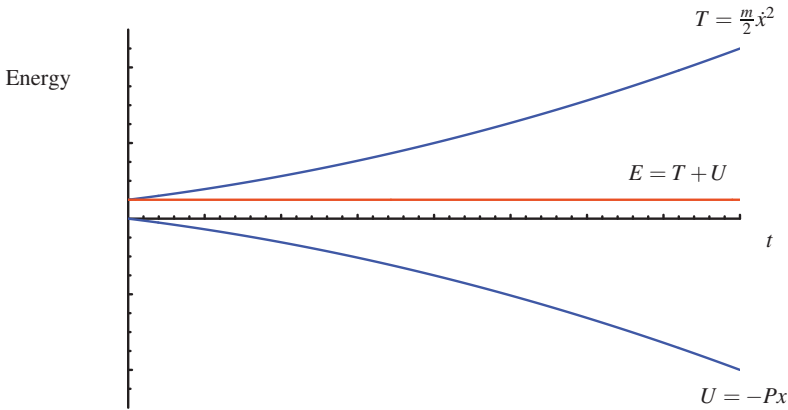


Fig. 9.6 Conservation of the total energy E during the motion of the cart.

We now address energy conservation for this problem. Starting from the work-energy theorem, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{T} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} &= (-mg + N_{1y} + N_{2y} + N_{3y} + N_{4y})\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} \\ &\quad + (N_{1z} + N_{2z} + N_{3z} + N_{4z})\mathbf{E}_z \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + P\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}. \end{aligned}$$

However, the normal forces and gravity have no mechanical power in this problem and P is constant:

$$\dot{T} = P\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} = \frac{d}{dt} (P\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}}).$$

Hence, the total energy E of this system is conserved:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left(E = T - P\mathbf{E}_x \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{2}m\dot{x}^2 - Px \right) = 0.$$

For this problem, the rotational kinetic energy of the cart is zero: $T = 0.5m\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}$. The energy conservation of the cart is illustrated in Fig. 9.6 for a specific example where $\dot{x}(0) > 0$ and $x(0) = 0$.

9.4 A Rigid Body with a Fixed Point

In the class of problems considered in this section, a rigid body is attached at one of its material points by a pin joint to a fixed point (cf. Fig. 9.7). Here, we take this fixed point to be the origin O of our coordinate system. At the pin joint there is a reaction force \mathbf{R} and a reaction moment \mathbf{M}_c . These ensure that the point of

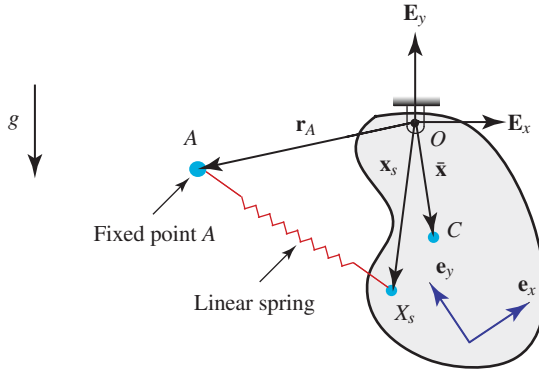


Fig. 9.7 A representative example of a rigid body rotating about a fixed point O .

attachment remains fixed and the axis of rotation of the rigid body remains fixed, respectively.

The example shown in Fig. 9.7 is representative. We assume that a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$ acts on the body, in addition to a spring force:

$$\mathbf{F}_s = -K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A\|}, \quad \varepsilon = \|\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0.$$

One end of the spring is attached to the material point X_s of the rigid body whose position vector is \mathbf{x}_s . The other end is attached to a fixed point A whose position vector is \mathbf{r}_A .

Restricting attention to planar motions, we seek to determine the differential equation governing the motion of this rigid body, the reaction forces, and the reaction moments. We also prove that the total energy of this rigid body is conserved.

9.4.1 Kinematics

Because the motion is constrained to be planar, $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z = \omega\mathbf{E}_z$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$. The corotational basis is defined in the usual manner:

$$\mathbf{e}_x = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

We also recall the relations

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z = \mathbf{0}.$$

Taking the fixed point O as the origin, we denote the position vector of the center of mass of the body by

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = x\mathbf{e}_x + y\mathbf{e}_y + z\mathbf{e}_z.$$

Here, x , y , and z are constants. Differentiating this expression, we find that

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = \dot{\theta}(x\mathbf{e}_y - y\mathbf{e}_x), \quad \bar{\mathbf{a}} = \ddot{\theta}(x\mathbf{e}_y - y\mathbf{e}_x) - \dot{\theta}^2(x\mathbf{e}_x + y\mathbf{e}_y).$$

We also define the position vectors of the spring's attachment points:

$$\mathbf{x}_s = x_s\mathbf{e}_x + y_s\mathbf{e}_y + z_s\mathbf{e}_z, \quad \mathbf{r}_A = X_A\mathbf{E}_x + Y_A\mathbf{E}_y + Z_A\mathbf{E}_z,$$

where all of the displayed coordinates are constant. To keep the development clear, we avoid explicit use of these representations for \mathbf{x}_s and \mathbf{r}_A .

Next, we address the angular momenta of the rigid body. Because the axis of rotation is fixed, we recall from Section 9.1 that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= I_{xz}\omega\mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz}\omega\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\omega\mathbf{E}_z, \\ \dot{\mathbf{H}} &= (I_{xz}\dot{\omega} - I_{yz}\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{yz}\dot{\omega} + I_{xz}\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\omega}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

It is convenient in this problem to determine \mathbf{H}_O . To this end, we recall that

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{H} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times \mathbf{G}.$$

Substituting for the problem of interest, we obtain

$$\mathbf{H}_O = I_{xz}\omega\mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz}\omega\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\omega\mathbf{E}_z + (x\mathbf{e}_x + y\mathbf{e}_y + z\mathbf{e}_z) \times m\dot{\theta}(x\mathbf{e}_y - y\mathbf{e}_x).$$

With some rearranging, we find that

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \underbrace{\left(I_{xz} - mxz \right)}_{=I_{Oxz}} \omega\mathbf{e}_x + \underbrace{\left(I_{yz} - myz \right)}_{=I_{Oyz}} \omega\mathbf{e}_y + \underbrace{\left(I_{zz} + m(x^2 + y^2) \right)}_{=I_{Ozz}} \omega\mathbf{E}_z.$$

These results are identical to those that would have been obtained had one used the parallel axis theorem to determine the moment of inertia tensor of the body about point O .

For future purposes, we also determine the kinetic energy T of the rigid body. We start from the Koenig decomposition and substitute for the various kinematical quantities to find that

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \frac{1}{2}m\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{H} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(I_{zz} + m(x^2 + y^2))\dot{\theta}^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}I_{Ozz}\dot{\theta}^2. \end{aligned}$$

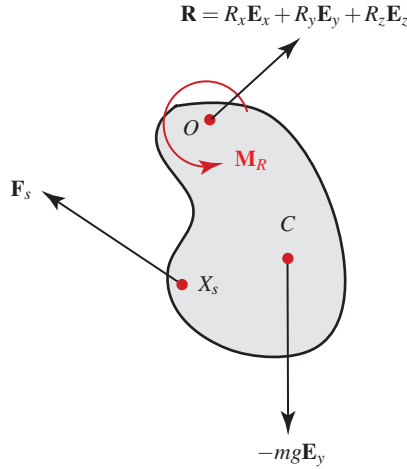


Fig. 9.8 Free-body diagram.

Notice that $T = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}$ for this problem.

9.4.2 Forces and Moments

The free-body diagram for the body is shown in Fig. 9.8. The pin joint at O allows the rigid body to rotate freely about the \mathbf{E}_z -axis. In addition, it also serves to hold the point $X = O$ of the rigid body in place and to prevent the rigid body rotating about the \mathbf{E}_x and \mathbf{E}_y axes (or, equivalently, the \mathbf{e}_x and \mathbf{e}_y axes). The force that holds O fixed is the reaction force \mathbf{R} at O :

$$\mathbf{R} = R_x \mathbf{E}_x + R_y \mathbf{E}_y + R_z \mathbf{E}_z.$$

The moment that is supplied by the pin joint that prevents rotations of the rigid body other than in the \mathbf{E}_z direction is the reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R :

$$\mathbf{M}_R = M_{R_x} \mathbf{e}_x + M_{R_y} \mathbf{e}_y.$$

We reiterate that the moment \mathbf{M}_R ensures that the rotation of the body is constrained to being about the \mathbf{E}_z -axis.⁸

The resultant force and moment on the body are

$$\mathbf{F} = -mg\mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{F}_s + \mathbf{R}, \quad \mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{M}_R - \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times mg\mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{x}_s \times \mathbf{F}_s.$$

⁸ The reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R is normally not mentioned in engineering dynamics texts. We shortly see another example illustrating the need for this moment.

9.4.3 Balance Laws

We now turn to the balances of linear and angular momenta for the rigid body. Due to the unknown force \mathbf{R} , it is easiest to use the balance of angular momentum about O . The balance laws are

$$\mathbf{F} = m\bar{\mathbf{a}}, \quad \mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O.$$

Substituting for the resultant forces and moments, we find that

$$\mathbf{F}_s - mg\mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{R} = m\bar{\mathbf{a}}, \quad \mathbf{M}_R - \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times mg\mathbf{E}_y + \mathbf{x}_s \times \mathbf{F}_s = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O.$$

We have refrained from substituting for the inertias and accelerations here. These six equations may be solved for the five unknown reactions, \mathbf{R} and \mathbf{M}_R , and they also provide a differential equation for $\theta(t)$.

9.4.4 Analysis

We first determine the unknown forces and moments. From the balance of linear momentum, we obtain three equations for the three unknown components of \mathbf{R} :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R} &= mg\mathbf{E}_y - \mathbf{F}_s + m\bar{\mathbf{a}} \\ &= mg\mathbf{E}_y + K\varepsilon \frac{\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A}{\|\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A\|} + m(\ddot{\theta}(x\mathbf{e}_y - y\mathbf{e}_x) - \dot{\theta}^2(x\mathbf{e}_x + y\mathbf{e}_y)). \end{aligned}$$

Next, we find, from the balance of angular momentum, that

$$\begin{aligned} M_{R_x} &= \mathbf{M}_R \cdot \mathbf{e}_x = (-\mathbf{x}_s \times \mathbf{F}_s + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times mg\mathbf{E}_y + \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O) \cdot \mathbf{e}_x, \\ M_{R_y} &= \mathbf{M}_R \cdot \mathbf{e}_y = (-\mathbf{x}_s \times \mathbf{F}_s + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times mg\mathbf{E}_y + \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O) \cdot \mathbf{e}_y. \end{aligned}$$

The expression for the spring force \mathbf{F}_s and rate of change of angular momentum $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$ can be substituted into these expressions if desired. Notice that if the reaction moment were omitted, then the \mathbf{e}_x and \mathbf{e}_y components of the balance of angular momentum would not be satisfied. As a result the body could not move as one had assumed when setting up the kinematics of the problem.⁹

The motion of the rigid body can be found from the sole remaining equation. This equation is the $\mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z$ component of the balance of angular momentum:

$$(\mathbf{x}_s \times \mathbf{F}_s - \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times mg\mathbf{E}_y) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z.$$

⁹ The error in neglecting \mathbf{M}_R is equivalent to ignoring the normal force acting on a particle that is assumed to move on a surface.

Substituting for the forces and momentum, we find that

$$(I_{zz} + m(x^2 + y^2)) \ddot{\theta} = -mg(x \cos(\theta) - y \sin(\theta)) + K\varepsilon \frac{(\mathbf{x}_s \times \mathbf{r}_A) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z}{\|\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A\|}.$$

Given the initial conditions $\theta(t = t_0) = \theta_0$ and $\dot{\theta}(t = t_0) = \omega_0$, the solution of this equation determines the motion of the body.¹⁰

For this type of problem, one could also take the balance of angular momentum relative to the center of mass C . In this case, the reaction force \mathbf{R} would make its presence known in all six equations. By taking the balance of angular momentum relative to the point O , the reaction force \mathbf{R} does not enter three of the six equations and, consequently, makes the system of six equations easier to solve.

Let us now prove why the total energy E of the system is conserved. We start with the (alternative form of the) work-energy theorem and substitute for the forces and moments:

$$\dot{T} = \mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{v}_O - mg\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M}_R \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} + \mathbf{F}_s \cdot \mathbf{v}_s.$$

An expression for the kinetic energy T for this problem was recorded earlier. Now, because O is fixed, $\mathbf{v}_O = \mathbf{0}$, so \mathbf{R} has no mechanical power. Similarly, \mathbf{M}_R is perpendicular to $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, so it too has no power. The spring and gravitational forces are conservative:

$$-mg\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} = -\frac{d}{dt}(mg\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}}), \quad \mathbf{F}_s \cdot \mathbf{v}_s = -\frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{K}{2}\varepsilon^2\right).$$

Combining these results, we find that the total energy E of the rigid body is conserved:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\left(E = T + mg\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}} + \frac{K}{2}(\|\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0)^2\right) = 0.$$

One uses this equation in a similar manner as with particles. For instance, given the initial conditions $\theta(t = t_0) = \theta_0$ and $\dot{\theta}(t = t_0) = \omega_0$, one can then use the conservation of E to determine $\dot{\theta}$ at a later instant of the motion when θ is given.

9.4.5 A Pendulum Suspended by a Spring

To illustrate the results of this section, we consider a rod of length ℓ and mass m that is pin-jointed at O . The other end of the rod is attached to a fixed point A by a spring of stiffness K and unstretched length $\ell_0 = \ell$. Here, $\mathbf{r}_A = -\ell\mathbf{E}_x + \ell\mathbf{E}_y$. The differential equation governing $\theta(t)$ can be easily derived using the results presented

¹⁰ This is a nonlinear differential equation. As mentioned for a related example in Appendix A, its analytical solution can be found and expressed in terms of Jacobi's elliptic functions. The interested reader is referred to Lawden [58] or Whittaker [100] for details on these functions and how they are used in the solution of dynamics problems.

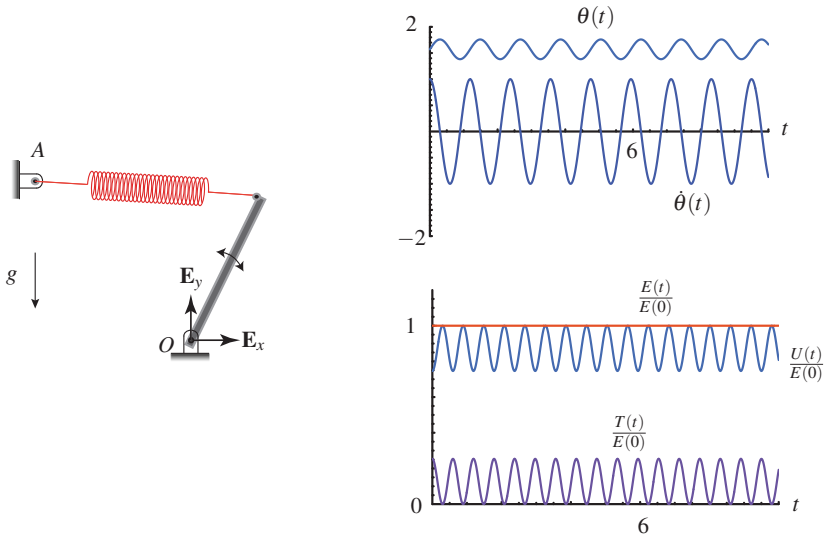


Fig. 9.9 The oscillatory motion of a rod that is attached to a fixed point A by a linear spring. Plots of $\theta(t)$, $\dot{\theta}(t)$, $T(t)$, $U(t)$, and $E(t)$ are also shown.

previously.¹¹ We assume that the rod is initially vertical and then set it in motion with a small initial velocity. Provided the spring is sufficiently stiff, the rod will oscillate about the vertical. An example of this situation is shown in Fig. 9.9. In one of the plots shown in this figure, energy conservation during this motion is illustrated:

$$T = \frac{m\ell^2}{6}\dot{\theta}^2, \quad U = \frac{mg\ell}{2}\sin(\theta) + \frac{K}{2}(\|\mathbf{x}_s - \mathbf{r}_A\| - \ell_0)^2, \quad E = T + U.$$

The other plot shows the oscillatory behaviors of $\theta(t)$ and $\dot{\theta}(t)$. The periodic nature of $\theta(t)$ is one of the reasons why systems similar to the one shown in Fig. 9.9 are often used in timing devices such as metronomes.

9.4.6 A Falling Rod

If you have ever noticed a glass or bottle falling over, then the results of the following analysis will hopefully be of interest to you. Here, as the second example, we consider a rod of length ℓ and mass m that is supported by a pin joint at O . As

¹¹ For this example, $I_{zz} = m\ell^2/12$, $x = \ell/2$, $y = 0$, $\mathbf{x}_s = \ell\mathbf{e}_x$, and $\ell_0 = \ell$. For the simulations shown in Fig. 9.9, the following parameter values were used: $m = 1$ kilogram, $\ell = 10$ meters, and $K = 100$ Newtons per meter.

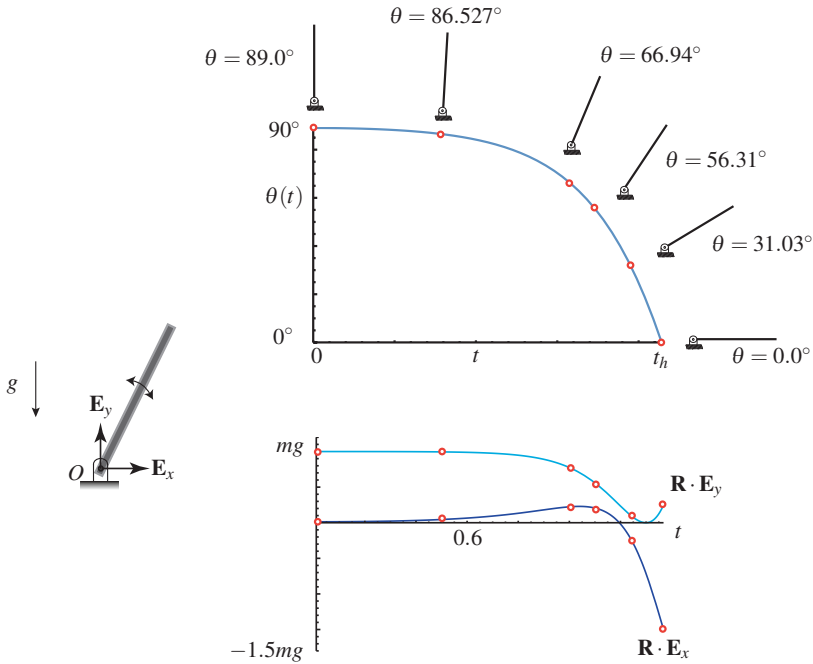


Fig. 9.10 A uniform rod of length ℓ and mass m that is given a small initial angular displacement, so it starts to rotate from a near vertical orientation. Plots of $\theta(t)$ and the \mathbf{E}_x and \mathbf{E}_y components of the reaction force $\mathbf{R}(t)$ are also shown. The \circ are used to label the instants of time $t = 0, t = 0.5, t = 1.0, t = 1.1, t = 1.25,$ and $t = t_h$ seconds, respectively.

shown in Fig. 9.10, the rod is initially at rest in the vertical position and is given a small angular displacement ε . The resulting displacement allows the rod to fall. We wish to determine $\theta(t)$, the reaction force at the pin joint $\mathbf{R}(t)$, and the time t_h that it takes for the rod to reach the horizontal.

This problem is a special case of the more general developments at the beginning of this section. The equation of motion and initial conditions are

$$\frac{m\ell^2}{3}\ddot{\theta} = -mg\ell \cos(\theta), \quad \theta(t = 0) = 90^\circ - \varepsilon, \quad \dot{\theta}(t = 0) = 0,$$

respectively. The reaction force at the pin joint is

$$\mathbf{R} = mg\mathbf{E}_y + m\ell\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y - m\ell\dot{\theta}^2\mathbf{e}_x.$$

The equation of motion is numerically integrated and the inclination θ of the rod determined as a function of time. A representative set of results is shown in Fig.

9.10, where we have chosen

$$g = 9.8 \text{ meters/second}^2, \quad \ell = 1 \text{ meter}, \quad \varepsilon = 1^\circ.$$

For the chosen value of the angular disturbance ε , the time t_h that it takes for the rod to reach the horizontal can be determined from the numerical simulations:

$$t_h = 4.2836 \sqrt{\frac{\ell}{g}} \text{ seconds.}$$

You should observe that $\theta(t)$ is independent of the mass m of the rod and t_h increases as the length of the rod increases.

What is interesting to note from Fig. 9.10 is that the motion of the rod is difficult to detect visually until at least half a second or more after the small angular displacement ε (or disturbance) has been applied. To the naked eye, for the first half of a second after the rod has been disturbed it will appear to be stationary. The rod then starts to fall at an ever-increasing rate. The results shown in Fig. 9.10 are easy to reproduce with a meter stick. If you are unaware that the small angular displacement ε has been applied, then you will notice that by the time you do it is too late to intervene and prevent the meter stick from falling over.

The components of the reaction force \mathbf{R} are also shown in Fig. 9.10. We observe from this figure that at approximately 1.3 seconds after the disturbance has been applied, the vertical component of the reaction force vanishes for an instant. Because we are assuming that one end of the rod is connected to a pin joint, the vanishing of $\mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y$ is not an issue. However, if the end of the rod is assumed to be held stationary by static friction, then the possibility of the end of the rod slipping when $|\mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{E}_x| > \mu_s |\mathbf{R} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y|$ must be considered.

9.5 Rolling and Sliding Rigid Bodies

We now return to the rolling and sliding rigid bodies considered in Sections 8.5 and 8.6 of Chapter 8. We start by considering a rigid body \mathcal{B} that is in motion atop a fixed surface \mathcal{S} (see Fig. 9.11). At the instantaneous point of contact $P = X_P(t)$, the outward unit normal to the surface is \mathbf{n} . The velocity vector of the material point $X_P(t)$ that is instantaneously in contact with the surface is denoted by \mathbf{v}_P . Earlier, we saw that if the rigid body is rolling on the surface, then one has the rolling condition:

$$\mathbf{v}_P = \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) = \mathbf{0}.$$

If the rigid body is sliding on the surface, then one has the sliding condition:

$$\mathbf{v}_P \cdot \mathbf{n} = \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{n} + (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}})) \cdot \mathbf{n} = 0.$$

We now turn to the forces that enforce these constraints.

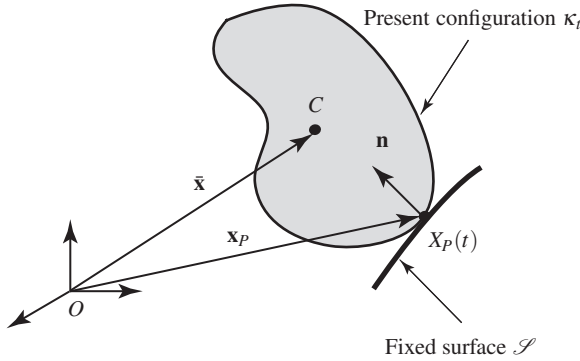


Fig. 9.11 *The geometry of contact.*

9.5.1 Friction

The force at the instantaneous point of contact P depends on the natures of the outer surface of the rigid body and the fixed surface. If their contact is smooth, then the reaction force at P is

$$\mathbf{F}_P = N\mathbf{n}.$$

On the other hand, if the surface is rough with coefficients of friction μ_s and μ_d , then this force is either of the static type ($\mathbf{v}_P = \mathbf{0}$),

$$\mathbf{F}_P = F_{Px}\mathbf{E}_x + F_{Py}\mathbf{E}_y + F_{Pz}\mathbf{E}_z \quad \text{where } \|\mathbf{F}_P - (\mathbf{F}_P \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}\| \leq \mu_s |\mathbf{F}_P \cdot \mathbf{n}|,$$

or, if there is relative motion ($\mathbf{v}_P \neq \mathbf{0}$),

$$\mathbf{F}_P = N\mathbf{n} - \mu_d \|N\mathbf{n}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_P}{\|\mathbf{v}_P\|}.$$

Clearly, if the contact is rough, then the rigid body can either roll or slip depending primarily on the amount of static friction available.

9.5.2 Energy Considerations

If the contact is smooth, then it should be clear that the force \mathbf{F}_P is workless. Similarly, if the rigid body is rolling, then the mechanical power of \mathbf{F}_P is $\mathbf{F}_P \cdot \mathbf{v}_P = 0$. It is only when the rigid body is sliding and the contact is rough that \mathbf{F}_P does work:

$$\mathbf{F}_P \cdot \mathbf{v}_P = N\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{v}_P - \mu_d \|N\mathbf{n}\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_P}{\|\mathbf{v}_P\|} \cdot \mathbf{v}_P = -\mu_d \|N\mathbf{n}\| \|\mathbf{v}_P\| < 0.$$

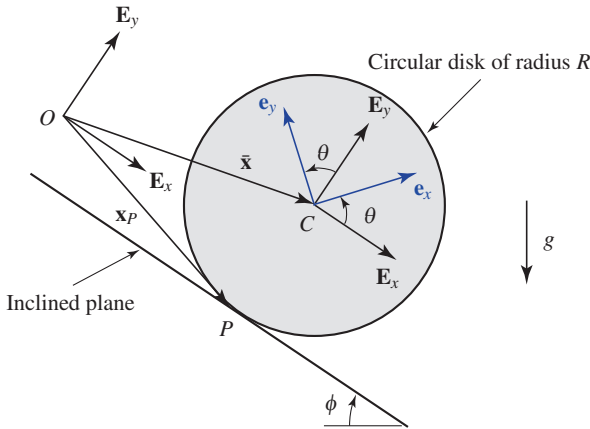


Fig. 9.12 A rigid body in motion on an inclined plane.

Notice that the power of the force in this case is negative, so it will decrease the kinetic energy T .

The previous results imply that if the only other forces acting on a rolling rigid body are conservative (such as gravitational and spring forces), then the total energy of the rigid body will be conserved. A similar comment applies to a sliding rigid body when the contact is smooth. As a result, in most solved problems in this area, such as sliding disks and tops, and rolling disks and spheres, this energy conservation is present.¹²

9.6 Examples of Rolling and Sliding Rigid Bodies

Let us now turn to a specific example shown in Fig. 9.12. We consider a rigid body of mass m whose outer surface is circular with radius R . We assume that the rigid body moves on an inclined plane under the influence of gravity. The center of mass C of the rigid body is assumed to be located at the geometric center of the circle of radius R . The contact is assumed to be rough with coefficients of friction μ_s and μ_d . It is assumed that $\mu_s \geq \mu_d$.

¹² There are few completely solved problems in this area (see, for examples and references, Borisov and Mamaev [15, 16], Hermans [48], Neimark and Fufaev [66], O'Reilly [70], Papastavridis [73], Routh [80, 81], and Zenkov et al. [102]).

9.6.1 General Considerations

We assume that the center of mass of the rigid body is given an initial velocity $v_0\mathbf{E}_x$, where $v_0 > 0$, at time $t = 0$, and we seek to determine the motion of the rigid body for subsequent times.

9.6.1.1 Kinematics

We assume that the motion is such that the axis of rotation is fixed: $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$. The corotational basis is defined in the usual manner:

$$\mathbf{e}_x = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

We also recall the relations

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z = \mathbf{0}.$$

Taking the origin as shown in Fig. 9.12, we denote the position vector of the center of mass of the body by

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z.$$

Here, z_0 is a constant. We shortly show that y is also a constant. Differentiating the expression for $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ we find that

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \bar{\mathbf{a}} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{y}\mathbf{E}_y.$$

Next, we address the angular momentum of the rigid body. We assume that $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ are principal axes of the rigid body in its present configuration. Hence,

$$\mathbf{H} = I_{zz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \dot{\mathbf{H}} = I_{zz}\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

For a cylinder of mass m and radius R or a circular disk of mass m and radius R ,

$$I_{zz} = \frac{mR^2}{2}.$$

Other rigid bodies of interest include circular hoops where $I_{zz} = mR^2$ and spheres where $I_{zz} = \frac{2mR^2}{5}$. If the contact condition is such that sliding occurs, then, as the normal $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{E}_y$,

$$\mathbf{v}_P \cdot \mathbf{E}_y = \bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y + (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}})) \cdot \mathbf{E}_y = 0.$$

For the present problem, $\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}} = -R\mathbf{E}_y$, so the sliding condition implies that $\dot{y} = 0$, as expected. For sliding, one has

$$\mathbf{v}_P = (\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta})\mathbf{E}_x = v_P\mathbf{E}_x.$$

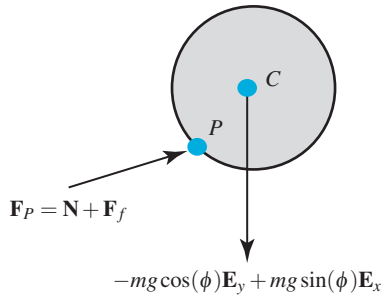


Fig. 9.13 Free-body diagram.

The velocity v_P is often referred to as the slip velocity. On the other hand, if rolling occurs, then

$$\mathbf{v}_P = \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) = \mathbf{0}.$$

This implies for the present problem that

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x = -R\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_x.$$

We discussed these results previously in Section 8.6 of Chapter 8.

9.6.1.2 Forces and Moments

One of the tasks remaining is to describe \mathbf{F} and \mathbf{M} . The free-body diagram for the system is shown in Fig. 9.13. In sum,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} &= -mg \cos(\phi)\mathbf{E}_y + mg \sin(\phi)\mathbf{E}_x + \mathbf{F}_P, \\ \mathbf{M} &= -R\mathbf{E}_y \times \mathbf{F}_P. \end{aligned}$$

If the body is rolling, then

$$\mathbf{F}_P = F_{P_x}\mathbf{E}_x + F_{P_y}\mathbf{E}_y + F_{P_z}\mathbf{E}_z,$$

whereas if the body is sliding, then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_P &= N\mathbf{E}_y - \mu_d \|N\mathbf{E}_y\| \frac{\mathbf{v}_P}{\|\mathbf{v}_P\|} \\ &= N\mathbf{E}_y - \mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}}{|\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}|} \mathbf{E}_x. \end{aligned}$$

9.6.1.3 Balance Laws

We are now in a position to examine the balance laws:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{F}_P - mg \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y + mg \sin(\phi) \mathbf{E}_x &= m\ddot{x} \mathbf{E}_x, \\ -R \mathbf{E}_y \times \mathbf{F}_P &= I_{zz} \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z.\end{aligned}$$

These equations are used to determine the force at P and the motion of the rigid body in what follows.

9.6.2 The Rolling Case

We first find, from the balance of linear momentum, that

$$\mathbf{F}_P = mg \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y - mg \sin(\phi) \mathbf{E}_x + m\ddot{x} \mathbf{E}_x.$$

Substituting this result into the balance of angular momentum and using the condition $\ddot{x} = -R\ddot{\theta}$, one obtains a differential equation for $x(t)$:

$$\left(\frac{I_{zz} + mR^2}{R} \right) \ddot{x} = mgR \sin(\phi).$$

This equation can be easily solved to determine $x(t)$:

$$x(t) = \left(\frac{mgR^2 \sin(\phi)}{2(I_{zz} + mR^2)} \right) t^2 + v_0 t.$$

In writing this solution, we assumed that $x(t=0) = 0$. We have required, in order to satisfy the rolling condition, that $\dot{\theta}(t=0) = -v_0/R$. We can also find the friction and normal forces as functions of time by substituting for $x(t)$ in the expression for \mathbf{F}_P given above:

$$\mathbf{F}_P = mg \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y - \left(\frac{mg \sin(\phi) I_{zz}}{I_{zz} + mR^2} \right) \mathbf{E}_x.$$

This is the complete solution to the rolling case.¹³

¹³ It is a good exercise to show that the total energy of this rolling rigid body is conserved. If this rigid body slips, then you should also be able to show that, because $\mathbf{F}_P \cdot \mathbf{v}_P < 0$, the total energy will decrease with time.

9.6.3 The Static Friction Criterion and Rolling

To determine whether there is a transition to sliding, we need to check the magnitude of the friction force for the rolling rigid body. Here, we use the standard static friction criterion:

$$\|F_{P_x}\mathbf{E}_x\| \leq \mu_s \|F_{P_y}\mathbf{E}_y\|.$$

Substituting for \mathbf{F}_P , we find that

$$\left\| \left(-\frac{mg \sin(\phi) I_{zz}}{I_{zz} + mR^2} \right) \mathbf{E}_x \right\| \leq \mu_s \|mg \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y\|.$$

This criterion can be simplified to

$$\beta \tan(\phi) \leq \mu_s,$$

where the parameter β is

$$\beta = \frac{I_{zz}}{I_{zz} + mR^2}.$$

If the incline is sufficiently steep, or the inertia is distributed in a certain manner, then $\beta \tan(\phi) > \mu_s$. Now suppose a body is placed at rest on an incline where $\beta \tan(\phi) \leq \mu_s$. The body will immediately start to roll down the incline and, because there is sufficient static friction, it will not start to slip.

9.6.4 The Sliding Case

For a sliding rigid body, the balance laws yield

$$\begin{aligned} N\mathbf{E}_y - \mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}}{|\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}|} \mathbf{E}_x - mg \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y + mg \sin(\phi) \mathbf{E}_x &= m\ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x, \\ -R\mathbf{E}_y \times \left(N\mathbf{E}_y - \mu_d |N| \frac{\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}}{|\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}|} \mathbf{E}_x \right) &= I_{zz} \ddot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

From these equations we obtain differential equations for x and θ and an equation for the normal force $N\mathbf{E}_y$.

First, for the normal force, we find that $N\mathbf{E}_y = mg \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y$. Next, the differential equations are

$$\begin{aligned} -\mu_d mg \cos(\phi) \operatorname{sgn}(v_P) + mg \sin(\phi) &= m\ddot{x}, \\ -\mu_d mg R \cos(\phi) \operatorname{sgn}(v_P) &= I_{zz} \ddot{\theta}, \end{aligned}$$

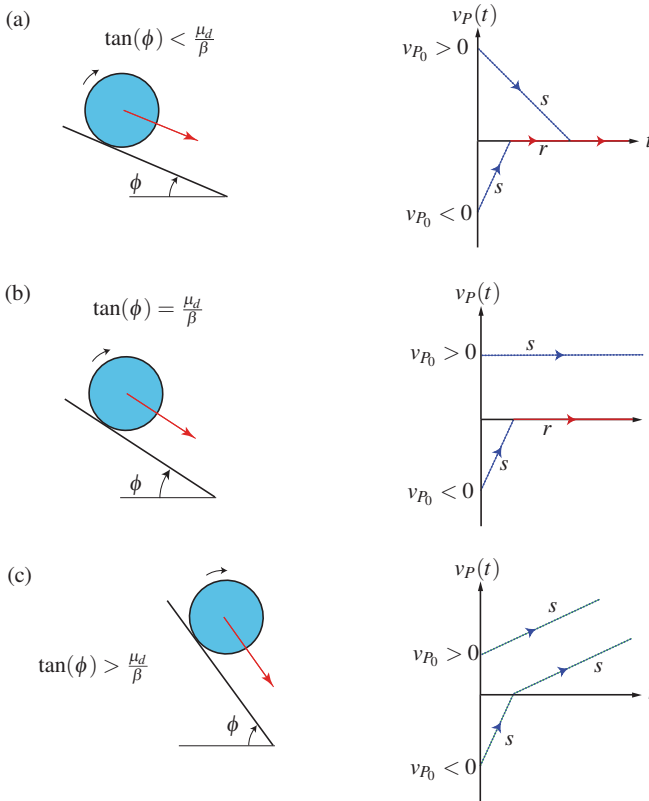


Fig. 9.14 The evolution of the slip velocity $v_P = \dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}$: (a) $\beta \tan(\phi) < \mu_d = \mu_s$, and there is sufficient friction to enable a transition from sliding to rolling, (b) $\beta \tan(\phi) = \mu_d = \mu_s$, and (c) $\beta \tan(\phi) > \mu_d = \mu_s$. The label s denotes sliding, the label r denotes rolling, v_{P_0} denotes $v_P(t = 0)$, and $\beta = I_{zz}/(I_{zz} + mR^2)$.

where

$$\text{sgn}(v_P) = \frac{\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}}{|\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}|},$$

and $v_P = \dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}$ is the slip velocity. Solving the differential equations subject to the initial conditions $x(t = 0) = 0$, $\theta(t = 0) = 0$, $\dot{x}(t = 0) = v_0 > 0$, and $\dot{\theta}(t = 0) = \omega_0$, we find that

$$x(t) = \frac{g \cos(\phi)}{2} (\tan(\phi) - \mu_d \text{sgn}(v_P)) t^2 + v_0 t,$$

$$\theta(t) = -\mu_d \left(\frac{mgR \cos(\phi)}{2I_{zz}} \right) \text{sgn}(v_P) t^2 + \omega_0 t.$$

Thus, we have determined the motion of the center of mass and the rotation of the rigid body.

9.6.5 Stick-Slip Transition

For problems involving sliding rigid bodies it is often illuminating to determine $v_P(t)$. To arrive at this expression, we first determine a differential equation for \dot{v}_P from the earlier differential equations for $\ddot{\theta}$ and \ddot{x} :

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{v}_P &= \ddot{x} + R\ddot{\theta} \\ &= \frac{g \cos(\phi)}{\beta} (\beta \tan(\phi) - \mu_d \text{sgn}(v_P)). \end{aligned}$$

As shown in Fig. 9.14, if $v_P < 0$, then the equation for \dot{v}_P implies that $v_P(t)$ will increase linearly in time. On the other hand, when $v_P > 0$, then the behavior of $v_P(t)$ depends on the ratio $\beta \tan(\phi)/\mu_d$ where $\beta = I_{zz}/(I_{zz} + mR^2)$. Here, we assume that $\mu_d = \mu_s$. From our discussion in Section 9.6.3, when $\beta \tan(\phi) < \mu_s$ there is sufficient friction to ensure that rolling can be sustained. Referring to Fig. 9.14(a), we observe that $v_P \rightarrow 0$ and when $v_P = 0$, rolling starts and persists indefinitely.¹⁴ On the other hand, when $\beta \tan(\phi) = \mu_d = \mu_s$, then, as shown in Fig. 9.14(b), sliding with $v_P > 0$ persists indefinitely, and if v_P is initially negative then a transition to rolling will eventually occur. Finally, if there is insufficient friction to ensure that rolling can occur, then sliding persists and v_P will increase indefinitely (see Fig. 9.14(c)). That is, the friction force is unable to overcome the gravitational force and prevent the body from sliding.

9.7 An Imbalanced Rotor

Many applications can be modeled as a rigid body rotating about a fixed axis, in particular, driveshafts in automobiles and turbomachinery. If the rigid body is balanced, then the axis of rotation corresponds to a principal axis of the rigid body. For example, if $\omega = \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z$, then $\mathbf{H} = I_{zz} \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z$. However, this is very difficult and expensive to achieve. An imbalance is said to occur in situations where either I_{xz} and/or I_{yz} are nonzero. In this case, \mathbf{H} and ω are not parallel.

The imbalance is a common feature of wheel assemblies on cars, and it is typical to add weights, usually ranging from 0.01 kilograms to 0.15 kilograms, onto the rims of the wheels to reduce this imbalance. Special machines, known as wheel

¹⁴ This type of transition occurs in bowling balls as they approach the pins. To aid this phenomenon, the bowling lanes are usually waxed to increase the friction between the ball and the lane as the former nears the pins (see Frohlich [41]). Some readers may also have noticed the same phenomenon in pool, a problem that is discussed in Routh [80, Article 239]

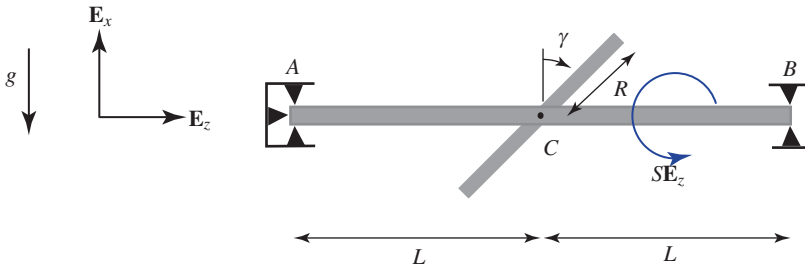


Fig. 9.15 *The imbalanced rotor problem.*

balancers, are used that spin the wheels at high speeds so that the imbalance can be detected and the appropriate location for the added weights determined. As we shall show, in rotating systems, such as wheel assemblies or a rotating shaft, imbalance manifests in bearing forces that are periodic functions of time and are ultimately destructive to the bearings. Furthermore, the magnitude of these oscillatory bearing forces grows quadratically with the rotational speed. Thus, and as is also observed in practice, the effects of the imbalance on the bearings in cars with an imbalanced wheel become more pronounced and destructive as the car's speed increases.

To illustrate the above phenomena, we turn to discussing the prototypical example of an imbalanced rigid body shown in Fig. 9.15. It consists of a homogeneous disk of mass m , radius R , and thickness h that is welded to a homogeneous shaft of mass M , length $2L$, and radius r . The centers of mass of these rigid bodies are coincident, and the disk is inclined at an angle γ to the vertical. The rigid body, consisting of the shaft and the disk, is supported by bearings at A and B . This rigid body is often called a rotor. Finally, an applied torque $S\mathbf{E}_z$ acts on the shaft.

9.7.1 Kinematics

We assume that the motion is such that the axis of rotation is fixed: $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z = \omega\mathbf{E}_z$ and $\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$. The corotational basis is defined in the usual manner:

$$\mathbf{e}_x = \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_y = -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{E}_z.$$

We also recall the relations

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}}_x = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_y, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_y = -\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{e}}_z = \mathbf{0}.$$

We denote the position vector of the center of mass of the rigid body by

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = x_0\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y + z_0\mathbf{E}_z.$$

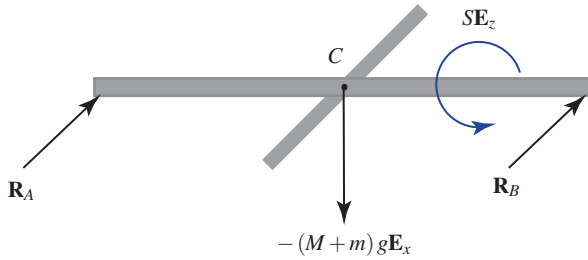


Fig. 9.16 Free-body diagram of the rotating shaft.

Here, the bearings at *A* and *B* are such that $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ is a constant:

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \bar{\mathbf{a}} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Next, we address the angular momentum of the rigid body. Here, it is important to note that $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ are not principal axes. For a rigid body rotating about the \mathbf{e}_z -axis, we recall from Section 9.1.3 that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= I_{xz}\omega\mathbf{e}_x + I_{yz}\omega\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\omega\mathbf{E}_z, \\ \dot{\mathbf{H}} &= (I_{xz}\dot{\omega} - I_{yz}\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{yz}\dot{\omega} + I_{xz}\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\omega}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

For the rigid body of interest, a long, but straightforward, calculation shows that the inertias of interest are

$$\begin{aligned} I_{xz} &= \left(\frac{mh^2}{12} - \frac{mR^2}{4}\right)\sin(\gamma)\cos(\gamma), \\ I_{yz} &= 0, \\ I_{zz} &= \frac{Mr^2}{2} + \left(\frac{mR^2}{4} + \frac{mh^2}{12}\right)\sin^2(\gamma) + \frac{mR^2}{2}\cos^2(\gamma). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that if $\gamma = 0^\circ, 90^\circ, 180^\circ,$ or $270^\circ,$ then I_{xz} vanishes and \mathbf{E}_z is a principal axis of the rigid body.

9.7.2 Forces and Moments

The free-body diagram is shown in Fig. 9.16. The reaction forces at the bearings have the representations

$$\mathbf{R}_A = R_{Ax}\mathbf{E}_x + R_{Ay}\mathbf{E}_y + R_{Az}\mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{R}_B = R_{Bx}\mathbf{E}_x + R_{By}\mathbf{E}_y.$$

These five forces ensure that the center of mass remains fixed and that the angular velocity vector has components in the \mathbf{E}_z direction only. There is also a gravitational force on the rigid body, $-(M+m)g\mathbf{E}_x$, in addition to an applied torque $S\mathbf{E}_z$. Consequently, the resultant force and moment acting on the rigid body are

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{R}_A + \mathbf{R}_B - (M+m)g\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{M} = L\mathbf{E}_z \times (\mathbf{R}_B - \mathbf{R}_A) + S\mathbf{E}_z.$$

9.7.3 Balance Laws

From the balance laws, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_A + \mathbf{R}_B - (M+m)g\mathbf{E}_x &= \mathbf{0}, \\ L\mathbf{E}_z \times (\mathbf{R}_B - \mathbf{R}_A) + S\mathbf{E}_z &= I_{xz}\dot{\omega}\mathbf{e}_x + I_{xz}\omega^2\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\omega}\mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

As a result, we have six equations for the five unknown components of the reaction forces and a differential equation for θ .

9.7.4 Analysis

We turn our attention to the case where $\boldsymbol{\omega}$ is a constant: $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \omega_0\mathbf{E}_z$. The six equations above simplify to

$$R_{Ax} + R_{Bx} - (M+m)g = 0, \quad R_{Ay} + R_{By} = 0, \quad R_{Az} = 0,$$

$$L(R_{Ay} - R_{By}) = -I_{xz}\omega_0^2 \sin(\omega_0 t), \quad L(R_{Bx} - R_{Ax}) = I_{xz}\omega_0^2 \cos(\omega_0 t), \quad S = 0.$$

Notice that from the \mathbf{E}_z component of the balance of angular momentum we find that $S = 0$. That is, no applied torque is needed to rotate the rigid body at a constant angular speed. Solving for the bearing forces, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_A &= \left(\frac{M+m}{2} \right) g\mathbf{E}_x - \left(\frac{I_{xz}\omega_0^2}{2L} \right) (\cos(\omega_0 t)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\omega_0 t)\mathbf{E}_y), \\ \mathbf{R}_B &= \left(\frac{M+m}{2} \right) g\mathbf{E}_x + \left(\frac{I_{xz}\omega_0^2}{2L} \right) (\cos(\omega_0 t)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\omega_0 t)\mathbf{E}_y). \end{aligned}$$

Clearly, these forces are the superposition of constant and periodic terms. Recalling the expression for I_{xz} given previously, it is easy to see that the periodic component of these forces vanishes when $\gamma = 0^\circ, 90^\circ, 180^\circ, \text{ or } 270^\circ$. The rigid body is then said to be balanced.

To illustrate the features of bearing forces in imbalanced situations that we mentioned earlier in this section, we now consider the component $R_{Bx} = \mathbf{R}_B \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$ of \mathbf{R}_B . As shown in Fig. 9.17, when the rotor is stationary, R_{Bx} is constant. However, as

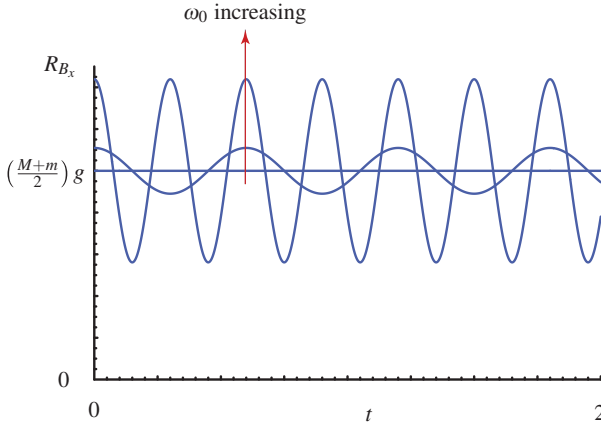


Fig. 9.17 The component $R_{B_x} = \mathbf{R}_B \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$ of the bearing force \mathbf{R}_B for the imbalanced rotor as a function of the rotation speed. In this figure, the three cases corresponding to a stationary rotor, a rotor spinning at 100 RPM, and a rotor spinning at 200 RPM are shown.

the speed ω_0 increases, the magnitude of the oscillatory component of R_{B_x} grows in magnitude quadratically in ω_0 .

9.8 Summary

The first set of important results in this chapter pertained to a system of forces and a pure moment acting on a rigid body. Specifically, for a system of K forces \mathbf{F}_i ($i = 1, \dots, K$) and a moment \mathbf{M}_e , that is not due to the moment of an applied force, acting on the rigid body, the resultant force \mathbf{F} and moments are

$$\mathbf{F} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i,$$

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{M}_e + \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{x}_i \times \mathbf{F}_i,$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_e + \sum_{i=1}^K (\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times \mathbf{F}_i.$$

Here, \mathbf{M}_O is the resultant moment relative to a fixed point O and \mathbf{M} is the resultant moment relative to the center of mass C of the rigid body.

The relationship between forces and moments and the motion of the rigid body is postulated using the balance laws. There are two equivalent sets of balance laws:

$$\mathbf{F} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}, \quad \mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O,$$

and

$$\mathbf{F} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}, \quad \mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}.$$

When these balance laws are specialized to the case of a fixed-axis rotation, the expressions for $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$ and $\dot{\mathbf{H}}$ simplify. For instance,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} &= m\dot{\mathbf{v}}, \\ \mathbf{M} &= (I_{xz}\dot{\omega} - I_{yz}\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_x + (I_{yz}\dot{\omega} + I_{xz}\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_y + I_{zz}\dot{\omega}\mathbf{e}_z. \end{aligned}$$

In most problems, $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$ are chosen such that $I_{xz} = I_{yz} = 0$.

To establish conservations of energy, two equivalent forms of the work-energy theorem were developed in Section 9.2. First, however, the Koenig decomposition for the kinetic energy of a rigid body was established:

$$T = \frac{1}{2}m\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{H} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

This was then followed by a development of the work-energy theorem for a rigid body:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{M} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i + \mathbf{M}_e \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}.$$

To establish energy conservation results, this theorem is used in a similar manner to the one employed with particles and systems of particles.

Four sets of applications were then discussed:

1. Purely translational motion of a rigid body where $\boldsymbol{\omega} = \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{0}$.
2. A rigid body with a fixed point O .
3. Rolling rigid bodies and sliding rigid bodies.
4. Imbalanced rotors.

It is important to note that for the second set of applications, the balance law $\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$ is more convenient to use than $\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$. The role of \mathbf{M}_R in these problems is to ensure that the axis of rotation remains \mathbf{E}_z . Finally, the four steps discussed in Section 9.1.4 are used as a guide to solving all of the applications.

9.9 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 9.1: Starting from the definitions of \mathbf{M} and \mathbf{M}_O , show that $\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$ along with $\mathbf{F} = m\dot{\mathbf{v}}$ implies that $\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$.

Exercise 9.2: For the overturning cart discussed in Section 9.3.1, show that if the cart is tall (i.e., $a \gg b$), then the toppling force P is smaller than if the cart were stout (i.e., $a \ll b$).

Exercise 9.3: Consider a cart with the same dimensions as the one discussed in Section 9.3.1. Suppose that the applied force $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{0}$, but the front wheels are driven. The driving force on the respective front wheels is assumed to be

$$\mathbf{F}_2 = \mu N_{2y} \mathbf{E}_x, \quad \mathbf{F}_3 = \mu N_{3y} \mathbf{E}_x,$$

where μ is a constant. Calculate the resulting acceleration vector of the center of mass of the cart.

Exercise 9.4: Consider the example of a rigid body rotating about a fixed point O discussed in Section 9.4. Starting from $\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{H} + \bar{\mathbf{x}} \times m\bar{\mathbf{v}}$ and using the identity $\bar{\mathbf{v}} = \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \bar{\mathbf{x}}$ show that

$$\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} = \mathbf{H} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega} + m\bar{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}.$$

Why is this result useful?

Exercise 9.5: When solving the example discussed in Section 9.4, one person uses the balance law $\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$ instead of $\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$. Why is that approach valid?

Exercise 9.6: As a special case of the example discussed in Section 9.4, consider a long slender rod of length ℓ and mass m that is attached at one of its ends to a pin joint. Show that

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{1}{12} m\ell^2 \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \bar{\mathbf{v}} = \frac{\ell}{2} \dot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_y, \quad \mathbf{H}_O = \frac{1}{3} m\ell^2 \dot{\theta} \mathbf{E}_z, \quad T = \frac{1}{6} m\ell^2 \dot{\theta}^2.$$

Exercise 9.7: For the problem discussed in Exercise 9.6, show that if the sole applied force acting on the rod is a gravitational force, $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$, the equation governing the motion of the rod is

$$\frac{m\ell^2}{3} \ddot{\theta} = -\frac{mg\ell}{2} \cos(\theta).$$

Now suppose that the coordinate system had been chosen so that the gravitational force is now $mg\mathbf{E}_x$. Show that the equation governing the motion of the rod is

$$\frac{m\ell^2}{3} \ddot{\theta} = -\frac{mg\ell}{2} \sin(\theta).$$

Explain why these two formulations of the equations of motion are equivalent. Prove that the total energy of the rod is conserved. Why is this problem analogous to a planar pendulum problem?

Exercise 9.8: Consider a rigid body rolling on a fixed surface. Suppose that, apart from the friction and normal forces at the point of contact P , the applied forces

acting on the body are conservative; then why is the total energy of the rigid body conserved?

Exercise 9.9: Using the static friction criterion discussed in Section 9.6.3, show that a circular disk of mass m and radius R can roll without slipping on a steeper incline than a circular hoop of the same mass and radius.

Exercise 9.10: For a rolling disk on a horizontal incline, show that $|\dot{x}| \leq \mu_s g$. Similarly, for a sliding disk show that $|\dot{x}| = \mu_d g$. Using these results explain why rolling disks decelerate faster than sliding disks. This observation is the reason for the desirability of antilock braking systems (ABSs) in automobiles.

Exercise 9.11: Consider the sliding rigid disk discussed in Section 9.6.4 and suppose that $\phi=0$. Determine $\theta(t)$ and $x(t)$ for the two cases where initially $\text{sgn}(v_P) > 0$ and $\text{sgn}(v_P) < 0$.

Exercise 9.12: Recall the imbalanced rotor discussed in Section 9.7. For various values of ω_0 , plot the components R_{A_x} , R_{B_x} , R_{A_y} , and R_{B_y} using the numerical values $L = 10$ meters, $m = 20$ kilograms, $M = 100$ kilograms, $\gamma = -0.01$ radians, $h = 0.01$ meters, and $R = 1$ meter.

Part IV
Dynamics of Systems of Particles
and Rigid Bodies

Chapter 10

Systems of Particles and Rigid Bodies



TOPICS

This chapter is the culmination of the primer. To start, the linear momentum of a system of K particles and N rigid bodies is discussed. Similarly, the angular momenta and kinetic energy of such a system are developed. We then turn to the balance laws for a system and demonstrate how the balance laws can be used to determine the equations of motion, conservations of energy, angular momentum, and linear momentum in a range of examples. These examples include a double pendulum, a semi-circular cylinder rolling on a cart, a simple model for a spherical robot, and impact problems.



Fig. 10.1 *The American inventor Charles F. Taylor (1916–1997) on a prototype of his one-wheeled vehicle in the early 1960s in Colorado. The image was kindly provided to the author by Charles Taylor’s daughter, Mary Anne Taylor Urry.*

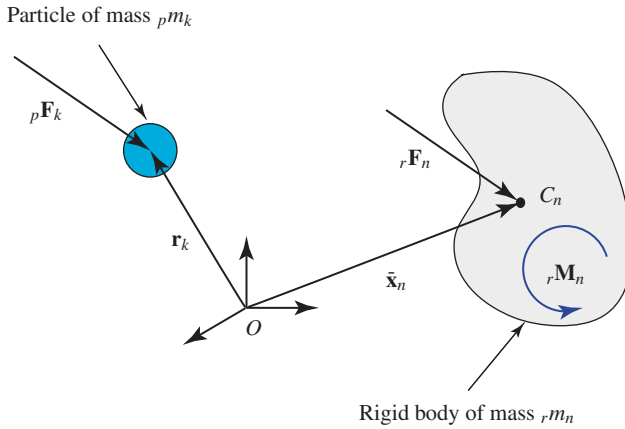


Fig. 10.2 The k th particle and the n th rigid body.

10.1 A System of Particles and Rigid Bodies

The systems of interest feature one or more rigid bodies. An example of such a system is shown in Fig. 10.1. This one-wheeled vehicle was developed and patented [96] in the 1950s and 1960s by Charles Taylor. The vehicle is propelled with the help of a platform-mounted single large wheel that is driven by a motor and stabilized and steered by gyroscopes. A simple model for this system, where the vehicle is modeled using two coupled rigid bodies, is discussed in [59]. Analyzing the dynamics of such a model is dependent on first establishing expressions for the momenta and kinetic energies of its components. In this section, we analyze systems of rigid bodies and particles with the aim of enabling the reader to establish expressions for their energies and momenta. To cover as many cases as possible, we now discuss a particular system of K particles and N rigid bodies. It is sufficiently general to cater to all of our subsequent developments and examples.

We use the index k to identify a specific particle ($k = 1, \dots, K$). The mass of the k th particle is denoted by ${}_p m_k$, its position vector relative to a fixed origin O by \mathbf{r}_k , and the resultant external force acting on the k th particle is denoted by ${}_p \mathbf{F}_k$ (see Fig. 10.2).

Similarly, we use the index n to identify a specific rigid body ($n = 1, \dots, N$). The mass of the n th rigid body is denoted by ${}_r m_n$, the position vector of its center of mass C_n relative to a fixed origin O by $\bar{\mathbf{x}}_n$, its angular velocity vector by $\boldsymbol{\omega}_n$, and the resultant external force and resultant external moment (relative to its center of mass) acting on the rigid body are denoted by ${}_r \mathbf{F}_n$ and ${}_r \mathbf{M}_n$, respectively (see Fig. 10.2).

The center of mass C of the system of particles and rigid bodies has a position vector $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$, defined by

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{m} \left(\sum_{k=1}^K p m_k \mathbf{r}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N r m_n \bar{\mathbf{x}}_n \right),$$

where m is the total mass of the system:

$$m = \sum_{k=1}^K p m_k + \sum_{n=1}^N r m_n.$$

You should notice how this definition is an obvious extension to the definition of the center of mass of a system of particles that we used previously.

10.1.1 Momenta and Kinetic Energy

The linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the system is the sum of the linear momenta of the individual particles and rigid bodies:

$$\mathbf{G} = \sum_{k=1}^K p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N r m_n \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n.$$

Notice that the linear momentum of the system can also be expressed in terms of the velocity vector of the center of mass of the system and the total mass of the system:

$$\mathbf{G} = m \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}.$$

This result follows from the definition of the center of mass.

The angular momentum \mathbf{H}_O of the system relative to the fixed point O is the sum of the individual angular momenta relative to O :

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \sum_{k=1}^K \mathbf{r}_k \times p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{H}_n + \bar{\mathbf{x}}_n \times r m_n \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n).$$

Similarly, the angular momentum \mathbf{H} of the system relative to its center of mass is

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_{k=1}^K (\mathbf{r}_k - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{H}_n + (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times r m_n \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n).$$

In both of the previous equations, \mathbf{H}_n is the angular momentum of the n th rigid body relative to its center of mass. You should notice that we have used the identities

$$\mathbf{H}_{O_n} = \mathbf{H}_n + \bar{\mathbf{x}}_n \times r m_n \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n,$$

where \mathbf{H}_{O_n} is the angular momentum of the n th rigid body relative to O .

Using the definition of the center of mass C of the system, an alternative expression for the angular momentum of the system relative to the center of mass can be established:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{H} &= \sum_{k=1}^K (\mathbf{r}_k - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times {}_p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{H}_n + (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times {}_r m_n \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^K (\mathbf{r}_k - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times {}_p m_k (\dot{\mathbf{r}}_k - \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}) + \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{H}_n + (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times {}_r m_n (\dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n - \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}).\end{aligned}$$

We leave the establishment of this alternative representation for \mathbf{H} as an exercise. The details are similar to those used to establish a representation for the angular momentum of a system of particles on Page 146.

Finally, the kinetic energy T of the system is defined to be the sum of the kinetic energies of its constituents:

$$T = \sum_{k=1}^K \frac{1}{2} {}_p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N \left(\frac{1}{2} {}_r m_n \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_n \right).$$

As with a system of particles, an expression for the energy T in terms of the kinetic energy of the center of mass $\frac{m}{2} \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}} \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{v}}}$, the rotational kinetic energies of the rigid bodies, and the kinetic energy of the particles and mass centers of the rigid bodies relative to the center of mass C can also be established but we leave this as an exercise (cf. Page 147 for the related development for a system of particles).

10.1.2 Impulses, Momenta, and Balance Laws

For each rigid body of the system, one has the balance of linear momentum and the balance of angular momentum:

$${}_r \mathbf{F}_n = {}_r m_n \ddot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_n, \quad \mathbf{M}_{O_n} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_{O_n} \quad (n = 1, \dots, N).$$

Here, \mathbf{M}_{O_n} is the resultant moment, relative to the point O , acting on the n th rigid body. We also have an alternative form of the balance of angular momentum relative to the center of mass of the n th rigid body: $\mathbf{M}_n = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_n$. In addition, for each particle one has the balance of linear momentum:

$${}_p \mathbf{F}_k = {}_p m_k \ddot{\mathbf{r}}_k \quad (k = 1, \dots, K).$$

As discussed in Chapter 6, the angular momentum theorem for a particle is derived from this balance law. Hence, for a particle, the balance of angular momentum is not a separate postulate as it is with rigid bodies.

Let \mathbf{M}_O denote the resultant moment acting on the system relative to the point O , \mathbf{M} denote the resultant moment acting on the system relative to its center of mass, and \mathbf{F} denote the resultant force acting on the system. Then, adding the balances of linear momenta, we find that

$$\mathbf{F} = \dot{\mathbf{G}},$$

where

$$\mathbf{F} = \sum_{k=1}^K {}_p\mathbf{F}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N {}_r\mathbf{F}_n.$$

Similarly, adding the balances of angular momenta relative to the point O ,

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O,$$

where

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \sum_{k=1}^K ({}_p\mathbf{r}_k \times {}_p\mathbf{F}_k) + \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{M}_{O_n}.$$

Hence, we have balances of linear and angular momenta for the system.¹

Another form of the balance laws can be obtained by integrating both sides of $\mathbf{F} = \dot{\mathbf{G}}$, $\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$, and $\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$. These forms are known as the impulse-momentum forms or the integral forms of the balance laws:

$$\mathbf{G}(t) - \mathbf{G}(t_0) = \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{F}(\tau) d\tau,$$

$$\mathbf{H}(t) - \mathbf{H}(t_0) = \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{M}(\tau) d\tau,$$

$$\mathbf{H}_O(t) - \mathbf{H}_O(t_0) = \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{M}_O(\tau) d\tau.$$

Here, the integral of the force \mathbf{F} is known as the *linear impulse* (of \mathbf{F}), and the integral of the moment \mathbf{M}_O is known as the *angular impulse* (of \mathbf{M}_O). As you have already witnessed in Chapter 6, these forms of the balance laws can be extremely useful in analyzing impact problems, where the impulse of certain forces and moments dominates contributions from other forces and moments.

¹ You should be able to consider special cases of these results: for example, cases where the system of interest contains either no rigid bodies or no particles. Additionally, we could establish a balance of angular momentum relative to the center of mass of the system ($\mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}$), but we leave this as an exercise. Such an exercise involves using $\mathbf{F} = \dot{\mathbf{G}}$ and $\mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O$. Its proof is similar to that used to establish the corresponding result for a single rigid body.

Although we did not discuss the impulse-momentum forms of the balance laws for rigid bodies, it should be obvious that, for each rigid body, one has

$$\begin{aligned} {}_r m_n \bar{\mathbf{v}}_n(t) - {}_r m_n \bar{\mathbf{v}}_n(t_0) &= \int_{t_0}^t {}_r \mathbf{F}_n(\tau) d\tau, \\ \mathbf{H}_{O_n}(t) - \mathbf{H}_{O_n}(t_0) &= \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{M}_{O_n}(\tau) d\tau \quad (n = 1, \dots, N). \end{aligned}$$

The corresponding results for a single particle were discussed in Chapter 6.

10.1.3 Conservations

We now address the possibility that in certain problems, a component of the linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the system, a component of the angular momenta \mathbf{H}_O or \mathbf{H} of the system, and/or the total energy E of the system is conserved. We have developed these results three times previously: once for a single particle, once for a system of particles, and once for a single rigid body.

10.1.3.1 Conservation of Linear Momentum

Let us first deal with conservation of linear momentum. Given a vector $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}(t)$, then it is easily seen that for $\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{c}$ to be constant during the motion of the system, we must have $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{G} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0$. Finding the vector \mathbf{c} that satisfies $\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{G} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0$ for a particular system is an art, and we discuss examples shortly. You should notice that if $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}$, then \mathbf{G} is conserved. The conservation of components of \mathbf{G} is often used in impact problems.

10.1.3.2 Conservation of Angular Momentum

Next, we have conservation of angular momentum. Given a vector $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}(t)$, we seek to determine when $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}$ is constant during the motion of the system. To do this, we calculate

$$\frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}) = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = \mathbf{M}_O \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}}.$$

It follows that it is necessary and sufficient for $\mathbf{M}_O \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0$ for $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{c}$ to be conserved during the motion of the system. Again, finding \mathbf{c} such that $\mathbf{M}_O \cdot \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{H}_O \cdot \dot{\mathbf{c}} = 0$ for a given system is an art. You should notice that if $\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{0}$, then \mathbf{H}_O is conserved. The corresponding results for \mathbf{H} are easily inferred.

The most common occurrence of conservation of angular momentum is a system of interconnected rigid bodies in space. There, because one assumes that $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{0}$, the

angular momentum \mathbf{H} is conserved, and astronauts use this conservation to change their orientation during space walks. Specifically, one can consider an astronaut as a system of rigid bodies. By changing the relative orientation of these bodies, they change the angular velocity vectors of parts of their bodies and in this manner change their overall orientation. A similar principle is behind the falling cat that always seems to land on its feet.²

10.1.3.3 Conservation of Energy

Finally, we turn to the conservation of energy. We start with the definition of the kinetic energy of the system, and, by using the work-energy theorems for the individual particles and rigid bodies, we establish a work-energy theorem for the system. This work-energy theorem can be used, as in the cases of single particles, systems of particles, and single rigid bodies, to establish whether the total energy of the system is conserved. We now proceed to establish the work-energy theorem for the system.

Recall that

$$T = \sum_{k=1}^K \frac{1}{2} {}_p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N \left(\frac{1}{2} {}_r m_n \dot{\mathbf{x}}_n \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}_n + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_n \right).$$

Taking the derivative of this expression and using the work-energy theorems discussed previously,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2} {}_p m_k \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k \right) &= {}_p \mathbf{F}_k \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k \quad (k = 1, \dots, K), \\ \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{1}{2} {}_r m_n \dot{\mathbf{x}}_n \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}_n + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_n \right) &= {}_r \mathbf{F}_n \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}_n + \mathbf{M}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_n \quad (n = 1, \dots, N), \end{aligned}$$

we find that

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \sum_{k=1}^K {}_p \mathbf{F}_k \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N ({}_r \mathbf{F}_n \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}_n + \mathbf{M}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_n).$$

This is the work-energy theorem for the system. Starting from this theorem and substituting for the forces and moments on the individual constituents of the system, one can ascertain whether the total energy of the system is conserved. Again, this procedure is identical to the one previously discussed. You should also note that for each rigid body we have an alternative form of the work-energy theorem that we can use in place of the terms on the right-hand side of the above equation.³ We will use the alternative form in two examples in this chapter.

² See the time-lapse images of the falling cat in Crabtree [25] and Kane and Scher [55]. References to modern approaches to this problem can be found in Fecko [38] and Shapere and Wilczek [86].

³ See Section 9.2.3 of Chapter 9 where the alternative form $\dot{T} = \sum_{i=1}^K \mathbf{F}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i + \mathbf{M}_e \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}$ for a single rigid body is discussed.

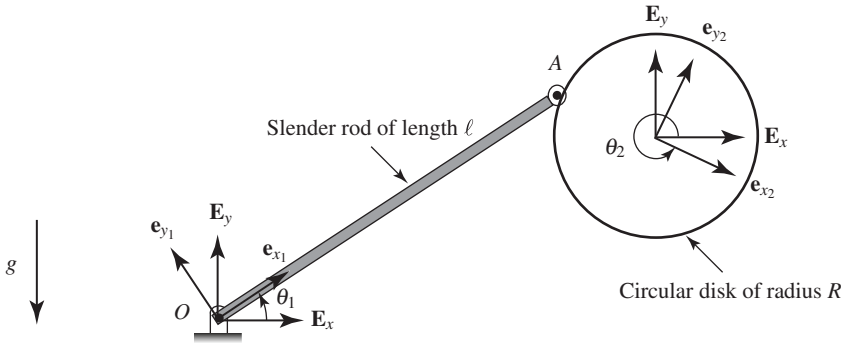


Fig. 10.3 Two coupled rigid bodies.

10.2 A Double Pendulum

Here, as our first example, we consider two connected rigid bodies (cf. Fig. 10.3). One of the bodies is a slender rod of length ℓ and mass m_1 that is pin-jointed at O . This point is fixed. The other is a circular disk of mass m_2 and radius R . They are connected by a pin joint at the point A that lies at the outer extremity of the rod and the edge of the disk. Both bodies rotate about the \mathbf{E}_z -axis, and this axis is also a principal axis for both bodies. A gravitational force acts on each of the bodies.

We wish to determine which kinematical quantities are conserved for this system. At the end of this section we discuss related problems and questions concerning this system.

10.2.1 Kinematics

To proceed, we first calculate the linear momentum \mathbf{G} , angular momentum \mathbf{H}_O , and kinetic energy T of the system. It is convenient to define two corotational bases $\{\mathbf{e}_{x1}, \mathbf{e}_{y1}, \mathbf{e}_{z1} = \mathbf{E}_z\}$ and $\{\mathbf{e}_{x2}, \mathbf{e}_{y2}, \mathbf{e}_{z2} = \mathbf{E}_z\}$. You should notice that these bases are related by

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e}_{x2} &= \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{e}_{x1} + \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{e}_{y1}, \\ \mathbf{e}_{y2} &= \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{e}_{y1} - \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{e}_{x1}.\end{aligned}$$

These identities are helpful in computing dot products and cross products between the two sets of corotational bases.

Because \mathbf{E}_z is a principal axis, we can use our results from Section 8.9 of Chapter 8 to write

$$\mathbf{H}_1 = \frac{m_1 \ell^2}{12} \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{H}_2 = \frac{m_2 R^2}{2} \dot{\theta}_2 \mathbf{E}_z.$$

You should notice that the angular velocity vectors of the bodies are

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_1 = \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \boldsymbol{\omega}_2 = \dot{\theta}_2 \mathbf{E}_z.$$

These velocities were used to calculate the angular momenta of the bodies relative to their centers of mass. As the angles θ_1 and θ_2 are both measured relative to \mathbf{E}_x , the angular velocity vectors $\dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{E}_z$ and $\dot{\theta}_2 \mathbf{E}_z$ are absolute.

One also has the following representations:⁴

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \frac{\ell}{2} \mathbf{e}_{x_1}, \quad \bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \ell \mathbf{e}_{x_1} + R \mathbf{e}_{x_2}, \quad \mathbf{x}_A = \ell \mathbf{e}_{x_1}.$$

Differentiating these representations, we find that

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 = \frac{\ell}{2} \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{e}_{y_1}, \quad \bar{\mathbf{v}}_2 = \ell \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{e}_{y_1} + R \dot{\theta}_2 \mathbf{e}_{y_2}, \quad \mathbf{v}_A = \ell \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{e}_{y_1}.$$

Hence, the linear momentum of the system is

$$\mathbf{G} = (m_1 + 2m_2) \frac{\ell}{2} \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{e}_{y_1} + m_2 R \dot{\theta}_2 \mathbf{e}_{y_2}.$$

By definition, the angular momentum of the system relative to O is

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{H}_1 + \bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 \times m_1 \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 + \mathbf{H}_2 + \bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 \times m_2 \bar{\mathbf{v}}_2.$$

Substituting for the kinematical quantities on the right-hand side of this equation and using the identities

$$\mathbf{e}_{x_1} \times \mathbf{e}_{y_2} = \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{E}_z, \quad \mathbf{e}_{x_2} \times \mathbf{e}_{y_1} = \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{E}_z,$$

one finds the following expression for the angular momentum of the system relative to O :

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \frac{m_1 \ell^2}{3} \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{E}_z + m_2 \left(\ell^2 \dot{\theta}_1 + \frac{3R^2}{2} \dot{\theta}_2 \right) \mathbf{E}_z + m_2 R \ell (\dot{\theta}_2 + \dot{\theta}_1) \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \mathbf{E}_z.$$

Finally, the kinetic energy of the system is the sum of the kinetic energies of the rod and the disk:

$$T = \frac{1}{2} m_1 \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_1 + \frac{1}{2} m_2 \bar{\mathbf{v}}_2 \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_2 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{H}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_2.$$

All of the ingredients are present to write this expression in terms of the kinematical quantities discussed earlier:

$$T = \frac{m_1 \ell^2}{6} \dot{\theta}_1^2 + \frac{m_2}{2} \left(\ell^2 \dot{\theta}_1^2 + \frac{3R^2}{2} \dot{\theta}_2^2 + 2R\ell \dot{\theta}_1 \dot{\theta}_2 \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \right).$$

⁴ For ease of notation, we drop the subscripts r and p used in the previous sections.

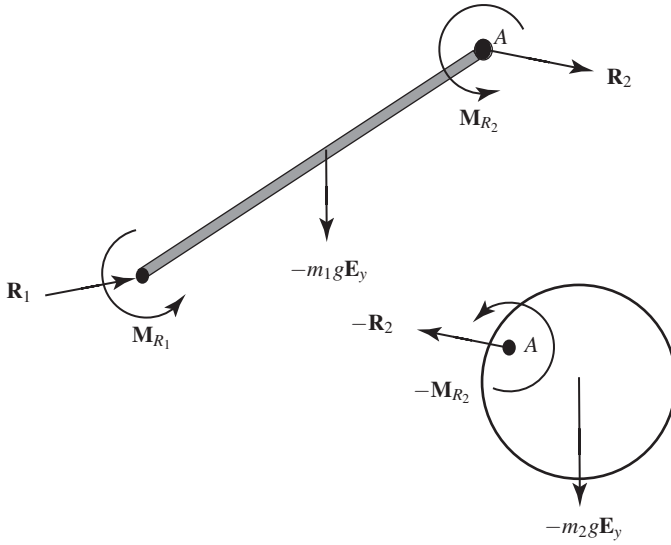


Fig. 10.4 Free-body diagrams of the rod and the disk.

The identity $\mathbf{e}_{y_1} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{y_2} = \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1)$ is used to establish the last term in the expression for T .

10.2.2 Forces and Moments

In order to examine which conserved quantities are present in this system, we first need to determine the forces and moments acting on each body. Referring to the free-body diagrams shown in Fig. 10.4, you should notice that there is a reaction force $\mathbf{R}_1 = R_{1x} \mathbf{E}_x + R_{1y} \mathbf{E}_y + R_{1z} \mathbf{E}_z$ at O , equal and opposite reaction forces of the form $\mathbf{R}_2 = R_{2x} \mathbf{E}_x + R_{2y} \mathbf{E}_y + R_{2z} \mathbf{E}_z$ at A , a reaction moment at O , $\mathbf{M}_{R1} = M_{R1x} \mathbf{E}_x + M_{R1y} \mathbf{E}_y$, and equal and opposite reaction moments of the form $\mathbf{M}_{R2} = M_{R2x} \mathbf{E}_x + M_{R2y} \mathbf{E}_y$ at A . These reactions ensure that the bodies are connected and their angular velocities are in the \mathbf{E}_z direction.

In summary, the resultant forces are

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_1 &= \mathbf{R}_1 + \mathbf{R}_2 - m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{F}_2 &= -\mathbf{R}_2 - m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{F} &= \mathbf{R}_1 - (m_1 + m_2) g \mathbf{E}_y. \end{aligned}$$

The resultant moments are

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}_{O_1} &= \bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 \times (2\mathbf{R}_2 - m_1g\mathbf{E}_y) + \mathbf{M}_{R_1} + \mathbf{M}_{R_2}, \\ \mathbf{M}_{O_2} &= -2\bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 \times \mathbf{R}_2 - \bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 \times m_2g\mathbf{E}_y - \mathbf{M}_{R_2}, \\ \mathbf{M}_O &= \mathbf{M}_{O_1} + \mathbf{M}_{O_2} = (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 \times -m_1g\mathbf{E}_y) + (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 \times -m_2g\mathbf{E}_y) + \mathbf{M}_{R_1}.\end{aligned}$$

10.2.3 Balance Laws and Analysis

Next, we examine conservation results. Clearly, $\mathbf{F} \neq \mathbf{0}$, even if gravity were absent, so \mathbf{G} cannot be conserved. Next, we have that

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{M}_O = (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 \times -m_1g\mathbf{E}_y) + (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 \times -m_2g\mathbf{E}_y) + \mathbf{M}_{R_1}.$$

Because \mathbf{M}_O has components in the \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z directions, no component of \mathbf{H}_O is conserved. If gravity were absent, then $\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = \mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{M}_{R_1} = M_{R_{1x}}\mathbf{E}_x + M_{R_{1y}}\mathbf{E}_y$, and $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ would be conserved.

We now turn to the question of whether energy is conserved. To proceed, we start with the work-energy theorem for the system:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \mathbf{F}_1 \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_1 + \mathbf{M}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_2 + \mathbf{M}_2 \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_2.$$

Substituting for the forces and moments listed above, we find with some rearranging that⁵

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dT}{dt} &= \mathbf{R}_1 \cdot \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{R}_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}_A - m_1g\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 + (\mathbf{M}_{R_1} + \mathbf{M}_{R_2}) \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_1 \\ &\quad - \mathbf{R}_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}_A - m_2g\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_2 - \mathbf{M}_{R_2} \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_2 \\ &= -m_1g\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 - m_2g\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_2.\end{aligned}$$

Notice that we used the fact that the reaction moments are normal to the angular velocities, and, consequently, they do not contribute to the rate of change of kinetic energy. In addition, the contribution from the reaction force \mathbf{R}_2 acting on the first rigid body cancels the contribution from $-\mathbf{R}_2$ acting on the second rigid body. After manipulating the gravitational terms in the usual manner, we find that the rate of change of the total energy,

$$E = T + m_1g\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 + m_2g\mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}}_2,$$

is

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = 0.$$

⁵ Notice that after the rearranging, one has the alternative form of the work-energy theorem mentioned previously. For a single rigid body, this alternative form was discussed in Section 9.2.3 of Chapter 9.

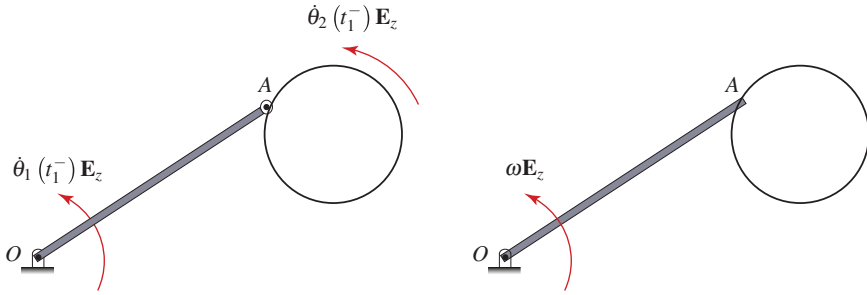


Fig. 10.5 Two rigid bodies connected by a pin joint at A . At a time $t = t_1$, the joint freezes up. Following this event, the two bodies now rotate about O with a common angular velocity vector.

As anticipated, the gravitational potential energy of the system is equivalent to the gravitational potential energy of the center of mass:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 + m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y \cdot \bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 &= ((m_1 + m_2) \bar{\mathbf{x}} = m_1 \bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 + m_2 \bar{\mathbf{x}}_2) \cdot g \mathbf{E}_y \\ &= (m_1 + m_2) g \bar{\mathbf{x}} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y. \end{aligned}$$

In summary, if gravity is present, then only the total energy is conserved. On the other hand, if gravity were absent, then, in addition to energy conservation, $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ would also be conserved.

10.2.4 A Related Example

A related problem is to assume that the system is in motion. At some time $t = t_1$ the pin joint at A freezes up so that $\dot{\theta}_1 = \dot{\theta}_2$ for $t > t_1$ (cf. Fig. 10.5). Given $\theta_1(t_1^-)$, $\theta_2(t_1^-)$, $\dot{\theta}_1(t_1^-)$, and $\dot{\theta}_2(t_1^-)$, where t_1^- denotes the instant just before the freeze-up, is it possible to determine $\dot{\theta}_1(t_1^+) = \dot{\theta}_2(t_1^+) = \omega$, where t_1^+ denotes the instant just after the freeze-up?

The answer is yes provided we assume that the freeze occurs instantaneously. This assumption enables us to ignore the angular impulse due to the gravitational force on the system. In addition, the orientations of the rigid bodies do not change during the freeze:

$$\theta_1(t_1) = \theta_1(t_1^-) = \theta_1(t_1^+), \quad \theta_2(t_1) = \theta_2(t_1^-) = \theta_2(t_1^+).$$

The integral form of the balance of angular momentum relative to O for the system,

$$\mathbf{H}_O(t_1^-) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = \mathbf{H}_O(t_1^+) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z,$$

enables one to determine $\omega = \dot{\theta}_1(t_1^+) = \dot{\theta}_2(t_1^+)$. Explicitly,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_O(t_1^-) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z &= \frac{m_1 \ell^2}{3} \dot{\theta}_1(t_1^-) + m_2 \left(\ell^2 \dot{\theta}_1(t_1^-) + \frac{3R^2}{2} \dot{\theta}_2(t_1^-) \right) \\ &\quad + m_2 R \ell (\dot{\theta}_2(t_1^-) + \dot{\theta}_1(t_1^-)) \cos(\theta_2(t_1) - \theta_1(t_1)), \\ \mathbf{H}_O(t_1^+) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z &= \left(\frac{m_1 \ell^2}{3} + m_2 \left(\ell^2 + \frac{3R^2}{2} \right) + 2m_2 R \ell \cos(\theta_2(t_1) - \theta_1(t_1)) \right) \omega. \end{aligned}$$

Equating $\mathbf{H}_O(t_1^+)$ to $\mathbf{H}_O(t_1^-)$ provides an equation to determine ω . An interesting case occurs when the rod is not rotating but the disk is rotating prior to joint freezing. In this case, the angular momentum of the disk gets transferred to the system because of the joint freezing and the rod experiences an instantaneous change in its angular velocity. One can also easily show that the energy is not conserved during the process of the joint freezing, but we leave this as an exercise.

10.3 Rocking a Semi-circular Cylinder on a Cart

For our next example, we consider a semi-circular cylinder of radius R , mass m_1 , and moment of inertia (relative to its center of mass) I_{zz} that is free to move on the rough upper surface of a cart (cf. Fig. 10.6). A force $\mathbf{P} = P(t)\mathbf{E}_x$ is applied to the cart. By moving the cart back and forth, the friction and normal forces at the instantaneous point of contact P_1 of the semi-circular cylinder cause the semi-circular cylinder to move. If there is sufficient static friction, then the semi-circular cylinder will roll and rock back and forth on the cart.

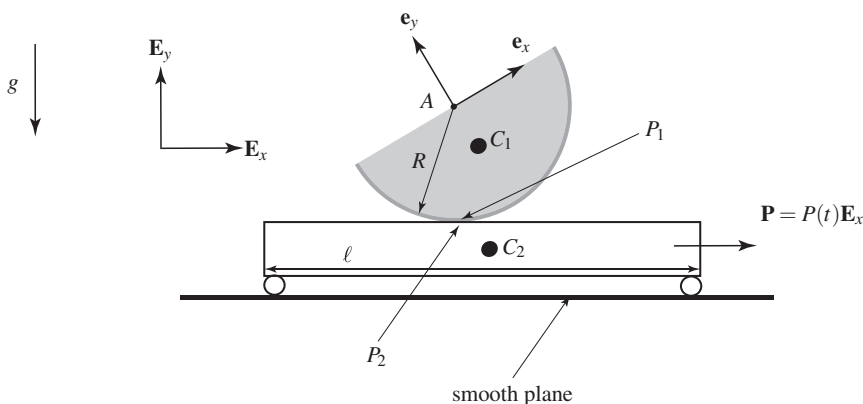


Fig. 10.6 A rigid semi-circular cylinder of mass m and radius R rolling on a moving cart that has a length ℓ . The points P_1 of the semi-circular cylinder and P_2 of the cart have identical position vectors.

There are several aspects of this system that deserve mention:

- (i) The geometric center A of the cylindrical surface is not identical to the center of mass C_1 of the semi-circular cylinder. As a result, to simplify the rolling constraint, it is more convenient in formulating a model for the system to use the position vector of the geometric center rather than the center of mass.
- (ii) In this system, both the friction \mathbf{F}_{f_1} and normal \mathbf{N}_1 forces acting at the instantaneous point of contact P_1 have moments relative to the center of mass C_1 .
- (iii) As with rolling cylinders, we will use $\mathbf{F}_1 = m_1 \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_1$ to determine the static friction force and normal force acting on the semi-circular cylinder. The resulting expressions are then used with a balance of angular momentum $\mathbf{M}_1 = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_1$ to determine the motion of the semi-circular cylinder.

Our goal in this section is to determine the equations of motion for this system, to determine the forces \mathbf{F}_{f_1} and \mathbf{N}_1 , and, with the help of numerical integrations, show how the applied force can rock the semi-circular cylinder back and forth.

10.3.1 Kinematics

As shown in Fig. 10.6, because the cart is assumed to only have translational motion, it suffices to use a single corotational basis attached to the semi-circular cylinder. The position vectors of A and the center of mass C_1 have the representations

$$\mathbf{x}_A = x_1 \mathbf{E}_x + y_{01} \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{x}_A - h \mathbf{e}_y,$$

where y_{01} and h are constants:

$$I_{zz} = \frac{m_1}{2} (R^2 - 2h^2), \quad h = \frac{4R}{3\pi}.$$

The point P_1 is the instantaneous point of contact of the semi-circular cylinder with the cart. The position vector of the center of mass C_2 of the cart has the representation

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}}_2 = x_2 \mathbf{E}_x + y_{02} \mathbf{E}_y,$$

where y_{02} is a constant. For future reference, the point P_2 is the instantaneous point of contact of the cart with the semi-circular cylinder. In the results to follow, we will need to check that

$$-90^\circ < \theta < 90^\circ, \quad |x_2 - x_1| < \frac{\ell}{2},$$

otherwise the semi-circular cylinder may have flipped over or fallen off the edge of the cart.

The velocity of P_1 with respect to P_2 is the relative velocity vector of interest. To compute a representation for \mathbf{v}_{P_1} , we use the identity $\mathbf{v}_{P_1} = \mathbf{v}_A + \boldsymbol{\omega}_1 \times (\mathbf{x}_{P_1} - \mathbf{x}_A)$

where the angular velocity vector of the semi-circular cylinder is $\boldsymbol{\omega}_1 = \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_{P_1} &= \dot{x}_1\mathbf{E}_x + \dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z \times (-R\mathbf{E}_y) \\ &= (\dot{x}_1 + R\dot{\theta})\mathbf{E}_x. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}} = \mathbf{v}_{P_1} - \mathbf{v}_{P_2} = (\dot{x}_1 + R\dot{\theta} - \dot{x}_2)\mathbf{E}_x.$$

When the cart is stationary, $\dot{x}_2 = 0$ and this representation for \mathbf{v}_{rel} reduces to the slip velocity we discussed earlier in Section 8.6. When the body of mass m_1 is rolling on the cart, the relative velocity vector is zero and we have the rolling condition

$$\dot{x}_1 + R\dot{\theta} - \dot{x}_2 = 0.$$

The linear momentum \mathbf{G}_1 , angular momentum \mathbf{H}_1 , and kinetic energy T_1 of the semi-circular cylinder have the following representations:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G}_1 &= m_1\dot{x}_1\mathbf{E}_x + m_1h\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x, \\ \mathbf{H}_1 &= I_{zz}\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z, \\ T_1 &= \frac{1}{2}I_{zz}\dot{\theta}^2 + \frac{m_1}{2}(\dot{x}_1^2 + h^2\dot{\theta}^2 + 2h\dot{x}_1\dot{\theta}\cos(\theta)). \end{aligned}$$

The linear momentum and kinetic energy for the system have the representations

$$\mathbf{G} = (m_1\dot{x}_1 + m_2\dot{x}_2)\mathbf{E}_x + m_1h\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_x, \quad T = T_1 + \frac{m_2}{2}\dot{x}_2^2.$$

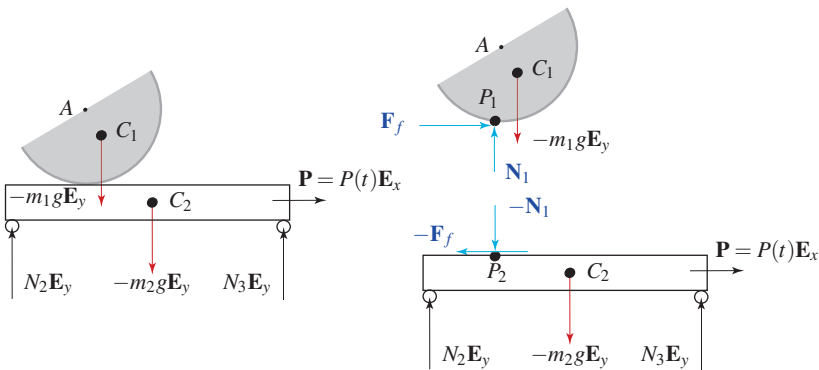


Fig. 10.7 Free-body diagrams of the system, the cart, and the semi-circular cylinder.

10.3.2 Forces and Moments

The free-body diagrams for the system and its components are shown in Fig. 10.7. For the semi-circular cylinder of mass m_1 , a friction force $\mathbf{F}_f = F_f \mathbf{E}_x$ and a normal force $\mathbf{N}_1 = N_1 \mathbf{E}_y$ act at the point of contact P_1 and a gravitational force $-m_1 g \mathbf{E}_y$ acts at the center of mass C_1 . For the cart, a friction force $-\mathbf{F}_f = -F_f \mathbf{E}_x$ and a normal force $-\mathbf{N}_1 = -N_1 \mathbf{E}_y$ act at the point of contact P_2 , applied forces $P \mathbf{E}_x$ and $-m_2 g \mathbf{E}_y$ act at the center of mass C_2 , and normal forces $\mathbf{N}_2 = N_2 \mathbf{E}_y$ and $\mathbf{N}_3 = N_3 \mathbf{E}_y$ act at the wheels of the cart and serve to support the system. The applied force \mathbf{P} acting on the cart oscillates in time:

$$\mathbf{P} = P(t) \mathbf{E}_x, \quad P(t) = P_0 \cos(\Omega_0 t),$$

where Ω_0 is a constant. The force \mathbf{P} is nonconservative.

The resultant force and moment relative to the center of mass of the semi-circular cylinder of mass m_1 are

$$\mathbf{F}_1 = F_f \mathbf{E}_x + (N_1 - m_1 g) \mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{M}_1 = (h \mathbf{e}_y - R \mathbf{E}_y) \times (F_f \mathbf{E}_x + N_1 \mathbf{E}_y).$$

The \mathbf{E}_z component of \mathbf{M}_1 will be needed later. To compute this component, we use the identity

$$(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot \mathbf{E}_z = (\mathbf{E}_z \times \mathbf{a}) \cdot \mathbf{b},$$

where \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are any two vectors. The resultant force on the cart and the resultant force on the system are

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_2 &= (N_2 + N_3 - N_1 - m_2 g) \mathbf{E}_y + (P(t) - F_f) \mathbf{E}_x, \\ \mathbf{F} &= (N_2 + N_3 + (m_1 + m_2) g) \mathbf{E}_y + P(t) \mathbf{E}_x. \end{aligned}$$

We could add a friction force component in the \mathbf{E}_z direction to \mathbf{F}_f . However, for the problem of interest here, we would find that it vanishes. Hence, in the interests of brevity, only forces in the vertical plane are considered here.

10.3.3 Balance Laws

The unknowns in the system are equations of motion for x_1 , x_2 , and θ , the friction force $F_f \mathbf{E}_x$, and the normal forces N_1 , N_2 , and N_3 . The rolling constraint $\dot{x}_1 + R \dot{\theta} - \dot{x}_2 = 0$, and the two sets of balance laws for the cart and the semi-circular cylinder are sufficient to compute these seven unknowns.

We start by using the balance laws for the semi-circular cylinder:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 \ddot{x}_1 \mathbf{E}_x + m_1 h (\ddot{\theta} \mathbf{e}_x + \dot{\theta}^2 \mathbf{e}_y) &= F_f \mathbf{E}_x + (N_1 - m_1 g) \mathbf{E}_y, \\ I_{zz} \ddot{\theta} &= (-h \mathbf{e}_x + R \mathbf{E}_x) \cdot (F_f \mathbf{E}_x + N_1 \mathbf{E}_y). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that we only computed the \mathbf{E}_z component of $\mathbf{M}_1 = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_1$: the remaining components of this equation vanish. Substituting for \mathbf{F}_f and $N_1\mathbf{E}_y$ into the \mathbf{E}_z component of the balance of angular momentum, we find one of the desired differential equations of motion:

$$(I_1 - 2m_1hR \cos(\theta)) \ddot{\theta} - m_1R\ddot{x}_2 + m_1h\ddot{x}_2 \cos(\theta) = -m_1Rh\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\theta) - m_1gh \sin(\theta).$$

where

$$I_1 = I_{zz} + m_1R^2 + m_1h^2.$$

Computing the \mathbf{E}_x component of the balance of linear momentum for the system, we find that

$$m_1(\ddot{x}_1 + h\ddot{\theta} \cos(\theta) - h\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\theta)) + m_2\ddot{x}_2 = P(t).$$

The balance of angular momentum of the cart and the \mathbf{E}_y component of the balance of linear momentum for the system can be used to compute a pair of equations for N_2 and N_3 . But we do not pursue this calculation here.⁶

10.3.4 Analysis

Summarizing the results from the previous section, the equations of motion for the system are

$$\begin{aligned} (I_1 - 2m_1hR \cos(\theta)) \ddot{\theta} - m_1R\ddot{x}_2 + m_1h\ddot{x}_2 \cos(\theta) &= -m_1Rh\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\theta) - m_1gh \sin(\theta), \\ m_1(\ddot{x}_1 + h\ddot{\theta} \cos(\theta) - h\dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\theta)) + m_2\ddot{x}_2 &= P(t), \\ \dot{x}_1 - \dot{x}_2 + R\dot{\theta} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

These coupled nonlinear equations of motion are only solvable using numerical methods. For a given set of initial conditions,

$$\theta(t=t_0), \quad \dot{\theta}(t=t_0), \quad x_1(t=t_0), \quad x_2(t=t_0), \quad \dot{x}_1(t=t_0),$$

the solutions $\theta(t)$, $x_1(t)$, and $x_2(t)$ determine the motion of the system. We can also use these results to determine the friction force and normal force acting on the semi-circular cylinder:

$$\begin{aligned} F_f &= m_1\ddot{x}_1 + m_1h(\ddot{\theta} \cos(\theta) - \dot{\theta}^2 \sin(\theta)), \\ N_1 &= m_1g + m_1h(\ddot{\theta} \sin(\theta) + \dot{\theta}^2 \cos(\theta)). \end{aligned}$$

⁶ If we did, we would find that N_2 and N_3 are not constant and oscillate as the semi-circular cylinder moves back and forth along the upper surface of the cart. The possibility of one of these forces vanishing is also present. If this were to happen, then our assumption that $\boldsymbol{\omega}_2 = \mathbf{0}$ would be invalid and the tipping motion of the cart must also be considered.

We emphasize that if one is given the values of θ , x_1 , and x_2 and their time derivatives at an instant in time, the above equations are sufficient to compute F_f and N_1 at that instant. The resulting values can then be inputted into the static friction criterion, $|F_f| \leq \mu_s |N_1|$, to see if the assumed rolling motion is possible.

The solutions to the equations of motion do not conserve the total energy E of the system:

$$E = T - m_1 g h \cos(\theta).$$

To prove that $\dot{E} \neq 0$, we apply the work-energy theorem to the system:⁷

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{E} &= (\mathbf{N}_1 + \mathbf{F}_f) \cdot \underbrace{\left(\mathbf{v}_{P_1} - \mathbf{v}_{P_2} \right)}_{=\mathbf{v}_{\text{rel}}=\mathbf{0}} + (\mathbf{N}_2 + \mathbf{N}_3 + P(t)\mathbf{E}_x) \cdot \dot{x}_2 \mathbf{E}_x \\ &= P(t)\dot{x}_2. \end{aligned}$$

However, $\mathbf{P} = P(t)\mathbf{E}_x$ is not conservative, so we cannot express $-P\dot{x}_2$ as the time derivative of a potential energy function. Consequently, E is not conserved during a motion of the system unless $P(t) = P_0$ where P_0 is a constant and the total energy would then need to be amended to include the potential energy $-P_0 x_2$.

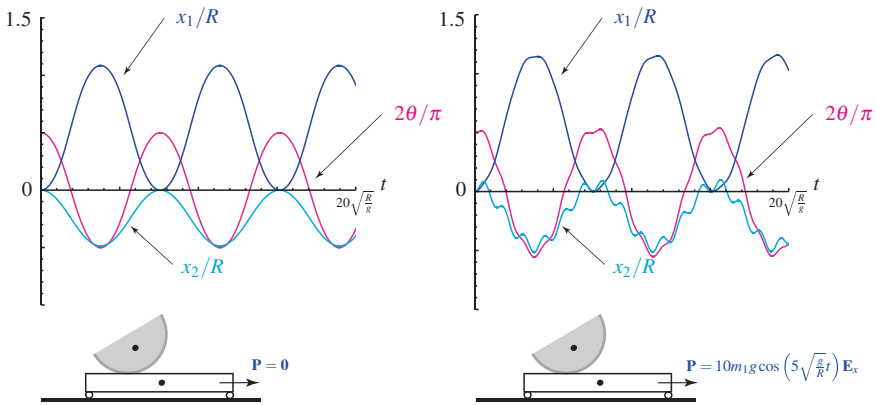


Fig. 10.8 The normalized displacement $x_1(t)/R$ and rotation $2\theta(t)/\pi$ of the semi-circular cylinder and the normalized displacement $x_2(t)/R$ of the cart for two motions of the system that have the same initial conditions but different values of the applied force \mathbf{P} . For the plots on the left-hand side, $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{0}$ while $\mathbf{P} = 10m_1g \cos\left(5\sqrt{\frac{g}{R}}t\right)\mathbf{E}_x$ for the results shown on the right-hand side. Additional details on the numerical values that are used for the results shown in this figure are discussed in Section 10.3.5.

⁷ It is useful to observe how the contributions from the mechanical powers of equal and opposite friction forces and normal forces cancel out.

10.3.5 Numerical Example

To examine the motion of the system, let us assume that it is started from rest and give the semi-circular cylinder an initial inclination:

$$\theta(t=0) = 45^\circ, \quad \dot{\theta}(t=0) = 0, \quad x_1(t=0) = 0, \quad \dot{x}_1(t=0) = 0, \\ x_2(t=0) = 0, \quad \dot{x}_2(t=0) = 0.$$

Two different applied forces will be considered: $P = 0$ and $P = 10m_1g \cos(\Omega_0 t)$. For the former, the total energy of the system will be conserved, while the total energy for the latter applied force will not be conserved. For the numerical results shown in Figs. 10.8 and 10.9, we have chosen

$$m_1 = m_2, \quad \Omega_0 = 5\sqrt{\frac{g}{R}}.$$

We anticipate that the results we present will be different if different choices of these parameters are made. For convenience, we have chosen to plot dimensionless values of all the kinematic and kinetic variables in Figs. 10.8 and 10.9.

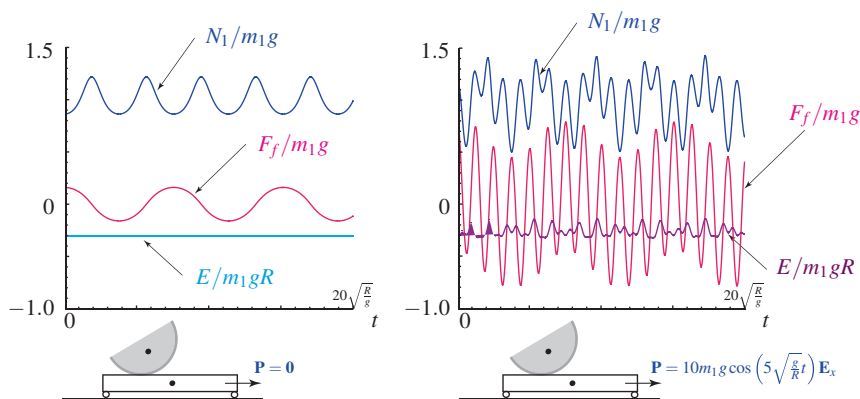


Fig. 10.9 The normalized normal force N_1/R and friction force F_f/m_1g and the normalized total energy E/mgR of the system for two motions of the system that have the same initial conditions but different values of the applied force \mathbf{P} . For the plots on the left-hand side, $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{0}$ while $\mathbf{P} = 10m_1g \cos(5\sqrt{g/R}t) \mathbf{E}_x$ for the results shown on the right-hand side. Additional details on the numerical values that are used for the results shown in this figure are discussed in Section 10.3.5.

For the case where $P = 0$, the linear momentum and total energy of the system are conserved. Referring to the aforementioned figures, A and C_2 move in opposite directions and the semi-circular cylinder rotates back and forth. We note that the angle θ never reaches the extreme values $\pm 90^\circ$. The friction and normal forces

also oscillate, and by comparing their values, we can compute the minimum static friction coefficient $\mu_{s_{\min}}$ needed to maintain rolling: $\mu_{s_{\min}} \approx 0.2$. As a check on the simulations, we also compute the total energy E and verify that it remains constant.

When $\mathbf{P} = 10m_1g \cos\left(5\sqrt{g/Rt}\right)\mathbf{E}_x$, the total energy and linear momentum of the system are no longer conserved. Referring to Figs. 10.8 and 10.9, as anticipated the normal and friction force components N_1 and F_f oscillate in a far more complex manner than the first case. In addition, we find that to maintain rolling: $\mu_{s_{\min}} \approx 0.9$. It is also interesting to note that there are instances where A and C_2 are moving in the same direction and that the motion of the cart ($x_2(t)$) is far more complex than the motion of the semi-circular cylinder.

10.4 A Simple Model for a Spherical Robot

As shown in Fig. 10.10, a pendulum consisting of a particle of mass m_2 and a massless rigid rod of length ℓ is mounted by a pin joint to the geometric center (and center of mass) C_1 of a cylindrical shell of radius R , mass m_1 , and moment of inertia (relative to its center of mass C_1) I_{zz} . The pendulum is free to swing in the vertical plane and the cylinder moves on a rough horizontal plane. When the cylinder rolls on the plane, the motion of pendulum enables locomotion of the cylinder. This simple mechanism is a prototype drive for earlier designs of spherical robots [101]. Modern designs of spherical robots include the BB-8 droid in the Star Wars movie franchise [10–12, 37]. We also note that there is a wealth of interesting research on the dynamics of spherical robots and refer the interested reader to [3, 14, 87] and references therein.

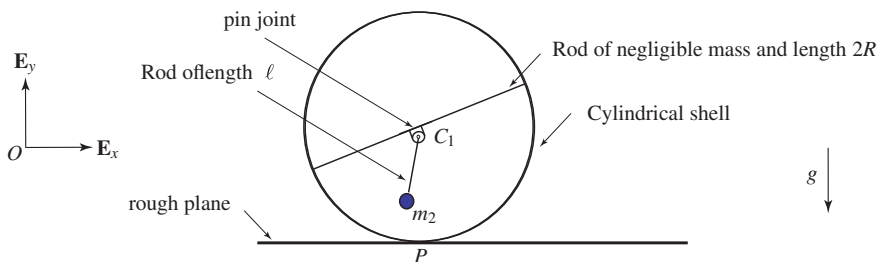


Fig. 10.10 A cylindrical shell of radius R and mass m_1 rolling on a horizontal plane. The shell is driven into motion by the oscillations of the suspended pendulum of mass m_2 .

10.4.1 Kinematics

As shown in Fig. 10.11, a corotational basis $\{\mathbf{e}_{x_1}, \mathbf{e}_{y_1}, \mathbf{e}_{z_1} = \mathbf{E}_z\}$ is attached to the cylindrical shell and a corotational basis $\{\mathbf{e}_{x_2}, \mathbf{e}_{y_2}, \mathbf{e}_{z_2} = \mathbf{E}_z\}$ is attached to the pendulum:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_{x_1} &= \cos(\theta_1) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta_1) \mathbf{E}_y, & \mathbf{e}_{y_1} &= -\sin(\theta_1) \mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta_1) \mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{e}_{x_2} &= \cos(\theta_2) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta_2) \mathbf{E}_y, & \mathbf{e}_{y_2} &= -\sin(\theta_2) \mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta_2) \mathbf{E}_y. \end{aligned}$$

We also note that $\boldsymbol{\omega}_1 = \dot{\theta}_1 \mathbf{E}_z$ is the angular velocity of the cylindrical shell and $\boldsymbol{\omega}_2 = \dot{\theta}_2 \mathbf{E}_z$ is the angular velocity of the pendulum.

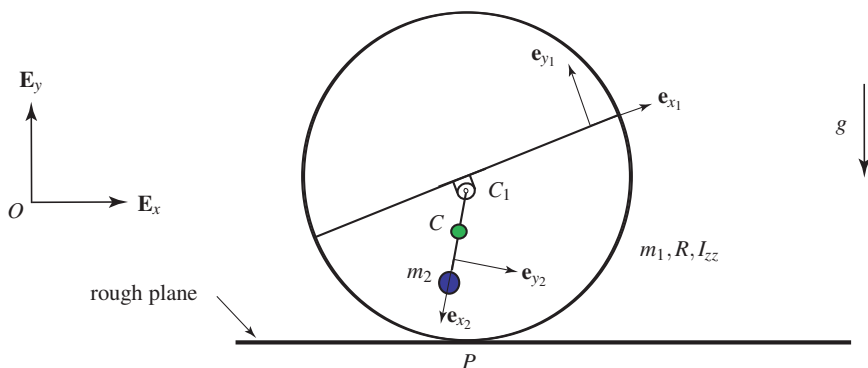


Fig. 10.11 A cylindrical shell of radius R rolling on a horizontal plane. The point C on the rod of length ℓ is the center of mass of the system.

In the sequel, we assume that the rigid rod of length $2R$ attaching the pin joint to the cylindrical shell is of negligible mass. Consequently, the center of mass C_1 of the cylinder and mounting rod is at the geometric center of the cylinder. The position vector of the center of mass C of the composite body of mass $m = m_1 + m_2$ has the following representation:

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x}_{C_1} + h\mathbf{e}_{x_2},$$

where

$$\mathbf{x}_{C_1} = x\mathbf{E}_x + y_0\mathbf{E}_y, \quad \mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{x}_{C_1} + \ell\mathbf{e}_{x_2}, \quad h = \frac{m_2}{m}\ell, \quad m = m_1 + m_2.$$

The point P is the instantaneous point of contact of the cylindrical shell and the plane.

The velocity vectors of the center of mass of the rigid body of mass m_1 , the particle of mass m_2 , and the center of mass of the composite body have the representations

$$\dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_1 = \dot{\mathbf{x}}_{C_1} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x, \quad \dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + \ell\dot{\theta}_2\mathbf{e}_{y_2}, \quad \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}} = \dot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + h\dot{\theta}_2\mathbf{e}_{y_2}.$$

As the cylindrical shell is assumed to roll without slipping, the velocity vector of the instantaneous point of contact P is zero:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_P &= \dot{\mathbf{x}}_{C_1} + \boldsymbol{\omega}_1 \times (\mathbf{x}_P - \mathbf{x}_{C_1} = -R\mathbf{E}_y) \\ &= (\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}_1)\mathbf{E}_x \\ &= \mathbf{0}. \end{aligned}$$

The constraint $\dot{x} + R\dot{\theta}_1 = 0$ is identical to the expression we found previously in Section 9.6 for a rolling circular disk partially because the point C_1 is the geometric center of the cylinder.

The angular momentum of the system relative to C and the kinetic energy of the system have the representations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= I_{zz}\dot{\theta}_1\mathbf{E}_z + (\bar{\mathbf{x}}_1 - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times m_1\dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_1 + (\mathbf{x}_2 - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \times m_1\dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 \\ &= I_{zz}\dot{\theta}_1\mathbf{E}_z + \frac{m_1m_2}{m_1+m_2}\ell^2\dot{\theta}_2\mathbf{E}_z, \\ T &= \frac{1}{2}I_{zz}\dot{\theta}_1^2 + \frac{m_1}{2}\dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_1 \cdot \dot{\bar{\mathbf{x}}}_1 + \frac{m_2}{2}\dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 \cdot \dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(I_{zz}\dot{\theta}_1^2 + m_1\dot{x}^2) + \frac{m_2}{2}(\dot{x}^2 + \ell^2\dot{\theta}_2^2 - 2\ell\dot{x}\dot{\theta}_2\sin(\theta_2)). \end{aligned}$$

We refrain from substituting $\dot{x}_1 = -R\dot{\theta}_1$ in the final form of the expression for T .

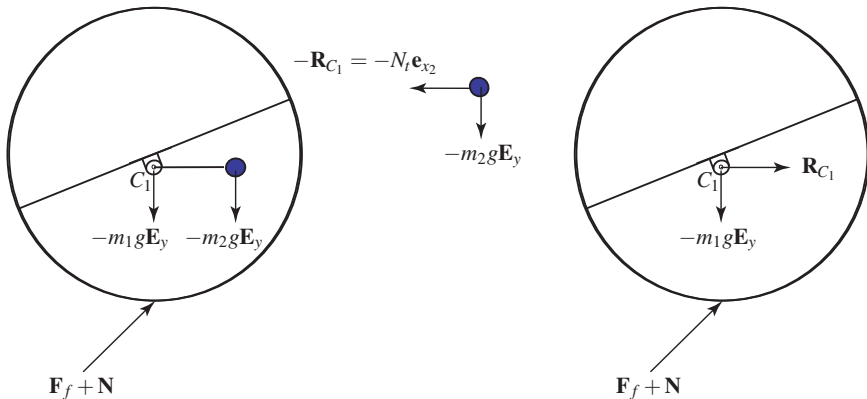


Fig. 10.12 Free-body diagrams of the cylindrical shell and the attached pendulum, the pendulum, and the cylindrical shell and its attached massless rods.

10.4.2 Forces and Moments

Free-body diagrams of the system and its individual components are shown in Fig. 10.12. Because the shell is assumed to be rolling, a static friction force $\mathbf{F}_f = F_{fx}\mathbf{E}_x$ and a normal force $\mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{E}_y$ act at P . The pendulum is supported by a tension force $-N_t\mathbf{e}_{x_2}$ in the rod.

We could add a reaction moment \mathbf{M}_R at the pin joint at C_1 ; however for the motions of the system of interest here, the moment can be shown to vanish. Related remarks apply were we to include a friction force $F_{fz}\mathbf{E}_z$ at the point P and a normal force $N_2\mathbf{e}_z$ on the particle of mass m_2 .

10.4.3 Balance Laws

There are seven possible balance laws for this system, of which only three are independent:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_1 &= m_1\ddot{\mathbf{x}}_1, & \mathbf{M}_1 &= I_{zz}\ddot{\theta}_1\mathbf{E}_z, & \mathbf{M}_{O_1} &= \dot{\mathbf{H}}_{O_1}, \\ & & \mathbf{F}_2 &= m_2\ddot{\mathbf{x}}_2, & & \\ \mathbf{F} &= m\ddot{\mathbf{x}}, & \mathbf{M} &= \dot{\mathbf{H}}, & \mathbf{M}_O &= \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O. \end{aligned}$$

We use these laws, along with the constraint $\dot{x} = -R\dot{\theta}_1$ to determine the equations of motion for $\theta_1(t)$ and $\theta_2(t)$. In addition, we can use the balance laws to determine any of the following unknown forces:

$$\mathbf{F}_f, \quad \mathbf{N}, \quad N_t\mathbf{e}_{x_2}.$$

To determine the friction force and normal force, we appeal to the balance of linear momentum for the system (i.e., $\mathbf{F} = m_1\ddot{\mathbf{x}}_1 + m_2\ddot{\mathbf{x}}_2$):

$$\mathbf{F}_f + \mathbf{N} = (m_1 + m_2)\ddot{x}\mathbf{E}_x + (m_1 + m_2)g\mathbf{E}_y + m_2\ell(\ddot{\theta}_2\mathbf{e}_{y_2} - \dot{\theta}_2^2\mathbf{e}_{x_2}).$$

The tension force N_t can be found using the \mathbf{e}_{x_2} component of the balance of linear momentum for m_2 . It is not needed in the sequel, and so we do not pursue this matter further.

To determine the differential equations of motion for the system, we first compute the \mathbf{e}_{y_2} component of $\mathbf{F}_2 = m_2\ddot{\mathbf{x}}_2$:

$$m_2\ell\ddot{\theta}_2 + m_2R\ddot{\theta}_1 \sin(\theta_2) = -m_2g \cos(\theta_2).$$

Next, we compute the \mathbf{E}_z component of the balance of angular momentum for the cylindrical shell and the attached massless rod of length $2R$ (i.e., $\mathbf{M}_1 = I_{zz}\ddot{\theta}_1\mathbf{E}_z$), to find that

$$I\ddot{\theta}_1 + m_2R\ell \sin(\theta_2)\ddot{\theta}_2 = -m_2R\ell\dot{\theta}_2^2 \cos(\theta_2),$$

where

$$I = I_{zz} + (m_1 + m_2)R^2.$$

To compute the final form of this equation, we substituted the expression established previously for the static friction force \mathbf{F}_f .

10.4.4 Analyses

The motion of the system is governed by the differential equations for θ_1 and θ_2 that we have just established. These equations can be expressed in the compact form

$$\begin{bmatrix} I & m_2 R \ell \sin(\theta_2) \\ m_2 R \ell \sin(\theta_2) & m_2 \ell^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \ddot{\theta}_1 \\ \ddot{\theta}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -m_2 R \ell \dot{\theta}_2^2 \cos(\theta_2) \\ -m_2 g \ell \cos(\theta_2) \end{bmatrix},$$

and show the coupling between the motion of the shell θ_1 and the motion of the pendulum θ_2 . You should verify that the second of these equations reduces to that of a planar pendulum when the shell is fixed ($\dot{\theta}_1 = 0$). The solutions $\theta_1(t)$ and $\theta_2(t)$ to the equations of motion conserve the total energy E of the system:⁸

$$E = T + U = \frac{I}{2} \dot{\theta}_1^2 + \frac{m_2}{2} \ell^2 \dot{\theta}_2^2 + m_2 \ell R \dot{\theta}_1 \dot{\theta}_2 \sin(\theta_2) + m_2 g \ell \sin(\theta_2).$$

Observe that we imposed the constraint $\dot{x} = -R\dot{\theta}_1$ in the expression we established previously for T in order to arrive at the expression for E .

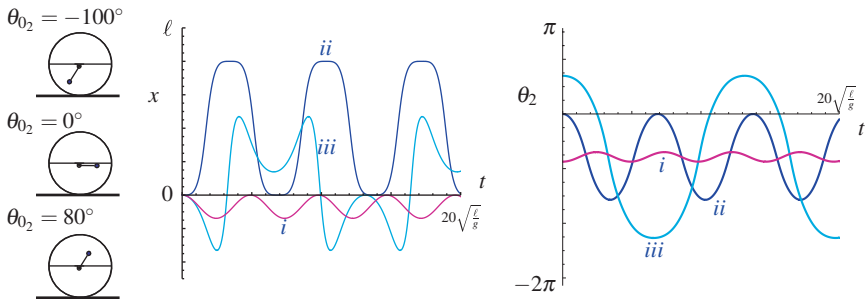


Fig. 10.13 The displacement $x(t)$ of the shell and the corresponding angle of rotation $\theta_2(t)$ of the pendulum for three different choices of the initial condition $\theta_2(t = 0) = \theta_0_2$: (i) $\theta_0_2 = -100^\circ$, (ii) $\theta_0_2 = 0^\circ$, and (iii) $\theta_0_2 = 80^\circ$. Additional details on the numerical values that are used for the results shown in this figure are discussed in Section 10.4.4.

⁸ We leave it as an exercise to use the work-energy theorem to establish this conservation. A key intermediate step in this exercise is to establish that $\mathbf{R}_{C_1} \cdot \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 - \mathbf{R}_{C_1} \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 = 0$.

Given initial conditions for θ_1 , θ_2 , $\dot{\theta}_1$, and $\dot{\theta}_2$, we can integrate the pair of differential equations numerically to determine $\theta_1(t)$ and $\theta_2(t)$. Then, integrating $\dot{x} = -R\dot{\theta}_1$, we can determine the motion of the center of mass of the cylindrical shell. For the numerical results that follow we have chosen

$$I_{zz} = \frac{1}{2}m_1R^2, \quad \frac{R}{\ell} = 1.25, \quad \frac{m_1}{m_2} = 1.$$

We anticipate that the results we present below will be different if different choices of these parameters are selected.

To see how the system works (i.e., the motion of the pendulum drives the motion of the center of mass of the shell), let us assume that it is started from rest by giving the pendulum an initial inclination:

$$\theta_1(t = 0) = 0, \quad \theta_2(t = 0) = \theta_{0_2}, \quad \dot{\theta}_1(t = 0) = 0, \quad \dot{\theta}_2(t = 0) = 0.$$

The equations of motion are then integrated numerically and $\theta_1(t)$, $\theta_2(t)$, and $x(t)$ are determined. In addition, the friction force $\mathbf{F}_f = F_{f_x}\mathbf{E}_x$ and normal force $\mathbf{N} = N\mathbf{E}_y$ for the given motion are computed. Numerical results for three distinct choices of $\theta_2(t = 0) = \theta_{0_2}$ are shown in Fig. 10.13:

$$i : \theta_{0_2} = -100^\circ, \quad ii : \theta_{0_2} = 0^\circ, \quad iii : \theta_{0_2} = 80^\circ.$$

We observe from these results that as the pendulum swings, the center of mass of the shell oscillates back and forth from its initial position. During the motion of the system, the total energy E is conserved. Comparing the behavior of *ii* versus *iii*, it is interesting to note that a larger initial potential energy of the pendulum does not necessarily correspond to a larger amplitude of oscillation of the shell.

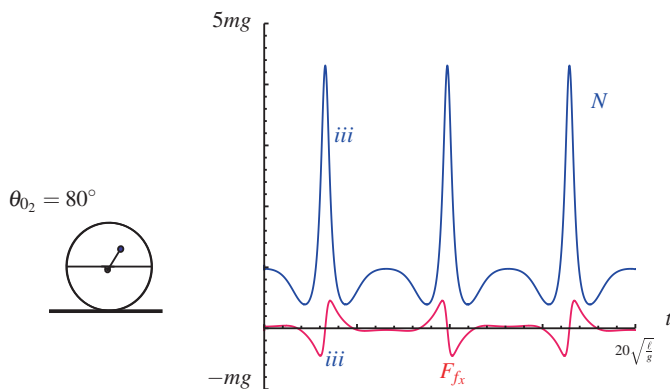


Fig. 10.14 The normal force component $N = \mathbf{N} \cdot \mathbf{E}_y$ and the friction force component $F_f = \mathbf{F}_f \cdot \mathbf{E}_x$ for the set of results labeled *iii* in Fig. 10.13. Additional details on the numerical values that are used for the results shown in this figure are discussed in Section 10.4.4.

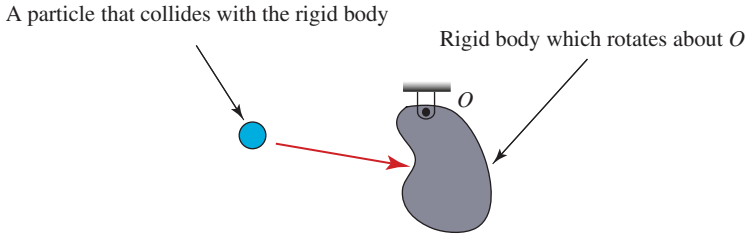


Fig. 10.15 The first type of generic impact problem where \mathbf{H}_O is conserved, but \mathbf{G} , E , and \mathbf{H} are not conserved.

When the shell rolls on a rough plane without the attached pendulum, then the normal force and friction force will be constant. Such is not the case when the pendulum is attached to the shell and is free to oscillate. A representative example of the oscillations in the normal force and friction forces can be seen in Fig. 10.14. From the plots of $N(t)$ and $F_{f_x}(t)$, the minimum value of μ_s needed to sustain rolling motion can be determined using the static friction criterion. For the three motions shown in Fig. 10.13, the minimum values $\mu_{s_{\min}}$ of μ_s are

$$i : \mu_{s_{\min}} \approx 0.03, \quad ii : \mu_{s_{\min}} \approx 0.2, \quad iii : \mu_{s_{\min}} \approx 0.4.$$

In closing we note that the locomotion of the shell due to the oscillation of the pendulum is made possible by static friction. If friction were absent, then the linear momentum of the system would be conserved and any motion of the center of mass of the shell due to the motion of the pendulum would have to conserve linear momentum of the system in the \mathbf{E}_x direction.⁹

10.5 Impact of a Particle and a Rigid Body

We outline here some examples involving particles colliding with rigid bodies. As in collisions of particles with each other, one must be given some additional information: the coefficient of restitution for the problem at hand. Often, this is given implicitly. If the particle sticks to the body after the collision, one has that $e = 0$. If one is given the coefficient of restitution for these problems, it is important to note that one of the velocity vectors pertains to the particle, whereas the other pertains to the velocity vector of the material point of the body that the particle impacts.

Our discussion here is brief, and we provide few analytical details. Indeed, what adds to the complexity of these problems is the calculation of linear and angular momenta before and after the impact. There are two types of problems common to

⁹ This is similar to the conservation of linear momentum in the cart–pendulum system discussed in Section 7.6.

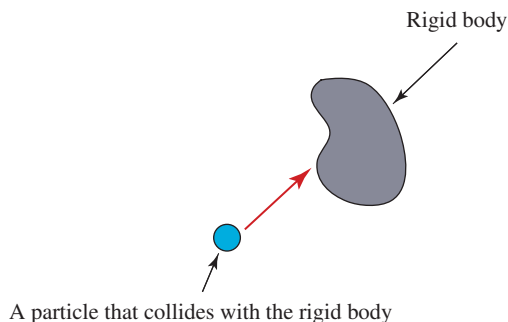


Fig. 10.16 *The second type of generic impact problem where \mathbf{H} and \mathbf{G} are conserved, but E is not conserved.*

undergraduate engineering courses in dynamics (see Figs. 10.15 and 10.16). Normally, energy is not conserved in these problems.

The first type of problem is where the rigid body is attached by a pin joint to a fixed point O (see Fig. 10.15). For these problems, one assumes that the collision is instantaneous, and hence the angular momentum component $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved, where \mathbf{H}_O is the angular momentum of the system relative to O . That is, one ignores any gravitational impulses during the collision. The linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the system is not conserved because one has an impulse due to the reaction force at O . One then has a single equation: $\mathbf{H}_O \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved. When the impact is such that the particle coalesces with the rigid body, this equation is usually used to determine the angular velocity of the particle-rigid body system immediately after the impact.

In the second type of problem, the rigid body is free to move on a plane or in space (see Fig. 10.16). Again, one assumes that the collision is instantaneous, and hence the angular momentum component $\mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{E}_z$ is conserved. Here, \mathbf{H} is the angular momentum of the system relative to the center of mass of the system. The linear momentum \mathbf{G} of the system is also conserved for these problems. Hence, one has four conservations. When the impact is such that the particle coalesces with the rigid body, these four conservations are normally used to determine the velocity vector of the center of mass and angular velocity vector of the particle-rigid body system immediately after the impact.

10.6 Beyond This Primer

The scope of the present book was influenced by what is expected of a student in an undergraduate engineering dynamics course. What is beyond its scope are areas of active research. We now turn to two of these areas.

First, many readers will notice the emphasis on establishing differential equations for the motion of the system. The nature of the solutions to these equations contains

many of the predictions of the model developed for the system. These solutions are therefore a crucial component of verifying any model. Not surprisingly, there has been an enormous amount of research on the solutions to differential equations that arise from the development of models for mechanical systems. Fueled by recent advances in numerical computations, this is still an active research area (see, e.g., Strogatz [93]). Based on our own experience, the predictions made by models of mechanical systems have usually been a source of enlightenment and improved understanding.

Another active research area is the development of more realistic models for impacting rigid bodies. These models are the basis for numerous simulations of vehicle collisions and are also important in other applications. Of particular interest are models that incorporate frictional forces. The difficulties of establishing such theories were made evident in 1895 by Painlevé's paradoxical example of a rod sliding on a rigid horizontal surface [71].¹⁰ Ruina [83] has also presented some interesting examples that illustrate some difficulties associated with the Coulomb friction laws we discussed in Chapter 4. We refer the interested reader to [43, 77, 91] for recent developments in this area.

10.7 Summary

This chapter has evident similarities to Chapter 7 where corresponding results for a system of particles were discussed. Rather than summarizing the main results presented in this chapter, it is probably more useful to give an outline of how they were established.

First, for a system of particles and rigid bodies, the center of mass is calculated using the masses of the constituents, the position vectors of the particles, and the position vectors of the centers of mass of the rigid bodies. The linear momentum \mathbf{G} is calculated by summing the linear momenta of each of the constituents. This momentum is equal to the linear momentum of the center of mass of the system. Similarly, the angular momentum \mathbf{H}_O is calculated by summing the angular momenta relative to O of the constituents. A similar remark applies for \mathbf{H} . Finally, the kinetic energy T of the system is calculated by summing the kinetic energies of the constituents. In general, \mathbf{H}_O is not simply equal to the angular momentum of the center of mass of the system, and T is not simply equal to the kinetic energy of the center of mass of the system.

As in systems of particles, one can add the balance laws for the system of particles and rigid bodies to arrive at the balance laws

$$\mathbf{F} = \dot{\mathbf{G}}, \quad \mathbf{M} = \dot{\mathbf{H}}, \quad \mathbf{M}_O = \dot{\mathbf{H}}_O.$$

¹⁰ Paul Painlevé (1863–1933) was a French mathematician and politician. He is credited as being the first airplane passenger of Wilbur Wright in 1908.

These laws are useful when establishing conservations of linear and angular momenta for the system of particles and rigid bodies. In addition, one can formulate integral forms of the balance laws:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{G}(t) - \mathbf{G}(t_0) &= \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{F}(\tau) d\tau, \\ \mathbf{H}(t) - \mathbf{H}(t_0) &= \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{M}(\tau) d\tau, \\ \mathbf{H}_O(t) - \mathbf{H}_O(t_0) &= \int_{t_0}^t \mathbf{M}_O(\tau) d\tau.\end{aligned}$$

These results are very useful in impact problems.

Finally, the work-energy theorem for the system of particles and rigid bodies is obtained by adding the corresponding theorems for each of the constituents:

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = \sum_{k=1}^K p \mathbf{F}_k \cdot \dot{\mathbf{r}}_k + \sum_{n=1}^N ({}_r \mathbf{F}_n \cdot \dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}}_n + \mathbf{M}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\omega}_n).$$

As always, this theorem is useful for establishing conservation of energy results.

The main examples discussed in this chapter were a system of two rigid bodies, a semi-circular cylinder rolling on a cart, a simple model for a spherical robot, and several impact problems. It is crucial to remember that obtaining the correct solutions to these problems depends on one's ability to establish expressions for \mathbf{G} , \mathbf{H}_O , and \mathbf{H} .

10.8 Exercises

The following short exercises are intended to assist you in reviewing the present chapter.

Exercise 10.1: For the system discussed in Section 10.2, establish expressions for \mathbf{H}_O when the disk of mass m_2 is replaced by a particle of mass m_2 that is attached at A . Is it possible to replace the system of the rigid rod and particle by a system consisting of a single rigid body?

Exercise 10.2: For the system discussed in Exercise 10.1, derive an expression for the kinetic energy T .

Exercise 10.3: Consider the system of rigid bodies discussed in Section 10.2. How do the results for \mathbf{H}_O and T simplify if the disk were pin-jointed at its center of mass to A ?

Exercise 10.4: For the system discussed in Section 10.2, derive expressions for \mathbf{H}_O and T if the disk were welded at its center of mass to A .

Exercise 10.5: For the system of two rigid bodies discussed in Section 10.2, derive expressions for \mathbf{H}_O and T if the disk were replaced by a rigid rod of length $2R$.

Exercise 10.6: A circular disk of mass m_1 and radius R lies at rest on a horizontal plane. The origin of the coordinate system is taken to coincide with the center of mass of the disk. At an instant in time t_1 , a particle of mass m_2 that has a velocity vector $\mathbf{v} = v_x \mathbf{E}_x + v_y \mathbf{E}_y$ collides with the disk. The collision occurs at the point of the disk whose position vector is $R \cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_x + R \sin(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y$. After the impact, the particle adheres to the disk. Show that the position vector of the center of mass of the system during the instant of impact is

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{m_2 R}{m_1 + m_2} (\cos(\phi) \mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\phi) \mathbf{E}_y).$$

In addition, show that the velocity vector of the center of mass of the system immediately following the impact is

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}}(t_1^+) = \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} (v_x \mathbf{E}_x + v_y \mathbf{E}_y).$$

Exercise 10.7: For the system discussed in Exercise 10.6, show that the angular momentum of the system relative to its center of mass at the instant prior to the collision is

$$\mathbf{H}(t_1^-) = \frac{m_1 m_2 R}{m_1 + m_2} (v_y \cos(\phi) - v_x \sin(\phi)) \mathbf{E}_z.$$

In addition, show that the angular momentum of the system relative to its center of mass immediately after the collision is

$$\mathbf{H}(t_1^+) = \left(\frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} + \frac{1}{2} \right) m_1 R^2 \omega(t_1^+) \mathbf{E}_z,$$

where $\omega(t_1^+) \mathbf{E}_z$ is the angular velocity vector of the system immediately after the collision.

Exercise 10.8: Using the results of Exercise 10.7, determine the angular velocity vector of the system immediately following the impact discussed in Exercise 10.6. Under which conditions is it possible for this velocity vector to be $\mathbf{0}$?

Exercise 10.9: Determine the kinetic energy lost during the collision discussed in Exercise 10.6.

Exercise 10.10: Which modifications to the results of Exercises 10.6, 10.7, and 10.8 are required to accommodate the situation where the center of mass of the disk was in motion at the instant prior to impact?

Exercise 10.11: Repeat Exercises 10.6 through 10.9 for the case where the disk is pinned at its center to a fixed point O .

Appendix A

Preliminaries on Vectors and Calculus

CAVEAT LECTOR

In writing this primer, I have assumed that the reader has had courses in linear algebra and calculus. This being so, I have more often than not found that these topics have been forgotten. Here, I review some of the basics. But it is a terse review, and I strongly recommend that readers review their own class notes and other texts on these topics in order to fill the gaps in their knowledge.

Students who are able to differentiate vectors and are familiar with the chain and product rules of calculus have a distinct advantage in comprehending the material in this primer and in other courses. I have never been able to sufficiently emphasize this point to students at the beginning of an undergraduate dynamics course.

A.1 Vector Notation

A fixed (right-handed) Cartesian basis for Euclidean three-space \mathbb{E}^3 is denoted by the set $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$. These three vectors are orthonormal (i.e., they each have a unit magnitude and are mutually perpendicular).

For any vector \mathbf{b} , one has the representation

$$\mathbf{b} = b_x \mathbf{E}_x + b_y \mathbf{E}_y + b_z \mathbf{E}_z,$$

where b_x , b_y , and b_z are the Cartesian components of the vector \mathbf{b} (cf. Figure A.1).

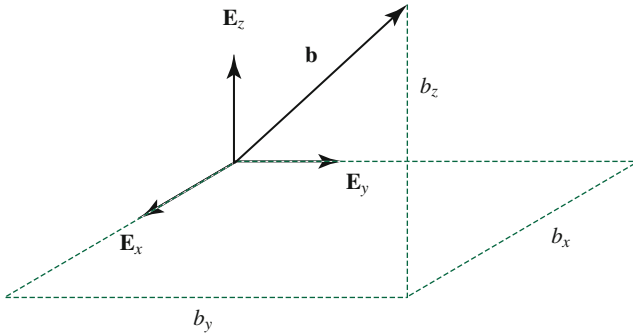


Fig. A.1 A vector \mathbf{b} and its three components relative to the basis $\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$.

A.2 The Dot Product and The Cross Product

The two most commonly used vector products are the dot and cross products. The dot product of any two vectors \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{w} in \mathbb{E}^3 is a scalar defined by

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w} = u_x w_x + u_y w_y + u_z w_z = \|\mathbf{u}\| \|\mathbf{w}\| \cos(\gamma),$$

where γ is the angle subtended by \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{w} , and $\|\mathbf{b}\|$ denotes the norm (or magnitude) of a vector \mathbf{b} :

$$\|\mathbf{b}\|^2 = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b} = b_x^2 + b_y^2 + b_z^2.$$

Clearly, if two vectors are perpendicular to each other, then their dot product is zero.

One can use the dot product to define a unit vector \mathbf{n} in the direction of any vector \mathbf{b} :

$$\mathbf{n} = \frac{\mathbf{b}}{\|\mathbf{b}\|}.$$

This formula is very useful in establishing expressions for friction forces and normal forces.

The cross product of any two vectors \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} is defined as

$$\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c} = (b_y c_z - b_z c_y) \mathbf{E}_x + (b_z c_x - b_x c_z) \mathbf{E}_y + (b_x c_y - b_y c_x) \mathbf{E}_z.$$

This expression for the cross product can be expressed in another form involving the determinant of a matrix:

$$\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{b} = \det \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}_x & \mathbf{E}_y & \mathbf{E}_z \\ b_x & b_y & b_z \\ c_x & c_y & c_z \end{bmatrix}.$$

It follows from the definition of the cross product that $\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}$ is a vector that is normal to the plane formed by \mathbf{b} and \mathbf{c} . You should also notice that if two vectors are parallel, then their cross product is the zero vector $\mathbf{0}$.

A.3 Differentiation of Vectors

Given a vector \mathbf{u} , suppose it is a function of time t : $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}(t)$. One can evaluate its derivative using the product rule:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \frac{du_x}{dt}\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{du_y}{dt}\mathbf{E}_y + \frac{du_z}{dt}\mathbf{E}_z + u_x \frac{d\mathbf{E}_x}{dt} + u_y \frac{d\mathbf{E}_y}{dt} + u_z \frac{d\mathbf{E}_z}{dt}.$$

However, \mathbf{E}_x , \mathbf{E}_y , and \mathbf{E}_z are constant vectors (i.e., they have constant magnitude and direction). Hence, their time derivatives are zero, and the expression for the time derivative of \mathbf{u} simplifies to

$$\frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} = \frac{du_x}{dt}\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{du_y}{dt}\mathbf{E}_y + \frac{du_z}{dt}\mathbf{E}_z.$$

We can also use the product rule of calculus to show that

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}) = \frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} \cdot \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{w}}{dt}, \quad \frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}) = \frac{d\mathbf{u}}{dt} \times \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} \times \frac{d\mathbf{w}}{dt}.$$

These results are obtained by representing the vectors \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{w} with respect to a Cartesian basis, then evaluating the left- and right-hand sides of both equations and showing their equality.

To differentiate any vector-valued function $\mathbf{c}(s(t))$ with respect to t , we use the chain rule:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{c}}{dt} = \frac{ds}{dt} \frac{d\mathbf{c}}{ds} = \frac{ds}{dt} \left(\frac{dc_x}{ds}\mathbf{E}_x + \frac{dc_y}{ds}\mathbf{E}_y + \frac{dc_z}{ds}\mathbf{E}_z \right).$$

For example, suppose $s = t^2$ and $\mathbf{c} = s^2\mathbf{E}_z$. Then, $d\mathbf{c}/dt = 4t^3\mathbf{E}_z$.

A.4 A Ubiquitous Example of Vector Differentiation

One of the main sets of vectors arising in any course on dynamics is $\{\mathbf{e}_r, \mathbf{e}_\theta, \mathbf{e}_z\}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e}_r &= \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{e}_\theta &= -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y, \\ \mathbf{e}_z &= \mathbf{E}_z. \end{aligned}$$

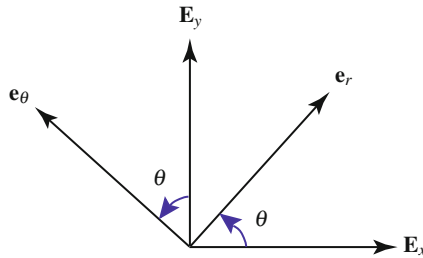


Fig. A.2 The unit vectors \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{e}_θ .

We also refer the reader to Figure A.2. In the above equations, θ is a function of time.

Using the previous developments, you should be able to establish that

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{d\theta} &= -\sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x + \cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y = \mathbf{e}_\theta, \\ \frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{d\theta} &= -\cos(\theta)\mathbf{E}_x - \sin(\theta)\mathbf{E}_y = -\mathbf{e}_r, \\ \frac{d\mathbf{e}_r}{dt} &= \frac{d\theta}{dt}\mathbf{e}_\theta, \\ \frac{d\mathbf{e}_\theta}{dt} &= -\frac{d\theta}{dt}\mathbf{e}_r.\end{aligned}$$

A useful exercise is to evaluate these expressions and graphically represent them for a given $\theta(t)$. For example, $\theta(t) = 10t^2 + 15t$.

Finally, you should be able to show that

$$\begin{array}{lll}\mathbf{e}_r \times \mathbf{e}_\theta = \mathbf{e}_z, & \mathbf{e}_z \times \mathbf{e}_r = \mathbf{e}_\theta, & \mathbf{e}_\theta \times \mathbf{e}_z = \mathbf{e}_r, \\ \mathbf{e}_r \cdot \mathbf{e}_r = 1, & \mathbf{e}_\theta \cdot \mathbf{e}_\theta = 1, & \mathbf{e}_z \cdot \mathbf{e}_z = 1, \\ \mathbf{e}_r \cdot \mathbf{e}_\theta = 0, & \mathbf{e}_\theta \cdot \mathbf{e}_z = 0, & \mathbf{e}_r \cdot \mathbf{e}_z = 0.\end{array}$$

In other words, $\{\mathbf{e}_r, \mathbf{e}_\theta, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ forms an orthonormal set of vectors. Furthermore, because $\mathbf{e}_z \cdot (\mathbf{e}_r \times \mathbf{e}_\theta) = 1$, this set of vectors is also right handed.

A.5 Ordinary Differential Equations

The main types of differential equations appearing in undergraduate dynamics courses are of the form $\ddot{u} = f(u)$, where the superposed double dot indicates the second derivative of u with respect to t . The general solution of this differential equation involves two constants: the initial conditions for $u(t_0) = u_0$ and its velocity $\dot{u}(t_0) = \dot{u}_0$. Often, one chooses time such that $t_0 = 0$.

The most comprehensive source of mechanics problems that involve differential equations of the form $\ddot{u} = f(u)$ is Whittaker's classic work [100]. It should also be added that classical works in dynamics placed tremendous emphasis on obtaining analytical solutions to such equations. Recently, the engineering dynamics community has become increasingly aware of possible chaotic solutions. Consequently, the existence of analytical solutions is generally not anticipated. We refer the reader to Moon [64] and Strogatz [93] for further discussions on, and references to, this matter. Further perspectives can be gained by reading the books by Barrow-Green [4] and Diacu and Holmes [28] on Henri Poincaré's seminal work on chaos, and Peterson's book [76] on chaos in the solar system.

For many of the examples discussed in this book, the differential equations of motion were solved numerically. These examples include the simple pendulum's motion shown in Figure 2.1 in Chapter 2 and the motions of the whirling particles shown in Figure 7.7 in Chapter 7. There are several well-established computation packages, such as MATLAB and MATHEMATICA, that are capable of performing the numerical integrations and generating graphics of the resulting solutions. For further details on how these respective programs can be used, we recommend the texts of Palm [72] and Hunt et al. [52].

A.5.1 The Projectile Problem

Arguably the easiest set of differential equations in this book makes its appearance when studying the motion of a particle under the influence of a gravitational force $-mg\mathbf{E}_y$. As shown in Section 1.6 of Chapter 1, the differential equations governing the motion of the particle are

$$m\ddot{x} = 0, \quad m\ddot{y} = -mg, \quad m\ddot{z} = 0.$$

Clearly, each of these three equations is of the form $\ddot{u} = f(u)$. The general solution to the second of these equations is

$$y(t) = y_0 + \dot{y}_0(t - t_0) - \frac{g}{2}(t - t_0)^2.$$

Here, $y(t = t_0) = y_0$ and $\dot{y}(t = t_0) = \dot{y}_0$ are the initial conditions. You should verify the solution for $y(t)$ given above by first examining whether it satisfies the initial conditions and then seeing whether it satisfies the differential equation $\ddot{y} = -g$. By setting $g = 0$ and changing variables from y to x and z , the solutions to the other two differential equations can be obtained.

A.5.2 *The Harmonic Oscillator*

The most common example of a differential equation in mechanical engineering is found from the harmonic oscillator. Here, a particle of mass m is attached by a linear spring of stiffness K to a fixed point (see Fig. 4.12). The variable x is chosen to measure both the displacement of the particle and the displacement of the spring from its unstretched state. The governing differential equation is

$$m\ddot{x} = -Kx.$$

This equation has the general solution

$$x(t) = x_0 \cos(\omega_0(t - t_0)) + \frac{\dot{x}_0}{\omega_0} \sin(\omega_0(t - t_0)),$$

where $x(t = t_0) = x_0$ and $\dot{x}(t = t_0) = \dot{x}_0$ are the initial conditions, and $\omega_0 = \sqrt{K/m}$ is the natural frequency of the oscillator.

A.5.3 *A Particle in a Whirling Tube*

The penultimate example of interest arises in problems featuring a particle of mass m that is in motion in a smooth frictionless tube. The tube is being rotated in a horizontal plane with a constant angular speed Ω . The differential equation governing the radial motion of the particle is

$$m\ddot{r} = m\Omega^2 r.$$

This equation has the general solution

$$r(t) = r_0 \cosh(\Omega(t - t_0)) + \frac{\dot{r}_0}{\Omega} \sinh(\Omega(t - t_0)),$$

where $r(t = t_0) = r_0$ and $\dot{r}(t = t_0) = \dot{r}_0$ are the initial conditions.

A.5.4 *The Planar Pendulum*

Our final example of a differential equation of the form $\ddot{u} = f(u)$ arises in the planar pendulum discussed in Section 2.4 of Chapter 2. Recall that the equation governing the motion of the pendulum was

$$m\ell\ddot{\theta} = -mg \cos(\theta).$$

This equation is of the form discussed above with $u = \theta$ and $f(u) = -g \cos(u)/\ell$. Here, f is a nonlinear function of u . Given the initial conditions $\theta(t = t_0) = \theta_0$ and $\dot{\theta}(t = t_0) = \dot{\theta}_0$, this differential equation can be solved analytically. The resulting solution involves special functions that are known as Jacobi's elliptic functions.¹ An alternative method of solution is to use numerical integration. For instance, the function `NDSOLVE` in `MATHEMATICA` was used to generate the pendulum motions shown in Figure 2.1. It was also used to solve the equations of motion of the hanging rod shown in Figure 9.9.

Elliptic functions are beyond the scope of an undergraduate dynamics class, so instead one is normally asked to use the conservation of the total energy E of the particle to solve most posed problems involving this pendulum.

¹ A discussion of these functions, in addition to the analytical solution of the particle's motion, can be found in Lawden [58], for instance.

Appendix B

Weekly Course Content and Notation in Other Texts

ABBREVIATIONS

For convenience in this appendix we use the following abbreviations: BF, Bedford and Fowler [7]; BJ, Beer and Johnston [8]; H, Hibbeler [50]; MK, Meriam and Kraige [63]; RS, Riley and Sturges [79]; and S, Shames [85].

B.1 Weekly Course Content

The following is an outline for a 15-week (semester-long) course in undergraduate engineering dynamics. Here, we list the weekly topics along with the corresponding sections in this primer. We also indicate the corresponding sections in other texts. This correspondence is, of course, approximate: all of the cited texts have differences in scope and emphasis.

Normally, the course is divided into three parts: a single particle, systems of particles, and (planar dynamics of) rigid bodies. The developments in most texts also cover the material in this order, the exception being Riley and Sturges [79].

Week	Topic	Primer Section	Other Texts
1	Single Particle: Cartesian Coordinates	Chapter 1	BF: Ch.1, 2.1–2.3, 3.1–3.4 BJ: 11.1–11.11, 12.5 H: 12.1–12.6, 13.4 MK: 1/1–1/7, 2/2, 2/4, 3/4 RS: 13.1–13.4, 15.1–15.3 S: 11.1–11.4, 12.1–12.4
2	Single Particle: Polar Coordinates	Chapter 2	BF: 2.3, 3.4 BJ: 11.14, 12.8 H: 12.8, 13.6 MK: 2/6, 3/5 RS: 13.5, 13.7, 15.4 S: 11.6, 12.5
3	Single Particle: Serret-Frenet Triads	Chapter 3	BF: 2.3, 3.4 BJ: 11.13, 12.5 H: 12.7, 13.5 MK: 2/5, 2/7, 3/5 RS: 13.5, 13.7, 15.4 S: 11.5, 12.9
4	Single Particle: Further Kinetics	Chapter 4	BF: 3.4 BJ: 12.5 H: 13.4–13.6 MK: 3/5 RS: 15.3, 15.4 S: 12.4, 12.5, 12.9
5	Single Particle: Work and Energy	Chapter 5	BF: Ch. 4 BJ: 13.1–13.9 H: 14.1, 14.2, 14.4–14.6 MK: 3/6, 3/7 RS: 17.1–17.3, 17.5–17.10 S: 13.1–13.5
6	Linear and Angular Momenta	Chapter 6 Sects. 1 & 2	BF: 5.1, 5.2, 5.4 BJ: 12.2, 12.7, 12.9, 13.11 H: 15.1, 15.5–15.7 MK: 3/9, 3/10 RS: 19.2, 19.5 S: 14.1, 14.3, 14.6

Week	Topic	Primer Section	Other Texts
7	Collisions of Particles	Chapter 6 Sects. 3–5	BF: 5.3 BJ: 13.12–13.14 H: 14.3, 14.6, 15.4 MK: 3/12 RS: 19.4 S: 14.4–14.5
8	Systems of Particles	Chapter 7	BF: 7.1, 8.1 BJ: 14.1–14.9 H: 13.3, 14.3, 14.6, 15.3 MK: 4/1–4/5 RS: 17.4–17.8, 19.3, 19.5 S: 12.10, 14.2, 14.7, 13.6–13.9
9	Kinematics of Rigid Bodies	Chapter 8	BF: 6.1–6.3 BJ: 15.1–15.4 H: 16.1–16.4 MK: 5/1–5/4 RS: 14.1–14.3 S: 15.1–15.5
10	Kinematics of Rigid Bodies	Chapter 8	BF: 6.4–6.6 BJ: 15.4–15.8, 15.10–15.15 H: 16.4–16.8 MK: 5/5–5/7 RS: 14.4–14.6 S: 15.5–15.11
11	Planar Dynamics of Rigid Bodies	Chapter 9	BF: 7.2–7.3, App., 9.2 BJ: Ch. 16 H: 21.1, 21.2, 17.3 MK: 6/1–6/3, Apps. A & B RS: 16.2, 16.3, 20.6 S: 16.1–16.4
12	Planar Dynamics of Rigid Bodies	Chapter 9	BF: 7.4 BJ: Ch. 16 H: 17.4 MK: 6/4 RS: 16.4 S: 16.5

Week	Topic	Primer Section	Other Texts
13	Planar Dynamics of Rigid Bodies	Chapter 9	BF: 8.1–8.3 BJ: Ch. 16 & 17.1–17.7 H: 17.5 & Ch. 18 MK: 6/5, 6/6 RS: 16.4 & Ch. 18 S: 16.6, 17.1–17.3
14	Planar Dynamics of Rigid Bodies	Chapter 10	BF: 8.4 BJ: 17.8–17.11 H: Ch. 19 MK: 6/8 RS: 20.1–20.5 S: 17.4–17.7
15	Vibrations	Not Covered	BF: Ch. 10 BJ: Ch. 19 H: Ch. 22 MK: Ch. 8 RS: Ch. 21 S: Ch. 22

B.2 Notation in Other Texts

Here, we give a brief summary of some of the notational differences between this primer and those used in other texts. In many of the cited texts only plane curves are considered. Consequently, the binormal vector \mathbf{e}_b is not explicitly mentioned.

	Primer Notation	Other Texts
Cartesian Basis Vectors	$\{\mathbf{E}_x, \mathbf{E}_y, \mathbf{E}_z\}$	BF: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ BJ: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ H: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ MK: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ RS: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ S: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$
Serret-Frenet Triad	$\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$	BF: $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, -\}$ BJ: $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, \mathbf{e}_b\}$ H: $\{\mathbf{u}_t, \mathbf{u}_n, \mathbf{u}_b\}$ MK: $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, -\}$ RS: $\{\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{e}_n, -\}$ S: $\{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_t, \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_n, \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_t \times \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_n\}$
Linear Momentum of a Particle	$\mathbf{G} = m\mathbf{v}$	BF: $m\mathbf{v}$ BJ: $\mathbf{L} = m\mathbf{v}$ H: $m\mathbf{v}$ MK: \mathbf{G} RS: $\mathbf{L} = m\mathbf{v}$ S: $m\mathbf{V}$
Corotational Basis or Body Fixed Basis	$\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$	BF: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ BJ: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ H: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ MK: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$ RS: $\{\mathbf{e}_x, \mathbf{e}_y, \mathbf{e}_z\}$ S: $\{\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}\}$

References

- 1 Antman, S.S.: Nonlinear Problems of Elasticity. Applied Mathematical Sciences, vol. 107, 2nd edn. Springer, New York (2005). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/0-387-27649-1>
- 2 Arnol'd, V.I.: Mathematical Methods of Classical Mechanics. Graduate Texts in Mathematics, vol. 60, 2nd edn. Springer, New York (1989). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4757-2063-1>. Translated from the Russian by K. Vogtmann and A. Weinstein
- 3 Bai, Y., Svinin, M., Yamamoto, M.: Dynamics-based motion planning for a pendulum-actuated spherical rolling robot. Regul. Chaotic Dyn. **23**(4), 372–388 (2018). <https://doi.org/10.1134/S1560354718040020>
- 4 Barrow-Green, J.: Poincaré and the Three Body Problem. History of Mathematics, vol. 11. American Mathematical Society, Providence (1997)
- 5 Beatty, M.F.: Kinematics of finite rigid body displacements. Am. J. Phys. **34**, 949–954 (1966). <https://doi.org/10.1119/1.1972311>
- 6 Beatty, M.F.: Principles of Engineering Mechanics. Plenum Press, New York (1985)
- 7 Bedford, A., Fowler, W.: Engineering Mechanics - Dynamics. Addison-Wesley, Reading (1995)
- 8 Beer, F.P., Johnston, E.R.: Vector Mechanics for Engineers: Dynamics, 5th edn. McGraw-Hill, New York (1988)
- 9 Bellman, R.: Introduction to Matrix Analysis. McGraw-Hill, New York (1960)
- 10 Bernstein, I.H., Wilson, A.: Self-propelled device with actively engaged drive system (2013). US Patent Number 8571781 B2
- 11 Bernstein, I.H., Wilson, A., Kong, C.: Magnetically coupled accessory for a self-propelled device (2015). US Patent Number 9090214 B2
- 12 Bernstein, I.H., Wilson, A., Kong, C., MacGregor, R.: Self propelled device with magnetic coupling (2016). US Patent Number 9342073 B2
- 13 Bishop, R.L.: There is more than one way to frame a curve. Am. Math. Mon. **82**(3), 246–251 (1975). <http://dx.doi.org/10.2307/2319846>
- 14 Bizyaev, I.A., Borisov, A.V., Mamaev, I.S.: The dynamics of nonholonomic systems consisting of a spherical shell with a moving rigid body inside. Regul. Chaotic Dyn. **19**(2), 198–213 (2014). <https://doi.org/10.1134/S156035471402004X>
- 15 Borisov, A.V., Mamaev, I.S.: On the history of the development of the nonholonomic dynamics. Regul. Chaotic Dyn. **7**(1), 43–47 (2002). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1070/RD2002v007n01ABEH000194>
- 16 Borisov, A.V., Mamaev, I.S.: Rolling of a rigid body on plane and sphere. Hierarchy of dynamics. Regul. Chaotic Dyn. **7**(2), 177–200 (2002). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1070/RD2002v007n02ABEH000204>

- 17 Bottema, O., Roth, B.: *Theoretical Kinematics*. North-Holland, New York (1979)
- 18 Brach, R.M.: *Mechanical Impact Dynamics: Rigid Body Collisions*. Wiley, New York (1991)
- 19 Casey, J.: A treatment of rigid body dynamics. *ASME J. Appl. Mech.* **50**, 905–907, 51, 227 (1983). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1115/1.3167171>
- 20 Casey, J.: *Elements of Dynamics* (1993). Unpublished Manuscript, Department of Mechanical Engineering, University of California at Berkeley, CA
- 21 Casey, J.: Geometrical derivation of Lagrange’s equations for a system of particles. *Am. J. Phys.* **62**(9), 836–847 (1994). <https://doi.org/10.1119/1.17470>
- 22 Casey, J.: On the advantages of a geometrical viewpoint in the derivation of Lagrange’s equations for a rigid continuum. *ZAMP* **46**, S805–S847 (1995). https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-0348-9229-2_41
- 23 Coriolis, G.G.: *Théorie Mathématique des Effets du Jeu de Billiard*. Carilian-Goeury, Paris (1835). <http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k29318f>. The title of this book translates to “Mathematical Theory of Effects on the Game of Billiards.”
- 24 Coulomb, C.A.: *Théorie des machines simples en ayant égard au frottement et à la roideur des cordages*. *Mémoires de Mathématique et de Physique présentés à l’Académie Royale des Sciences par divers Savans, et lus dans ses assemblés* **10**, 161–332 (1785). <http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k1095299>. The title of this paper translates to “Theory of simple machines with consideration of the friction and rubbing of rigging.”
- 25 Crabtree, H.: *An Elementary Treatment of the Theory of Spinning Tops and Gyroscopic Motion*, 3rd edn. Chelsea Publishing Company, New York (1967)
- 26 Cushman, R., Hermans, J., Kemppainen, D.: The rolling disc. In: Broer, H.W., van Gils, S.A., Hoveijn, I., Takens, F. (eds.) *Progress in Nonlinear Differential Equations and their Applications. Nonlinear Dynamical Systems and Chaos* (Groningen, 1995), vol. 19, pp. 21–60. Birkhäuser, Basel (1996). https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-0348-7518-9_2
- 27 Darboux, G.: *Leçons sur la Théorie Générale des Surfaces et les Applications Géométriques du Calcul Infinitesimal*, vol. 1–4. Gauthier-Villars, Paris (1887–1896). The title of this book translates to “Lectures on the General Theory of Surfaces and Geometric Applications of Calculus.”
- 28 Diacu, F., Holmes, P.: *Celestial Encounters: The Origins of Chaos and Stability*. Princeton University Press, NJ (1996)
- 29 Dugas, R.: *A History of Mechanics*. Dover Publications, New York (1988). English translation from the French original by J. R. Maddox
- 30 Edeler, C., Meyer, I., Fatikow, S.: Modeling of stick-slip micro-drives. *J. Micro-Nano Mechatron.* **6**(3–4), 65–87 (2011). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s12213-011-0034-9>
- 31 Euler, L.: *Recherches sur le mouvement des corps célestes en général*. *Mémoires de l’Académie des Sciences de Berlin* **3**, 93–143 (1749). <http://math.dartmouth.edu/~euler/pages/E112.html>. The title of this paper translates to “Researches on the motion of celestial bodies in general.” Reprinted in pp. 1–44 of [35]
- 32 Euler, L.: *Découverte d’un nouveau principe de mécanique*. *Mémoires de l’Académie des Sciences de Berlin* **6**, 185–217 (1752). <http://math.dartmouth.edu/~euler/pages/E177.html>. The title translates to “On the discovery of a new principle of mechanics.” Reprinted in pp. 81–108 of [34]
- 33 Euler, L.: *Nova methodus motum corporum rigidorum determinandi*. *Novi Commentarii Academiae Scientiarum Imperialis Petropolitanae* **20**, 208–238 (1776). <http://math.dartmouth.edu/~euler/pages/E479.html>. The title of this paper translates to “A new method to determine the motion of rigid bodies.” Reprinted in pp. 99–125 of [36]
- 34 Euler, L.: *Leonhardi Euleri Opera Omnia*, II, vol. 5. Orell Füssli, Zürich (1957). Edited by J. O. Fleckenstein
- 35 Euler, L.: *Leonhardi Euleri Opera Omnia*, II, vol. 25. Orell Füssli, Zürich (1960). Edited by M. Schürer

- 36 Euler, L.: Leonhardi Euleri Opera Omnia, II, vol. 9. Orell Füssli, Zürich (1968). Edited by C. Blanc
- 37 Fameli, J., Senna, M.: How the BB-8 Sphero toy works. <https://youtu.be/5FHtcR78GA0>
- 38 Fecko, M.: Falling cat connections and the momentum map. *J. Math. Phys.* **36**(12), 6709–6719 (1995). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1063/1.531183>
- 39 Flagan, R.C., Seinfeld, J.H.: *Fundamentals of Air Pollution Engineering*. Prentice-Hall, NJ (1988). <http://resolver.caltech.edu/CaltechBOOK:1988.001>
- 40 Frenet, F.: Sur quelques propriétés des courbes à double courbure. *Journal de Mathématiques Pures et Appliquées* **17**, 437–447 (1852). http://sites.mathdoc.fr/JMPA/PDF/JMPA_1852_1_17_A22_0.pdf. The title of this paper translates to “On several properties of curves of double curvature.” According to Spivak [90], curves of double curvature is the 19th century terminology for space curves
- 41 Frohlich, C.: What makes bowling balls hook? *Am. J. Phys.* **72**(2), 1170–1177 (2004). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1119/1.1767099>
- 42 Gillespie, T.D.: *Fundamentals of Vehicle Dynamics*. Society of Automotive Engineers, PA (1992)
- 43 Glocker, C.: Simulation of hard contacts with friction: An iterative projection method. In: *Recent Trends in Dynamical Systems*. Springer Proceedings in Mathematics and Statistics, vol. 35, pp. 493–515. Springer, Basel (2013). http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-3-0348-0451-6_19
- 44 Goldsmith, W.: *Impact: The Theory and Physical Behavior of Colliding Solids*. Arnold, New York (1960)
- 45 Greenwood, D.T.: *Principles of Dynamics*, 2nd edn. Prentice-Hall, New Jersey (1988)
- 46 Gurtin, M.E.: *An Introduction to Continuum Mechanics*. Academic, New York (1981)
- 47 Hanson, A.J., Ma, H.: Parallel transport approach to curve framing. *Indiana University, Techreports-TR425* **11**, 3–7 (1995). <ftp://ftp.cs.indiana.edu/pub/hanson/iucs-tr425.ps>
- 48 Hermans, J.: A symmetric sphere rolling on a surface. *Nonlinearity* **8**, 493–515 (1995). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/0951-7715/8/4/003>
- 49 Heyman, J.: *Coulomb’s Memoir on Statics: An Essay in the History of Civil Engineering*. Cambridge University Press, UK (1972)
- 50 Hibbeler, R.C.: *Engineering Mechanics*, 12th edn. Prentice-Hall, NJ (2010)
- 51 Holmes, P.J.: Dynamics of repeated impacts with a sinusoidally vibrating table. *J. Sound Vib.* **84**(2), 173–189 (1982). [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0022-460X\(82\)80002-3](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/S0022-460X(82)80002-3)
- 52 Hunt, B.R., Lipsman, R.L., Osborn, J.E., Outing, D.A., Rosenberg, J.: *Differential Equations with Mathematica*, 3rd edn. Wiley, New York (2009)
- 53 Jammer, M.: *Concepts of Force: A Study in the Foundations of Dynamics*. Harvard University Press, MA (1957)
- 54 Jawed, M.K., Novelia, A., O’Reilly, O.M.: *A Primer on the Kinematics of Discrete Elastic Rods*. SpringerBriefs in Applied Sciences and Technology. Springer, New York (2018). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-76965-3>
- 55 Kane, T.R., Scher, M.P.: A dynamical explanation of the falling cat phenomenon. *Int. J. Solids Struct.* **5**(7), 663–670 (1969). [http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0020-7683\(69\)90086-9](http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/0020-7683(69)90086-9)
- 56 Kinkaid, N.M., O’Reilly, O.M., Papadopoulos, P.: Automotive disk brake squeal. *J. Sound Vib.* **267**(1), 105–166 (2003). [http://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-460X\(02\)01573-0](http://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-460X(02)01573-0)
- 57 Kreyszig, E.: *Differential Geometry*. Revised and reprinted edn. Toronto University Press, Toronto (1964)
- 58 Lawden, D.F.: *Elliptic Functions and Applications*. Springer, New York (1989). <http://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4757-3980-0>
- 59 Lew, E.S., Orazov, B., O’Reilly, O.M.: The dynamics of Charles Taylor’s remarkable one-wheeled vehicle. *Regul. Chaotic Dyn.* **13**(3), 257–266 (2008). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1134/S1560354708040035>

- 60 Liberzon, D.: *Switching in Systems and Control*. Birkhäuser, Basel (2003). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4612-0017-8>
- 61 Love, A.E.H.: *A Treatise on the Mathematical Theory of Elasticity*, 4th edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (1927)
- 62 Mabie, H.H., Ocvirk, F.W.: *Mechanisms and Dynamics of Machinery*, 3rd edn. Wiley, New York (1978)
- 63 Meriam, J.L., Kraige, L.G.: *Engineering Mechanics: Dynamics*, 6th edn. Wiley, New York (2007)
- 64 Moon, F.C.: *Chaotic and Fractal Dynamics: An Introduction for Applied Scientists and Engineers*. Wiley, New York (1992)
- 65 Moulton, F.R.: *An Introduction to Celestial Mechanics*, 2nd edn. Macmillan, New York (1914)
- 66 Neimark, J.I., Fufaev, N.A.: *Dynamics of Nonholonomic Systems*. American Mathematical Society, Providence (1972). Translated from Russian by J.R. Barbour
- 67 Newton, I.: *Sir Isaac Newton's Principia*. Volume 1. *The Motion of Bodies*. University of California Press, Berkeley (1934). Translated into English of *Philosophiae Naturalis Principia Mathematica*, London (1686) by Andrew Motte in 1729, and Edited by F. Cajori
- 68 Newton, I.: *The Mathematical Papers of Isaac Newton*, vol. 5. Cambridge University Press, UK (1972). Edited by D.T. Whiteside
- 69 O'Reilly, O.M.: The dynamics of rolling disks and sliding disks. *Nonlinear Dyn.* **10**, 287–305 (1996). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/BF00045108>
- 70 O'Reilly, O.M.: *Intermediate Engineering Dynamics: A Unified Treatment of Newton-Euler and Lagrangian Mechanics*. Cambridge University Press, UK (2008). <https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511791352>
- 71 Painlevé, P.: Sur les lois du frottement de glissement. *Comptes Rendus Hebdomadaires des Séances de l'Académie des Sciences* **121**, **140**, **141**, **141**, 112–115, 702–707, 401–405, 546–552 (1895,1905,1905,1905). The title of this paper translates to “On the laws of sliding friction.”
- 72 Palm III, W.J.: *A Concise Introduction to Matlab*. McGraw-Hill, New York (2008)
- 73 Papastavridis, J.G.: *Analytical Mechanics: A Comprehensive Treatise on the Dynamics of Constrained Systems; for Engineers, Physicists, and Mathematicians*. Oxford University Press, Oxford (2002)
- 74 Paul, B.: *Kinematics and Dynamics of Planar Machinery*. Prentice-Hall, NJ (1979)
- 75 Pendrill, A.M.: Rollercoaster loop shapes. *Phys. Educ.* **40**(6), 517–521 (2005). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1088/0031-9120/40/6/001>
- 76 Peterson, I.: *Newton's Clock: Chaos in the Solar System*. W.H. Freeman, New York (1993)
- 77 Pfeiffer, F.: On the structure of frictional impacts. *Acta Mech.* **229**, 629–655 (2018). <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00707-017-1989-y>
- 78 Rabinowicz, E.: *Friction and Wear of Materials*, 2nd edn. Wiley, New York (1995)
- 79 Riley, W.F., Sturges, L.D.: *Engineering Mechanics: Dynamics*, 2nd edn. Wiley, New York (1995)
- 80 Routh, E.J.: *The Advanced Part of a Treatise on the Dynamics of a System of Rigid Bodies*, sixth, revised and, enlarged edn. MacMillan and Co., London (1905)
- 81 Routh, E.J.: *The Elementary Part of a Treatise on the Dynamics of a System of Rigid Bodies*, 7th edn. Macmillan, London (1905)
- 82 Rubin, M.B.: Physical restrictions on the impulse acting during three-dimensional impact of two rigid bodies. *ASME J. Appl. Mech.* **65**(2), 464–469 (1998). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1115/1.2789076>
- 83 Ruina, A.: Constitutive relations for frictional slip. In: Z. Bažant (ed.) *Mechanics of Geomaterials: Rocks, Concrete, Soils*, pp. 169–199. Wiley, New York (1985)

- 84 Serret, J.A.: Sur quelques formules relatives à la théorie des courbes à double courbure. *Journal de Mathématiques Pures et Appliquées* **16**, 193–207 (1851). http://sites.mathdoc.fr/JMPA/PDF/JMPA_1851_1_16_A12_0.pdf. The title of this paper translates to “On several formulae relating to curves of double curvature.” According to Spivak [90], curves of double curvature is the 19th century terminology for space curves
- 85 Shames, I.H.: *Engineering Mechanics - Statics and Dynamics*, 4th edn. Prentice-Hall, NJ (1997)
- 86 Shapere, A., Wilczek, F.: Gauge kinematics of deformable bodies. *Am. J. Phys.* **57**(6), 514–518 (1989). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1119/1.15986>
- 87 Shen, J., Schneider, D.A., Bloch, A.M.: Controllability and motion planning of a multibody Chaplygin’s sphere and Chaplygin’s top. *Int. J. Robust Nonlinear Control*. **18**(9), 905–945 (2007). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/rnc.1259>
- 88 Shuster, M.D.: A survey of attitude representations. American Astronautical Society. *J. Astronaut. Sci.* **41**(4), 439–517 (1993)
- 89 Smith, D.H., Meaney, D.F.: Roller coasters, g-forces, and brain trauma: on the wrong track? *J. Neurotrauma* **19**(10), 1117–1120 (2002). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1089/08977150260337921>
- 90 Spivak, M.: *A Comprehensive Introduction to Differential Geometry*, vol. I, 2 edn. Publish or Perish, Inc., Wilmington, Delaware (1979)
- 91 Stewart, D.E.: Rigid-body dynamics with friction and impact. *SIAM Rev.* **42**(1), 3–39 (2000). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1137/S0036144599360110>
- 92 Strang, G.: *Linear Algebra and Its Applications*, 3rd edn. Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, CA (1988)
- 93 Strogatz, S.H.: *Nonlinear Dynamics and Chaos, with Applications to Physics, Chemistry Biology and Engineering*. Addison-Wesley, MA (1994)
- 94 Struik, D.J.: *Lectures on Classical Differential Geometry*, 2nd edn. Dover, New York (1988)
- 95 Synge, J.L., Griffith, B.A.: *Principles of Mechanics*, 3rd edn. McGraw-Hill, New York (1959)
- 96 Taylor, C.F.: *Vehicle* (1964). US Patent Number 3145797
- 97 Truesdell, C.: *Essays in the History of Mechanics*. Springer, Berlin (1968). <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-86647-0>
- 98 Truesdell, C., Toupin, R.A.: *The Classical Field Theories*. *Handbuch der Physik*, vol. 3/1. Springer, Berlin (1960). <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-45943-6>
- 99 Veysey, J., Goldenfeld, N.: Simple viscous flows: from boundary layers to the renormalization group. *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **79**, 883–927 (2007). <https://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/RevModPhys.79.883>
- 100 Whittaker, E.T.: *A Treatise on the Analytical Dynamics of Particles and Rigid Bodies*, 4th edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (1937). <https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9780511608797>
- 101 Ylikorpi, T.: *A biologically inspired rolling robot for planetary surface exploration*. Ph.D. thesis, Helsinki University of Technology (2005). <http://urn.fi/URN:NBN:fi:aalto-201206142601>
- 102 Zenkov, D.V., Bloch, A.M., Marsden, J.E.: The energy-momentum method for the stability of non-holonomic systems. *Dyn. Stab. Syst.* **13**, 123–165 (1998). <https://doi.org/10.1080/02681119808806257>
- 103 Zhou, X., Majidi, C., O’Reilly, O.M.: Energy efficiency in friction-based locomotion mechanisms for soft and hard robots: Slower can be faster. *Nonlinear Dyn.* **78**(4), 2811–2821 (2014). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s11071-014-1627-3>

Index

A

- ABS, 242
- acceleration vector
 - $\bar{\mathbf{a}}$, 186
 - \mathbf{a} , 4, 23, 52, 177
 - \mathbf{a}_P , 188
- angular acceleration vector $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$, 176
- angular momentum
 - \mathbf{H} , 146, 154, 192, 195, 208, 247
 - \mathbf{H}_A , 193
 - \mathbf{H}_O , 122, 154, 192, 247
 - \mathbf{H}_P , 145, 155
- angular momentum theorem
 - particle, 124, 248
 - system of particles, 155
- angular velocity vector $\boldsymbol{\omega}$, 176
- Antman S. S., 74
- Appell P., 189
- arc-length parameter s , 4, 36, 42, 45, 46, 49, 52, 97, 99
- Arnol'd V. I., 126

B

- Bai Y., 264
- balance law
 - angular momentum, 158, 205, 207, 248
 - impulse-momentum form, 121, 250
 - linear momentum, 9, 25, 54, 90, 121, 149, 153, 157, 205, 207, 248
- Barrow-Green J., 279
- BB-8, 264
- Beatty M. F., viii, 173, 175
- Bedford A., vii, 283, 287
- Beer F. P., vii, 283, 287
- Bellman R., 196
- Bernstein I. H., 264
- billiards, 188, 235

- binormal vector \mathbf{e}_b , 38, 40, 44, 46, 48, 51
- Bishop R. L., 44
- Bishop triad, 44
- Bizyaev I. A., 264
- Bloch A. M., 229, 264
- Borisov A. V., 189, 229, 264
- Bottema O., 182
- bouncing ball, 134, 141
- bowling balls, 235
- Brach R. M., 128, 133
- brake squeal, 69

C

- Cartesian coordinates, 9, 97, 99, 122, 151, 178, 275
- Casey J., viii, 173, 178, 195, 199, 212
- center of mass
 - rigid body, 185
 - system, 246
 - system of particles, 144, 151, 154
- chain rule, 24, 277
- Chaplygin S. A., 189
- Chasles' theorem, 175
- circle, 46
- circular helix, 48, 53
- circular motion, 6, 46
- clothoid, 36, 39, 65, 112
- coefficient
 - dynamic friction μ_d , 69, 71, 228, 229
 - restitution e , 128, 130–133, 270
 - static friction μ_s , 69, 71, 72, 228, 229
- collision, 128, 270
 - elastic, 130
 - example, 134, 137, 270
 - plastic, 130
- compression, 129
- cone, 70, 88, 126

- configuration
 - present, 173
 - reference, 173
 - conservation
 - angular momentum, 124–126, 154, 157, 250, 255, 256, 271
 - energy, 61, 102, 110, 126, 159, 219, 224, 228, 251, 255, 262, 263, 268, 271, 281
 - linear momentum, 122, 131, 150, 154, 250, 255, 263, 271
 - mass, 186, 199
 - constraint
 - kinematical, 27, 29, 187, 227, 229, 257, 264
 - rolling, 187, 227, 229, 257, 264
 - sliding, 187, 227, 229
 - Coriolis G., 95, 188
 - corotational basis, 178
 - Coulomb C. A., 67
 - Crabtree H., 251
 - curvature κ , 38, 42, 46, 47, 50
 - Cushman R., 189
 - cycloid, 191
 - cylindrical polar coordinates, 22, 25, 46, 48, 89, 97, 99, 122, 125, 126, 151, 157, 278
- D**
- Darboux G., 40
 - Darboux vector ω_{SF} , 40
 - density
 - ρ , 185
 - ρ_0 , 185
 - Diacu F., 279
 - Dugas R., 67
- E**
- Edeler C., 69
 - Euler angles, 175
 - Euler L., 9, 175, 207
 - Euler parameters, 175
 - Euler's first law, 9, 25, 54, 90, 149, 205, 207
 - Euler's second law, 205, 207
 - Euler's theorem, 175
- F**
- Fatikow S., 69
 - Fecko M., 251
 - fixed axis rotation
 - angular acceleration vector $\ddot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$, 177, 208
 - angular velocity vector $\dot{\theta}\mathbf{E}_z$, 177, 208
 - corotational basis, 179
 - example, 182, 189, 219, 229, 235, 252, 264
 - rotation matrix, 177, 179, 208
 - Flavin J. N., viii
 - force
 - bearing, 235
 - central, 125
 - conservative, 98, 102, 125, 160, 224
 - constant, 100, 104
 - constraint, 25, 27, 29
 - drag, 4, 10, 14
 - friction, 68, 70–72, 88, 107, 229, 231, 260
 - gravity, 4, 11, 22, 25, 27, 29, 55, 57, 88, 100, 104, 107, 126, 210, 222, 231, 235, 254, 260, 267, 279
 - nonconservative, 99, 102, 260
 - normal, 25, 27, 29, 59, 68, 70–72, 88, 107, 151, 157
 - reaction, 68, 151, 216, 222, 254, 260, 267
 - resultant, 9, 206, 216, 222, 248, 254, 260, 267
 - spring, 84, 88, 101, 104, 107, 126, 151, 158, 160, 222, 280
 - Stokes drag, 10, 14
 - tension, 22, 25, 27, 29, 160
 - toppling, 218
 - Fowler W., vii, 283, 287
 - free-body diagram, 10, 27, 29, 152, 206, 222, 254, 260, 267
 - Frenet J.-F., 37
 - friction, 67, 107, 109, 227–229, 272
 - Frohlich C., 235
 - Fufaev N. A., 188, 229
 - fundamental theorem of calculus, 5
- G**
- g-forces, 113
 - Gillespie T. D., 218
 - Glocker C., 272
 - Goldenfeld N., 10
 - Goldsmith W., 128
 - gradient of a function, 99
 - Greenwood D. T., 175
 - Griffith B. A., viii, 175
 - Gurtin M. E., 173, 175, 195, 199
- H**
- Hanson A. J., 44
 - harmonic oscillator, 85, 104, 280
 - helicoid, 48
 - Hermans J., 189, 229
 - Heyman J., 67
 - Hibbeler R. C., vii, 283, 287
 - Holmes P., viii, 136, 279
 - Hooke R., 84
 - Hooke's law, 84
 - Hunt B. R., 279
 - Huygens C., 103

I

imbalanced shaft, 198, 235
 impact, 128, 129, 270
 impulse
 angular, 249
 linear, 121, 129, 132, 249
 inertia
 matrix, 194
 matrix of cylinder, 196
 moments of, 195
 principal axes, 196
 products of, 195
 tensor, 193
 initial conditions, 13, 27, 60, 61, 125, 154,
 218, 224, 234, 278–281
 inverse function theorem, 5

J

Jacobi's elliptic functions, 224, 281
 Jammer M., 95
 Jawed M. K., 44
 Johnston E. R., vii, 283, 287
 Joule J. P., 95

K

Kane T. R., 251
 Kemppainen D., 189
 Kepler J., 125
 Kepler's problem, 125
 kinetic energy T , 98, 107, 132, 146, 212,
 222, 248, 251
 Kinkaid N. M., 69
 Koenig decomposition
 rigid body, 212
 system of particles, 147
 Koenig J. S., 212
 Kong C., 264
 Korteweg D. J., 189
 Kraige L. G., vii, 126, 195, 197, 283, 287
 Kreyszig E., 39, 48

L

Lawden D. F., 224, 281
 Leibniz G. W., 103
 Liberzon D., 135
 linear momentum \mathbf{G} , 9, 25, 121, 131, 145,
 185, 247
 linear spring, 84
 Lipsman R. L., 279
 Love A. E. H., 74, 84

M

Ma H., 44
 Mabie H. H., 182

MacGregor R., 264
 Majidi C., 69
 Mamaev I. S., 189, 229, 264
 Marsden J. E., 229
 Mathematica, 279
 Matlab, 279
 matrix
 determinant, 123, 175, 276
 inverse, 184
 positive definite, 196
 proper orthogonal, 175
 rotation, 175
 skew-symmetric, 175
 symmetric, 196
 transpose, 175
 Meaney D. F., 113
 mechanisms
 four-bar linkage, 182
 slider-crank, 182
 Meriam J. L., vii, 126, 195, 197, 283, 287
 Meyer I., 69
 moment
 applied torque, 235
 reaction, 206, 209, 210, 222, 254, 260, 267
 resultant, 155, 206, 216, 222, 231, 248,
 254, 260, 267
 Moon F. C., 279
 motion, 174
 Moulton F. R., 126
 moving curve, 74

N

Naghdi P. M., viii
 Neimark Ju. I., 188, 229
 Newton I., 9, 84, 103, 125, 128
 Newton's second law, 9, 25, 54, 90, 149,
 205, 207
 Newton's third law, 9, 154
 normal vector \mathbf{n} , 70, 89, 129, 187, 227, 229
 Novelia A., 44

O

O'Reilly O. M., 44, 69, 175, 189, 229
 Ocvirk F. W., 182
 orthonormal, 275
 Osborne J. E., 279
 Outing D. A., 279

P

Painlevé P., 272
 Palm III W. J., 279
 Papadopoulos P., 69
 Papastavridis J. G., 229
 parallel axis theorem, 197

- path \mathcal{C} , 4, 51
 Paul B., 182
 Pendrill A.-M., 36
 Peterson I., 279
 Pfeiffer F., 272
 planar pendulum, 22, 25, 28, 111, 114, 280
 plane
 horizontal, 67, 70, 88, 189
 inclined, 230
 moving, 74
 osculating, 39
 rectifying, 39
 rotating, 80
 rough, 74, 75, 80
 plane curve, 41, 55, 57
 Poincaré H., 279
 pool, 188, 235
 position vector
 $\bar{\mathbf{X}}$, 185
 $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$, 185, 247
 \mathbf{r} , 4, 22, 51, 181
 \mathbf{r}_P , 187, 227, 229, 257, 264
 \mathbf{x} , 174, 176, 181
 potential energy U , 98, 100, 101, 104
 power
 force, 95, 96, 214
 moment, 214
 principal normal vector \mathbf{e}_n , 38, 42, 46, 47, 50
 product
 cross, 276
 dot, 276
 product rule, 277
 projectile problem, 4, 11, 55, 122, 134, 150, 210, 279
- R**
- Rabinowicz E., 69
 radius of curvature ρ , 38
 rectilinear motion, 7, 45, 71, 97, 218
 relative position vector
 $\mathbf{\Pi}$, 194
 $\boldsymbol{\pi}$, 194
 relative velocity vector \mathbf{v}_{rel} , 70, 71, 91
 restitution, 129
 right-handed basis, 9, 38, 180, 275, 278
 rigid body motion $\chi_R(\mathbf{X}, t)$, 174
 Riley W. F., vii, 126, 283, 287
 Rivlin R. S., viii
 roller coaster, 36, 112
 rolling, 187, 227, 229, 233, 264
 Rosenberg J., 279
 Roth B., 182
 rotor, 235
 rough curve, 107
- Routh E. J., 128, 188, 229, 235
 Rubin M. B., 128
 Ruina A., 69, 272
- S**
- Scher M. P., 251
 Schneider D. A., 264
 Serret J. A., 37
 Serret-Frenet
 formulae, 39, 51, 74, 107
 triad, 36, 37, 51, 59, 74, 97, 99, 107, 110
 Shames I. H., vii, 283, 287
 Shapere A., 251
 Shen J., 264
 Shuster M. D., 175
 sliding, 187, 192, 227, 229, 257, 264
 slip velocity, 192, 231, 234
 Smith D. H., 113
 space curve, 36, 37, 45, 51, 71, 107
 speed, 4
 Spivak M., 39
 static friction criterion, 71, 72, 91, 228, 233
 Stewart D. E., 128, 272
 stick-slip locomotion, 69
 stick-slip transition, 71, 78, 83, 235
 Stokes G. G., 10
 Strang G., 196
 Strogatz S. H., 272, 279
 Struik D. J., 39, 48
 Sturges L. D., vii, 126, 283, 287
 surface, 70, 71, 129, 187, 227, 229
 Svinin M., 264
 Synge J. L., viii, 175
- T**
- tangent vector \mathbf{e}_t , 38, 42, 46, 47, 50
 tangent vectors \mathbf{t}_1 , \mathbf{t}_2 , 70, 89, 129
 Taylor C. F., 246
 terminal velocity, 14
 The Four Steps, 10, 209
 theory of rods, 74
 torsion τ , 40, 44, 46, 48, 51
 total energy E , 102, 104, 160, 224, 228, 255, 268
 Toupin R. A., 199
 Truesdell C., viii, 9, 199, 205, 207
- V**
- Vecsey J., 10
 vehicle dynamics, 69, 218, 271
 velocity vector
 $\bar{\mathbf{v}}$, 186
 \mathbf{v} , 4, 23, 51, 176
 \mathbf{v}_P , 188

Vierkandt A., 189

W

Watt J., 95

wheel balancer, 235

whirling tube, 280

Whittaker E. T., 175, 224, 279

Wilczek F., 251

Wilson A., 264

work, 95, 96, 214

work done by friction, 108, 228

work-energy theorem, 98, 103, 108, 160,
213, 214, 251

Y

Yamamoto M., 264

Ylikorpi T., 264

Z

Zenkov D. V., 229

Zeno behavior, 134

Zhou X., 69